



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

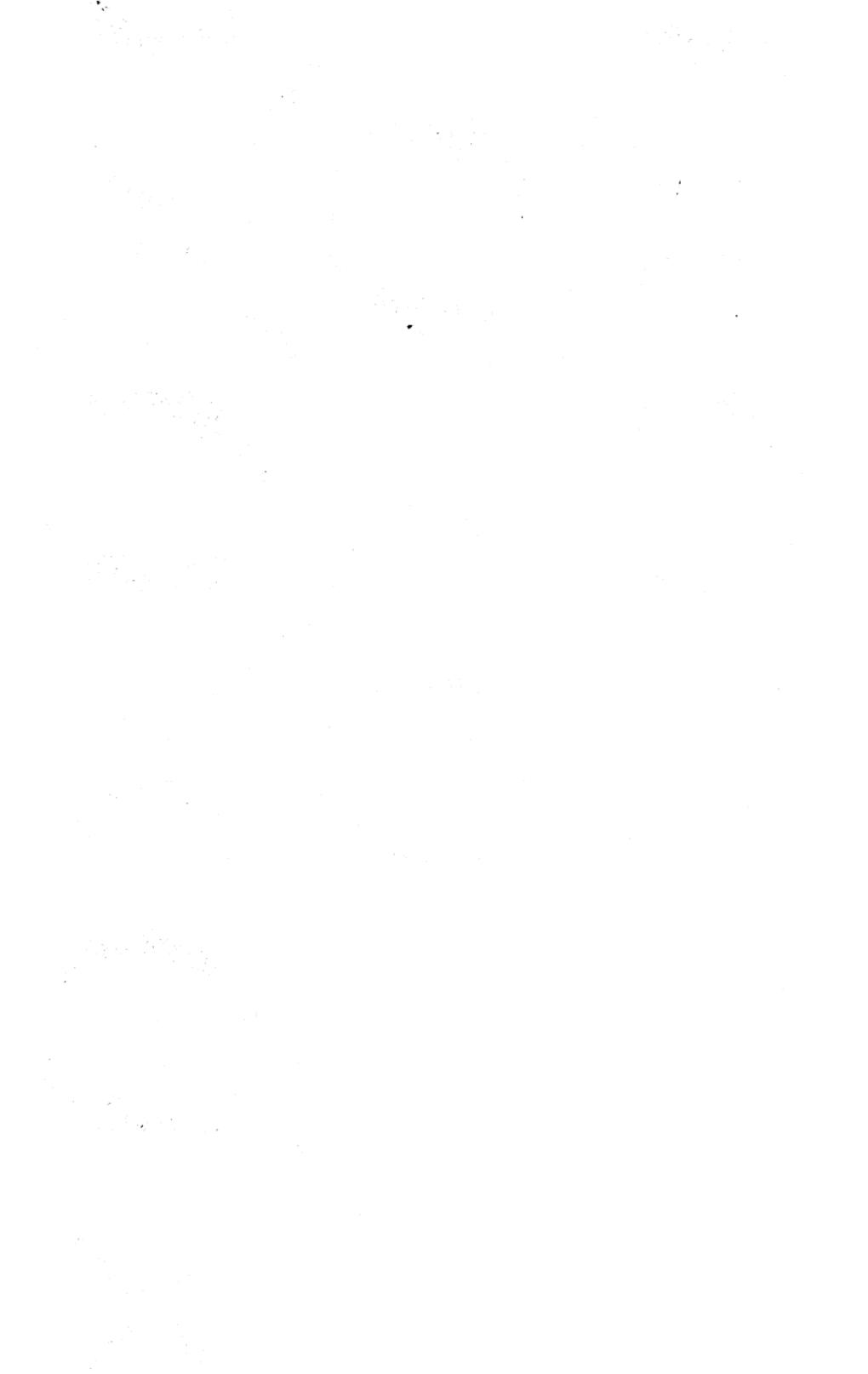
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

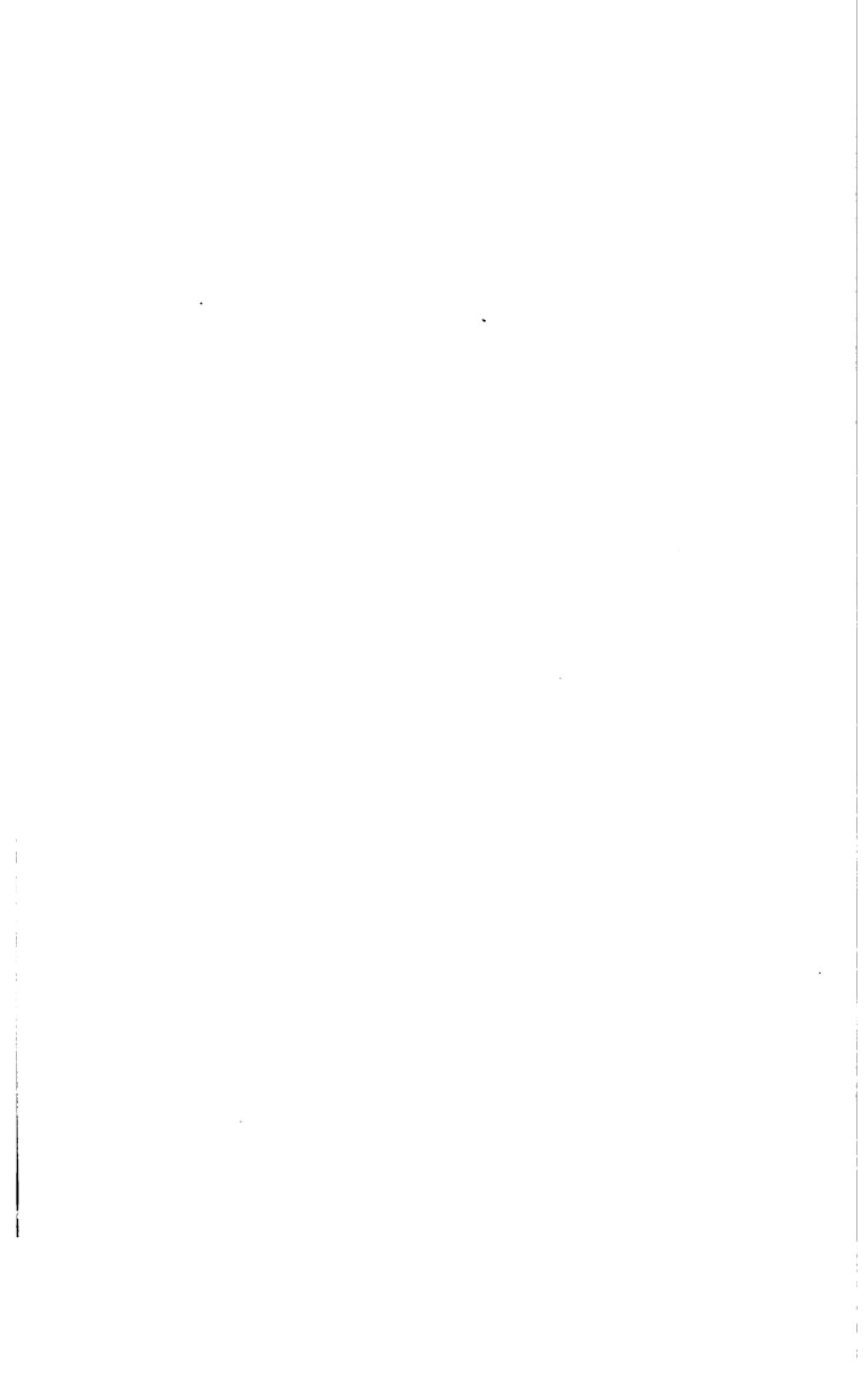
### About Google Book Search

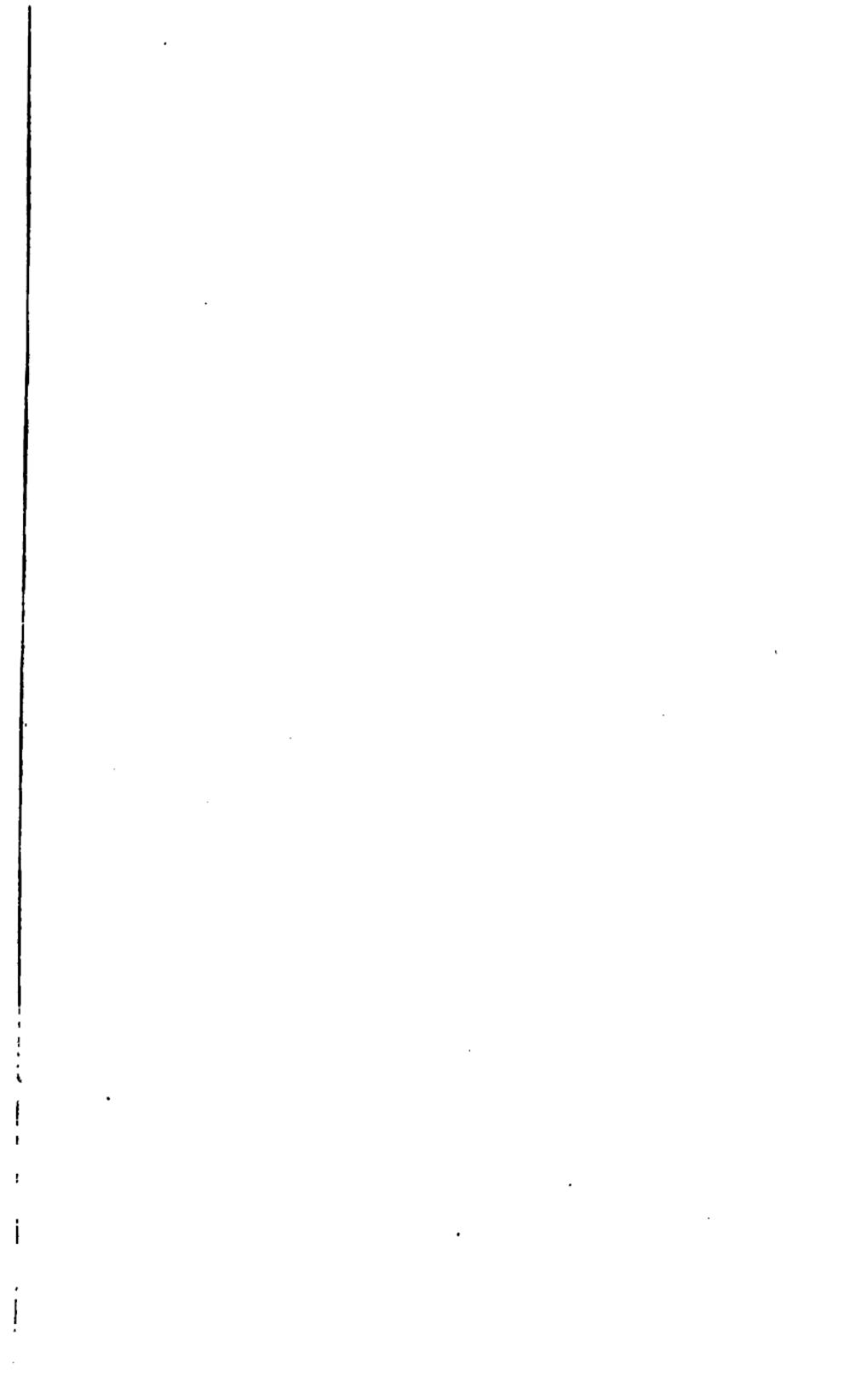
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







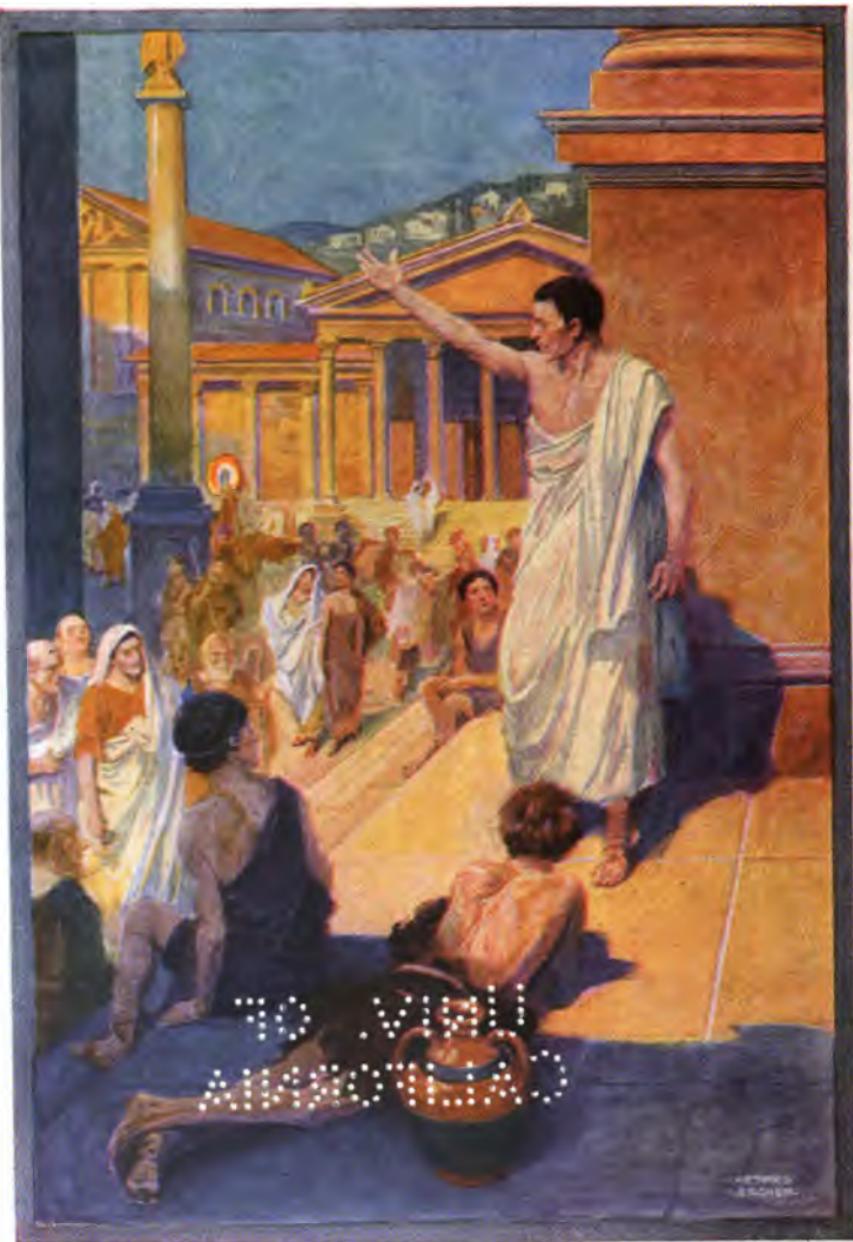






۹ ۲ ۵ ۳ ۷ ۶ ۸ ۰ ۱ ۴ ۰ ۰ ۰ ۰

۹ ۲ ۵ ۳ ۷ ۶ ۸ ۰ ۱ ۴ ۰ ۰ ۰ ۰



A ROMAN CITIZEN SPEAKS

# COLLAR AND DANIELL'S FIRST YEAR LATIN

REVISED BY

THORNTON JENKINS\*

HEAD MASTER, HIGH SCHOOL, MALDEN, MASSACHUSETTS



GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON  
ATLANTA · DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1901, BY WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL

COPYRIGHT, 1918, BY GINN AND COMPANY

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

318.4

Main L. B.

The Athenaeum Press

GINN AND COMPANY - PROPRIETORS - BOSTON - U.S.A.

460  
C 697  
for  
1918

## PREFACE

The book that is placed in the hands of a pupil during his first year of the study of Latin should be simple and clear and interesting in its treatment of the language; it should teach with the utmost thoroughness those principles that it attempts to teach, but it should not attempt to teach to-day what may be taught more properly to-morrow; it should get the pupil into the reading of easy connected Latin as soon as possible, and for this purpose should supply a generous amount of material graded to his attainment; and it should never allow the pupil to leave the classroom without a reminder of the extent to which Latin is a part of his own language.

With these convictions the revision of Collar and Daniell's "First Year Latin" was undertaken. All these principles underlay the plan of "First Year Latin," but the unanimity with which they have been accepted since the publication of that text has made it possible in the revision so to extend their application as to produce what is in effect a new book.

The vocabulary has been made briefer and more Cæsarian. From the vocabularies of the lessons the pupil is asked to learn the meanings of some five hundred and seventy words. About ninety per cent of these words are included in the list of one thousand words which Professor Lodge<sup>1</sup> suggests should be learned before the end of the second year of the study of Latin. Over sixty per cent occur more than ten times in Cæsar. In the Selections for Reading the pupil has a chance to become acquainted casually with a wider vocabulary.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary of High School Latin.

A number of constructions which were taught in the original book have been omitted. With three exceptions the constructions included in the revision are those which Byrne<sup>1</sup> recommends for the first year. Similarly, the pupil is no longer required to learn uncommon forms which are not necessary for his second-year reading.

Increased attention has been given to derivatives. Related English words are often placed after the Latin words in the vocabularies of the lessons as well as in the general vocabulary. Everywhere in the reviews this important part of the study of Latin is kept constantly before the pupil. Suggestions are offered for the keeping of notebooks of English derivatives. The force of certain common prefixes and suffixes in the formation and meaning of Latin words is also explained.

Interspersed throughout the book there are ten Review Lessons, which take up the words and constructions previously taught. The machinery for drill has been further strengthened by a summary of the uses of nouns and of verbs, and by review questions touching upon the syntax, forms, derivatives, and principles of each lesson. These questions have been placed after the Selections for Reading, that they may be somewhat removed from the lessons they concern.

The treatment of the Essentials of Grammar has been made more useful by a comparison of English grammar with Latin grammar, and by the inclusion of Latin equivalents for the English illustrative words and phrases.

The material for reading has been somewhat changed, particularly by the omission of the Fables and Stories, and by the introduction of the Story of Perseus, of the simplified narrative of Cæsar's Campaign against the Helvetians, and of a number of pages from Eutropius. In all the selections the

<sup>1</sup> The Syntax of High School Latin.

syntåx has been made to conform with that taught in the lessons, so that the pupil may not be bothered or discouraged by unfamiliar constructions.

As an aid to the pupil's pronunciation, a mark of accent has been placed on the words in the vocabularies of the first eighteen lessons, and on declensions and conjugations, both in the text and in the Appendix.

Teachers who are familiar with "First Year Latin" will find that none of its well-known excellences have been sacrificed in the revision. There are, for example, the same short lessons, usually less than two pages in length. In the exercises the sentences for translation remain simple. Nowhere are many constructions brought within the limits of a single sentence. The exercises for translation from English into Latin are relatively shorter than those from Latin into English. The order in which the verb is developed and in which the various constructions are presented will be found the same, with a few exceptions. In the study of syntax the pupil is still led from the observation of model sentences to the deduction of usages and principles. Passages of connected Latin are introduced early and are of frequent occurrence throughout the lessons, and there is ample material for reading after the lessons have been completed. The content of the book is still such that it is possible for high-school classes to go through the lessons within thirty weeks.

The "Teacher's Manual," in addition to general directions and notes on each lesson, contains carefully graded sentences for sight reading and for the practice of the "direct method," as well as material for drill on English derivatives of the Latin words of the vocabularies.

It is hoped that teachers will find the numerous illustrations a help to them in familiarizing pupils with the life of the

Romans. The four plates in colors were made especially for this book by Mr. Arthur E. Becher after a careful study of all the phases of Roman life that they represent. As for the other pictures, half tones have been used where the subject could be made more realistic if reproduced directly from a photograph. In cases where line engravings seemed more suitable, drawings in the style of the early Italian engravings were made for the purpose by Mr. Thomas M. Cleland, Mr. W. A. Dwiggins, and Mr. Adrian J. Iorio. As a whole the illustrations are believed to be of a quality unexcelled in schoolbooks.

The reviser wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to the suggestions received from Mr. Collar himself, who, before his death, had given considerable thought to the aim and scope of the revision. Indebtedness is also gratefully acknowledged to Professor Charles Knapp, of Barnard College, New York ; to Mr. Herbert F. Hancox, of Lewis Institute, Chicago ; and to Miss Grace I. Bridge and Miss Grace E. Jackson, of the Hyde Park High School, Chicago, for their helpful criticisms.

T. J.

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
<b>ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR . . . . .</b>	<b>I</b>
<b>TO THE BEGINNER IN LATIN: WHAT LATIN IS, AND WHY IT IS STUDIED. HOW TO STUDY LATIN . . . . .</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET, SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT . . . . .</b>	<b>19</b>
 <b>LESSON</b>	
I. THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND VERBS. THE NOMINATIVE CASE USED AS SUBJECT . . . . .	24
II. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE USED AS THE DIRECT OBJECT . . .	26
III. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJU- GATION . . . . .	28
IV. THE GENITIVE CASE USED TO DENOTE POSSESSION . . .	30
V. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJU- GATION. CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH <i>Quod</i> . . . . .	32
VI. THE DATIVE CASE USED AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT. THE ABLATIVE USED IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES TO SHOW PLACE WHERE . . . . .	34
VII. THE FIRST DECLENSION. GENDER . . . . .	36
FIRST REVIEW LESSON . . . . .	38
VIII. THE SECOND DECLENSION . . . . .	40
IX. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS . .	42
X. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF <i>Sum</i> . PREDICATE NOUN AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE . . . . .	44
XI. APPosition. <i>Cornēlia et Iūlia</i> . . . . .	46
XII. THE SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN -er, -ir, -ius, AND -ium	48
XIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS END- ING IN -er. <i>Dē Graeciā</i> . . . . .	50

LESSON	PAGE
XIV. THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF <b>Sum</b> . THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES . . . . .	52
SECOND REVIEW LESSON . . . . .	54
XV. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS . . . . .	56
XVI. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER . . . . .	58
XVII. PRINCIPAL PARTS. THE PERFECT STEM. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION. <b>Dē Sabinis</b>	60
XVIII. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, SECOND CONJUGATION. THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT . . . . .	62
XIX. THE DEMONSTRATIVE <b>Ia</b> . THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF <b>Sum</b> . . . . .	64
XX. THE INTERROGATIVE <b>Quis</b> . <b>Dē Deis Rōmānōrum</b> . . . . .	66
XXI. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AND PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION . . . . .	68
THIRD REVIEW LESSON . . . . .	70
XXII. READING LESSON. <b>Dē Icarō. Rōmāni prō Sociis pugnant</b> . . . . .	72
XXIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .	74
XXIV. THE THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN -iō. THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH. THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH . . . . .	76
XXV. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES EXPRESSING CAUSE . . . . .	78
XXVI. THE THIRD DECLENSION: i-STEMS . . . . .	80
XXVII. THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS . . . . .	82
XXVIII. READING LESSON. <b>Horātius Pontem dēfendit. Dē Nātiō-nibus Eurōpae</b> . . . . .	84
FOURTH REVIEW LESSON . . . . .	86
XXIX. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .	88
XXX. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. <b>Conloquium</b> . . . . .	90
XXXI. THE ABLATIVE OF TIME. <b>Laconic Speeches</b> . . . . .	92

## CONTENTS

ix

LESSON		PAGE
XXXII. THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	94	
XXXIII. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>Hic</i> AND <i>Ille</i> . PLACE FROM WHICH AND TO WHICH, IN NAMES OF TOWNS . . . . .	96	
XXXIV. READING LESSON. <i>Victōria 'Caesaris. Dē Caesare et Britannis</i> . . . . .	98	
XXXV. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT . . . . .	100	
XXXVI. THE RELATIVE <i>Qui</i> . . . . . FIFTH REVIEW LESSON . . . . .	102	
XXXVII. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF <i>Regō</i> AND <i>Capiō</i> . . . . .	106	
XXXVIII. THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	108	
XXXIX. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. <i>Veturia, Māter Coriolāni. Dē Perseō</i> . . . . .	110	
XL. THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION . . . . .	112	
XLI. THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. <i>Iuppiter Perseūm servat</i> . . . . .	114	
XLII. THE FOURTH DECLENSION . . . . .	116	
XLIII. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES . . . . . SIXTH REVIEW LESSON . . . . .	118	
XLIV. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -er OR -lis. THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE . . . . .	122	
XLV. READING LESSON. <i>Scipiō et Hannibal. Perseus Medūsam quaerit</i> . . . . .	124	
XLVI. THE IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE . . . . .	126	
XLVII. THE FORMATION AND THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . . . .	128	
XLVIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT	130	

LESSON	PAGE
XLIX. READING LESSON. <i>A Letter from Pompeii. Perseus Medūsam interficit</i>	132
L. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE. PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH <b>Ut</b> AND <b>Nē</b>	134
LI. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. SEQUENCE OF TENSES	136
LII. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. RESULT CLAUSES. SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON	138 140
LIII. READING LESSON. <i>Caesar Hostis vincit. Andromeda Filia Cēphei</i>	142
LIV. THE PERFECT AND THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	144
LV. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE	146
LVI. ADJECTIVES HAVING THE GENITIVE IN <b>-ius</b> . <i>Mōnstrum appropinquat</i>	148
LVII. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS COMPLEMENT	150
LVIII. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT. THE ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE. INDIRECT STATEMENTS	152
LIX. READING LESSON. <i>Caesar in Conciliō dicit. Perseus Cēpheō Andromedam reddit</i>	156
LX. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <b>Idem</b> , <b>Ipse</b> , <b>Iste</b> . THE IRREGULAR VERB <b>Possum</b> EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON	158 160
LXI. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. <i>The Nations of Gaul</i>	162
LXII. THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. THE DATIVES OF PURPOSE AND REFERENCE	164
LXIII. THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS. THE IRREGULAR VERBS <b>Volō</b> , <b>Nōlō</b> , <b>Mālō</b>	166
LXIV. READING LESSON. <i>Belling the Cat. Nasica and Ennius. Orgetorix and the Helvetians</i>	168
LXV. PARTICIPLES	170
LXVI. READING LESSON. <i>Dicta Antiquōrum. Orgetorix and the Helvetians (CONTINUED)</i>	173
LXVII. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	175

## CONTENTS

xi

LESSON		PAGE
LXVIII. THE GERUND. THE IRREGULAR VERB <b>Eō</b>	178	
NINTH REVIEW LESSON	180	
LXIX. THE GERUNDIVE. THE IRREGULAR VERB <b>Ferō</b>	182	
LXX. READING LESSON. <i>The Helvetians leave their Territory</i>	184	
LXXI. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. DEONENT VERBS.	186	
LXXII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH <b>Cum</b> . THE IRREGULAR VERB <b>Fīō</b>	188	
LXXIII. READING LESSON. <i>Cæsar refuses the Helvetians Per- mission to go through the Roman Province</i>	190	
LXXIV. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT INTRODUCED BY <b>Quod</b> . THE INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES	192	
LXXV. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS	194	
TENTH REVIEW LESSON	196	
SUMMARY: THE USES OF NOUNS AND VERBS	198	
 SELECTIONS FOR READING:		
Cæsar: The Campaign against the Helvetians	201	
Cæsar: The Story of the Aduatuci	206	
Stories of Hercules	208	
Stories of Ulysses	213	
Eutropius: History of Rome	218	
Stories from Roman History	223	
REVIEW QUESTIONS	227	
 APPENDIX I:		
Rules of Syntax	245	
Formation of Latin Words	249	
English Derivatives	251	
 APPENDIX II:		
Declensions and Conjugations	253	
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	287	
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	331	
INDEX	341	



# FIRST YEAR LATIN

## ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

### THE PARTS OF SPEECH

#### NOUNS

I. a. A *noun* is the name of a person, place, or thing : *boy, London, ship; puer, Londinium, nāvis.*

b. A *proper noun* is the name of a particular person, place, or thing : *Cornelia, Rome, Rhone; Cornēlia, Rōma, Rhodanus.*

c. A *common noun* is a name that may be applied to any one of a class of objects : *boy, city, day; puer, urbs, diēs.*

d. A *collective noun* is a name that may be applied to a group of objects, though itself in the singular number (xxiii) : *crowd, family; multitūdō, gēns.*

e. A *verbal noun* is the name of an action : *seeing, writing, to see, to write; vidēndi (459), scribēndi, vidēre, scribere.*

f. An *abstract noun* is the name of a quality or condition : *goodness, truth, poverty; bonitās, vēritās, paupertās.*

#### PRONOUNS

II. a. A *pronoun* is a word used to take the place of a noun or of another pronoun : *I, you, him, this, who; ego, tū, eum, hoc, qui.*

b. The noun (or pronoun) for which a pronoun stands is called its *antecedent* (from *antecēdere*, to go before). Thus, in the sentence *John goes to school, but he does not study*, the

noun *John* is the antecedent of *he*. The antecedent is especially common with a relative pronoun (ii, d). Neither in Latin nor in English does the antecedent necessarily stand in advance of its pronoun: *What he says, he believes, quod dicit, id credit.*

c. A *personal pronoun* shows by its form whether it stands (1) for the speaker: *I, we*; *ego, nos*, that is, the *first person*; (2) for the person spoken to: *thou, you*; *tū, vōs*, that is, the *second person*; or (3) for the person or thing spoken of: *he, she, it, they*; *is, ea, id, ei*, that is, the *third person*.

d. A *relative pronoun* connects a subordinate clause, in which it stands, with the antecedent: *The book that you have is mine, liber quem habēs meus est.* The relative pronouns in English are *who, which, that, and as*; in Latin the relative is *qui*.

e. An *interrogative pronoun* is used to ask a question: *Who is walking in the garden? Quis in hortō ambulat?* The interrogative pronouns in English are *who, which, and what*; in Latin, *quis* and *uter*.

f. A *demonstrative pronoun* points out an object definitely: *this, that, these, those; hic, ille, hi, illi.*

g. An *indefinite pronoun* refers to an object indefinitely: *some, some one, any, any one; aliquis, quis.*

h. A *reflexive pronoun* refers back to the subject: *He blamed himself, sē culpāvit.*

### ADJECTIVES

III. a. An *adjective* is a word used to qualify or limit a noun or a pronoun: *good book, beautiful moon, five girls; liber bonus, lūna pulchra, quīnque puellae.*

b. *A, an, and the*, really limiting adjectives, are sometimes called *articles*. *The* is the *definite article*, *a* or *an* the *indefinite article*. These articles are not used in Latin.

c. *Numeral adjectives* denote how many persons or things are under consideration. They are either *cardinal*, denoting how many: *one, two, three, four*; *unus, duo, trēs, quattuor*; or *ordinal*, denoting which in order: *first, second, third, fourth*; *primus, secundus, tertius, quartus*.

d. *Possessive adjectives* denote ownership: *my friend, our house*; *meus amicus, nostra domus*. Possessive adjectives are frequently used as possessive pronouns.

e. The demonstrative pronouns, the indefinite pronouns, and the interrogative pronouns *which* and *what* may be used as adjectives, and are then called respectively *demonstrative adjectives*: *this book, that house*; *hic liber, illa domus*; *indefinite adjectives*: *some boys, aliqui pueri*; and *interrogative adjectives*: *Which way shall we go? Quā viā ibimus?*

f. Adjectives are often used as nouns: "The land of the free," *patria liberōrum*.

## VERBS

IV. a. A *verb* is a word which can declare or assert something about a person, a place, or a thing: *The man laughs, vir ridet*; *the town is captured, oppidum captum est*; *the leaf falls, folium cadit*.

b. A verb which has an object (xiv, a) to complete its meaning is said to be *transitive*, or to be *used transitively*: *The girl has a rose, puella rosam habet*.

c. A verb which does not have an object (xiv, a) to complete its meaning is said to be *intransitive*, or to be *used intransitively*: *Birds fly, avēs volant*; *I walk, ambulō*.

NOTE. Thus certain verbs may at one time be transitive and at another intransitive: *The wind blew the snow into our faces; the wind blew furiously.*

*d.* Verbs are classified as *regular* or *irregular*. This distinction is made merely for convenience. A *regular verb* in English forms its imperfect (past) tense (xxxiii, *a*) and past participle (xxxiv, *b*) by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the present : present, *love* ; past, *loved* ; past participle, *loved*. For Latin regular verbs see 658–662.

*e.* An *irregular verb* in English does not form its imperfect (past) tense by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the present : present, *give* ; past, *gave* ; past participle, *given*. For Latin irregular verbs see 663–668.

*f.* An *auxiliary verb* is used in the conjugation of other verbs : *I am loved, he has given*. In Latin the verb *esse, to be* (663), is so used : *missus est, he has been sent*.

## ADVERBS

V. *a.* An *adverb* is used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb : *He walks swiftly, celeriter ambulat*.

*b.* An *adverb of place* answers the question *where?* — *here, there, hence; hic, illuc, hinc*.

*c.* An *adverb of time* answers the question *when?* — *then, now, often; tum, nunc, saepe*.

*d.* An *adverb of manner* answers the question *how?* — *so, well, ill; sic, bene, male*.

*e.* An *adverb of degree* answers the question *how much?* — *little, almost, enough; paulo, paene, satis*.

*f.* A *modal adverb* expresses affirmation or negation, or the degree of confidence with which a statement is made : *yes, no, certainly, perhaps; certe, forsitan*.

## PREPOSITIONS

VI. A preposition is used before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence. Usually the relation shown is position, direction, or time : *He sent a legion against the enemy, in hostēs legiōnem misit.* In Latin certain phrases which would be introduced in English by a preposition are expressed by the use of one of the cases (xxiv, b) without a preposition : *At dawn he sent a legion, primā luce legiōnem misit.*

## CONJUNCTIONS

VII. a. A *conjunction* connects words, phrases (xvi), clauses (xx), and sentences (xviii) : *boys and girls, pueri et puellae; they fought bravely but were conquered, fortiter pugnāvērunt sed victi sunt.*

b. A *coördinate conjunction* connects words, phrases, clauses, and sentences of equal order or rank. The conjunctions in the examples in VII, a are coördinate.

c. A *subordinate conjunction* connects a subordinate clause (xx, a) with a principal clause (xx, a) : *The boy was praised because he was industrious, puer laudātus est quod impiger erat.*

## INTERJECTIONS

VIII. An *interjection* is used to express strong feeling. It is not grammatically related to any other word in the sentence : *oh! ah! alas! hurrah! ēheu! ecce!*

NOTE. The following couplets have often proved useful to young persons in identifying the parts of speech :

Three little words we often see  
Are Articles, *a, an*, and *the*.

A Noun's the name of anything;  
As *school* or *garden*, *hoop* or *swing*.

## FIRST YEAR LATIN

Adjectives tell the kind of noun;  
As *great, small, pretty, white, or brown.*

Instead of nouns the Pronouns stand;  
*I come, you go, as they command.*

Verbs tell of something being done;  
As *read, write, spell, sing, jump, or run.*

How things are done the Adverbs tell;  
As *slowly, quickly, ill, or well.*

They also tell us where and when;  
As *here and there and now and then.*

A Preposition stands before  
A noun; as *in or through* a door.

Conjunctions join the words together;  
As rain *and* sunshine, wind *or* weather.

Conjunctions sentences unite;  
As kittens scratch *and* puppies bite.

An Interjection shows surprise;  
As *Oh! how pretty! Ah! how wise!*

## THE SENTENCE

IX. A *sentence* is a word or a group of words expressing a thought: *Stars shine; he walks; stellae lūcent; ambulat.*

X. a. A *declarative sentence* declares or asserts something: *The farmers are plowing the fields, agricolae agrōs arant.*

b. An *interrogative sentence* asks a question: *Why are the farmers plowing the fields? Cūr agricolae agrōs arant?*

c. An *imperative sentence* expresses a command, a request, or an entreaty: *Plow the fields to-day, hodiē agrōs arāte.*

d. An *exclamatory sentence* expresses strong feeling or emotion: *Would that he had remained! Utinam mānsisset!*

XI. *a.* A sentence is made up of two parts, one called the *subject* and the other the *predicate*.

*b.* The *subject* represents the person, place, or thing about which something is declared or asserted: *Birds sing, avēs cantant.*

*c.* The *predicate* declares or asserts something about the person, place, or thing which the subject represents: *Birds sing, avēs cantant.*

NOTE. In English and in Latin either the subject or the predicate, or both, may be enlarged to any extent by the addition of qualifying words and expressions called modifiers: *My sister's small birds | sing sweetly in the morning.*

XII. The *simple subject* is the noun or pronoun which signifies the person, place, or thing about which the assertion is made. The *simple predicate* is the verb that makes the assertion. *Birds* is the simple subject, and *sing* the simple predicate, in the note under XI, *c.*

XIII. The *complete subject* is the simple subject with all its modifiers. The *complete predicate* is the simple predicate with all its modifiers. Thus, in the example in the note under XI, *c* the complete subject is all that precedes the vertical line, and the complete predicate all that follows it.

XIV. *a.* The *object* of a verb is a word or an expression that completes the meaning of the verb, and signifies that which is affected by the action: *He sent messengers, nūntiōs misit; he wished me to go to Italy, mē in Italiam īre voluit.*

*b.* The *direct object* represents that which is immediately affected by the action of the verb; the *indirect object* that to or for which the action is performed. Thus, in *He gave me a book, mihi librum dedit*, *book* is the direct object, and *me* the indirect.

XV. *a.* A *predicate noun* or a *predicate adjective* is used after certain intransitive or passive verbs to complete their meaning, and to describe or define the subject: *Marcus is a sailor*; *the sailor is brave*; *Mārcus nauta est*; *nauta fortis est*.

*b.* The predicate noun or adjective is called the *complement* of the verb. Intransitive verbs that require a complement are called *copulative verbs*. The verb *be* (Latin *esse*) in its various forms (*am*, *was*, *has been*, etc.) is often called the *copula*.

*c.* The predicate noun or adjective has the same case as the subject; hence the term *predicate nominative*.

XVI. *a.* A *phrase* is a combination of words (not subject and predicate) used as a single part of speech.

*b.* An *adjective phrase* modifies a noun: *A man of great valor*, *vir magnae virtutis*.

*c.* An *adverbial phrase* modifies a verb: *They work with great diligence*, *magnā cum diligentiā labōrant*. In Latin certain cases of nouns are used to express what in English would be prepositional phrases of an adverbial nature (vi).

XVII. A *simple sentence* contains but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *Cæsar drew up a line of battle*, *Caesar aciem instrūxit*.

XVIII. A *compound sentence* contains two or more independent statements: *Cæsar drew up a line of battle, but the enemy fled*, *Caesar aciem instrūxit, sed hostēs fūgērunt*.

NOTE. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend on (qualify or limit) another statement.

XIX. A *complex sentence* contains one independent (principal) statement and one or more dependent (subordinate)

statements : *When the messenger had replied, the lieutenant spoke as follows, cum nūntius respondisset, lēgātus haec dixit.*

NOTE. A dependent, or subordinate, statement is one that qualifies or limits another in some way ; thus, the dependent statement *when the messenger had replied* limits the verb *spoke*, telling when the lieutenant spoke.

XX. a. The separate statements in a compound or a complex sentence are called *clauses*, and, as has already been seen, they may be either *independent (principal)* or *dependent (subordinate)*.

b. When dependent (subordinate) clauses modify nouns or pronouns they are called *adjective clauses* : *The girls whom we praised were good, puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant.*

c. When dependent (subordinate) clauses modify verbs they are called *adverbial clauses* : *When the messenger had replied, the lieutenant spoke as follows, cum nūntius respondisset, lēgātus haec dixit.*

d. When dependent (subordinate) clauses are used as nouns they are called *substantive clauses* : *That you are here pleases us, quod ades nōs dēlectat.*

e. Dependent (subordinate) clauses introduced by *when* (Latin *cum*, *ubi*, etc.) are called *temporal clauses* ; introduced by *because* (Latin *quod* etc.), they are called *causal clauses* ; introduced by *if* (Latin *si*), they are called *conditional clauses* ; introduced by *although* (Latin *cum*, *etsi*, etc.), they are called *concessive clauses* ; introduced by a relative pronoun (Latin *qui*), they are called *relative clauses*.

f. The independent clause of a complex sentence is called the *principal clause*. Connected clauses that are of the same rank, both independent or both dependent, are said to be *coördinate*.

## INFLECTION

XXI. *Inflection* is a change in the form of a word to indicate a change in its meaning or use : *man, men, boy, boy's, love, loved; vir, viri, puer, pueri, amant, amabant.*

## DECLENSION

XXII. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called its *declension*. Nouns and pronouns in English are declined to show number and case, and a few nouns to show gender. In Latin the nouns and pronouns are declined ; adjectives also are declined in gender, number, and case to agree with the nouns which they modify.

*Number*

XXIII. A noun or pronoun is in the *singular number* when it means one person, place, or thing : *town, city, I; oppidum, urbs, ego* ; in the *plural number* when it means more than one person, place, or thing : *towns, cities, we; oppida, urbēs, nōs.*

*Case*

XXIV. a. The several forms taken by words that are declined are called *cases*. In English there are the following cases, to indicate the uses of nouns and pronouns :

1. The *nominative*, primarily used as the subject of a sentence : *He throws the ball.*
2. The *possessive* (genitive), used to denote possession or ownership : *John throws his ball; see the queen's crown.*
3. The *objective* (accusative), used as the object of a transitive verb or of a preposition : *John throws the ball to him.*
4. The *dative*, used to express the indirect object of the verb : *John throws him the ball.* Only personal pronouns and the pronoun *who* have separate forms for these cases in English.

Nouns have the nominative, objective, and dative alike, with a separate form for the possessive.

*b.* In Latin there are seven cases: *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, vocative, and locative*; but a single form sometimes does duty for several cases (cf. *agricola*, 63). The nominative, genitive, and accusative cases are used much like the same cases in English. The dative expresses in general that relation of words to other words which is expressed in English by prepositional phrases beginning with *to* or *for*: *to the farmer, for the man*. The ablative expresses in general that relation of words to other words which is expressed in English by prepositional phrases beginning with *from, with, by, in*: *with a spear, by a story*.

*c.* The direct object of a verb in Latin is in the accusative case, but sometimes the direct object in English is expressed in Latin by the dative (425, 433).

### *Gender*

XXV. *a.* The gender of English nouns is what is called *natural gender*, and hence has very little to do with grammar. Thus, a noun denoting a male is in the *masculine gender*: *man, boy, father*; a noun denoting a female is in the *feminine gender*: *woman, girl, mother*; one denoting either male or female is in the *common gender*: *cat, dog, parent*; one denoting a sexless object is in the *neuter gender*: *river, wind, mountain*.

*b.* In Latin only nouns that denote persons and some animals have natural gender: *nauta, sailor* (masc.); *māter, mother* (fem.). All others have an arbitrary gender, called *grammatical gender*, determined chiefly by the ending: *flūmen, river* (neut.); *ventus, wind* (masc.); *nūbēs, cloud* (fem.).

## COMPARISON

XXVI. *a.* English adjectives and adverbs are inflected to show degree. This is called *comparison*. There are three degrees of comparison, the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*: positive *wise*, comparative *wiser*, superlative *wisest*; positive *good*, comparative *better*, superlative *best*; positive *often*, comparative *oftener*, superlative *oftenest*.

*b.* Adjectives and adverbs are also compared in English by prefixing the adverbs *more* and *most*: *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

*c.* Comparison in Latin is indicated exactly as in English: *sapiens*, *sapientior*, *sapientissimus*; *bonus*, *meliор*, *optimus*; *idoneus*, *magis idoneus*, *maxime idoneus*; *saepe*, *saepius*, *saepissime*.

## CONJUGATION

XXVII. *a.* The inflection of a verb is called *conjugation*. Verbs are conjugated to show voice, mood, and tense, and the number and person of the subject.

*b.* The English verb has but few changes of form. Thus the verb *love* has in common use only the forms *love*, *loves*, *loving*, and *loved*. Most of the conjugation of the verb is made up of verb phrases formed by the use of auxiliaries (IV, f): *I am loved*, *I shall love*, *I shall have been loved*, etc.

*c.* The Latin verb has many changes in form to show voice, mood, tense, number, and person: *amor*, *I am loved*; *amabō*, *I shall love*; *amātus erō*, *I shall have been loved*.

*Voice*

XXVIII. A verb is in the *active voice* when it represents the subject as acting (or being): *The man praised the boy*, *vir puerum laudāvit*. A verb is in the *passive voice* when it represents the subject as acted on: *The boy was praised by the man*, *puer a virō laudātus est*.

*Mood*

XXIX. A verb is in the *indicative mood* when it is used in stating a fact or in asking a question : *The citizens are assembling, cives conveniunt; why do they carry arms? cūr arma portant?*

XXX. a. In English a verb is in the *subjunctive mood* when it asserts something doubtfully or conditionally. It is used in subordinate clauses, and is usually introduced by *if*, *though*, and the like : *If he were here, I should be glad; Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.*"

NOTE. The subjunctive is very little used in modern English, its place being taken by the indicative.

b. In Latin the subjunctive has a great variety of uses, in independent as well as in dependent clauses (344, 358, 373, etc.).

XXXI. a. A verb is in the *imperative mood* when it expresses command, request, or entreaty : *Fortify the city, urbem mānīte.*

b. Unless emphatic the subject of the imperative (*thou* or *you*) is not expressed either in English or in Latin.

*The Infinitive*

XXXII. a. The *infinitive* in English (*to love, to have loved, etc.*) is a verbal noun. It has neither person nor number. Like a noun it may be the subject or the object or the complement of a verb : *To see is to believe; he wishes to go home.* Like a verb it may have a subject, an object, and adverbial modifiers : *We wish you to begin your work early.*

b. The Latin infinitive is used in the same way that the English infinitive is used. It differs, however, from the English infinitive in not being used in prose in expressions of purpose (*They came to see me*), and in being used constantly for the verb of a statement that is given indirectly : *He said that he would come, dixit se ventūrum esse.*

c. The verbal noun in *-ing* is sometimes called an infinitive : *Seeing is believing = to see is to believe.* This verbal noun has its counterpart in the Latin gerund (459).

### Tense

XXXIII. a. A verb is in the *present, past (imperfect), or future* tense according as it represents an action as taking place in present, past, or future time : *I love, I loved (was loving), I shall love ; amō, amābam, amābō.*

b. The *present perfect (perfect)* tense represents an action completed in the present : *I have loved, amāvī*; the *past perfect (pluperfect)* an action completed in the past before some other past action or state : *I had loved, amāveram*; and the *future perfect* an action completed in the future before some other future action or state : *I shall have loved, amāverō.*

### The Participle

XXXIV. a. The *participle* is a verbal adjective. Like an adjective it may qualify a noun : *struggling soldiers, militēs labōrantēs.* Like a verb it may have an object and adverbial modifiers : *Fearing danger they remained in the camp, periculum veriti in castris mānsērunt.*

b. There are in English three participles in the active voice : present, *loving* ; past, *loved* ; perfect, *having loved* ; and three in the passive voice : present, (*being*) *loved* ; past, *loved* ; perfect, *having been loved*. In Latin the past and perfect active and the present passive participles are wanting, but there is a future participle.

c. The participle in *-ing* is used with the auxiliary *be* to make the progressive form of the verb : *you are loving, he was loving, they will be loving.* Latin has no special tenses for the progressive forms.

## TO THE BEGINNER IN LATIN

**What Latin is.** Latin is the language that was used by the ancient Romans. It gets its name from the *Lat'i'ni*, a little tribe living in western Italy more than twenty-five hundred years ago. The Latini, and their successors, the Romans, slowly extended their lands and their power until they gained control of all Italy, and finally of all the civilized world of those days. Their dominions reached from the Atlantic Ocean to Persia and from the Baltic Sea to the deserts of Africa, and their language was spoken wherever they ruled. For about six hundred years the Romans were the most powerful nation on the earth. Their history covers in all a period of twelve centuries ; no nation has had a longer history.

**Why Latin is studied.** And now why is it that it is worth your while to study a language that is so many centuries old ?

First, a knowledge of Latin helps you to use English more correctly. As more than half the words in the English language are of Latin origin, you yourself in a sense speak Latin to-day. There are the words of your everyday talk, like *animal* ; there are the learned words, like *emancipate* ; there are the terms of law, of medicine, and of the sciences, like *mandamus*, *delirium*, and *antennae* ; and there are the words which are newly come into use, like *tractor*. If you study Latin, you will be helped to know the meaning of many of these words, how to spell them, and how to use them correctly ; all of which is quite worth your while, particularly if you are intending to enter one of the professions.

Again, the study of Latin will train your mind. Latin is somewhat unlike English in the form of its words and much

unlike English in the order of the words in its sentences. You will therefore be obliged to look carefully, and to think carefully, and to speak carefully whenever you try to read and to translate anything written in Latin. But this close attention will do good to your mind : it will train your powers of observation, of clear thinking, and of clear expression ; in fact, no other subject that you study in school can do as much for you as can Latin toward developing these desirable powers.

Furthermore, the reading of Latin will add to your information. If you are to be a well-informed person, you will need to know something about Rome and the Romans, and what they have meant in the history of the world ; and in no other way can you better come to know and to appreciate the literature, the life, the customs, and the civilization of the Romans than by the faithful study of their language and of the things written in that language.

**How to study Latin.** 1. Never allow yourself to think that Latin is not worth your best efforts or that it is too hard for you. Industry and confidence will bring you success in this study.

2. Have a fixed hour each day for the study of your Latin. If possible, prepare your lesson for to-morrow immediately after reciting the lesson of to-day. Your interest will then be greater and your mind better fitted to grasp the subject.

3. Learn each day's lesson with thoroughness. Neglect no part of the lesson even if it seems to you unimportant.

4. Before beginning a new lesson recall what you have already learned about the subject to be taught in the new lesson. For example, if you are about to study a new use of one of the cases, recall all the uses of that case which you have previously learned.

5. Review the vocabularies regularly. A knowledge of the meanings of the words will be a great saving of time to you, as well as a constant encouragement. Aim to know every word

you have met, and to this end keep lists of words about the meaning of which you are doubtful.

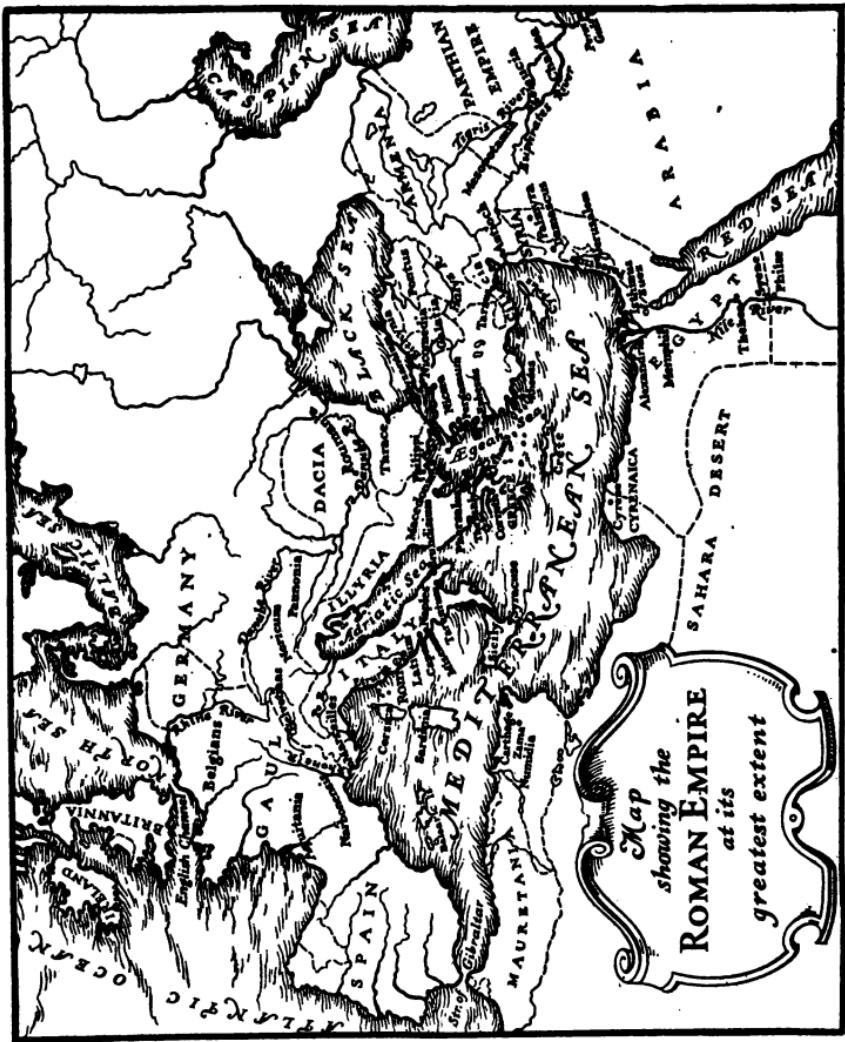
6. Recite the declensions and the conjugations by yourself aloud. It will help you to remember them, and you will make better recitations. Read the Latin sentences aloud each day.

7. Go over the new lesson slowly, and thus avoid mistakes in the spelling of words, in their endings, and in the explanation of Latin constructions.

8. Recall your English grammar when you are learning Latin constructions; most of the Latin usages that you will learn in your first year are like English usages.

9. Study the lessons as a whole. Then go back to special difficulties. Go over the lesson again just before the recitation and consider the troublesome parts.





## INTRODUCTION

### ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet has no *j* or *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.
2. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**. The other letters are consonants.
3. The letter **i** is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the force of a consonant and is called *i-consonant*. Thus in *iaciō*, *I throw*, the first **i** is a consonant, and the second a vowel.

### SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS<sup>1</sup>

4. The vowels are either long or short. In this book the long vowels are marked (-); unmarked vowels are to be regarded as short. The vowels are sounded as follows:

ā like the last <i>a</i> in <i>aha'</i>	ā like the first <i>a</i> in <i>aha'</i>
ē like <i>e</i> in <i>they</i>	ē like <i>e</i> in <i>met</i>
ī like <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i>	ī like <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i>
ō like <i>o</i> in <i>note</i>	ō like <i>o</i> in <i>obey</i>
ū like <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>	ū like <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i>

5. The diphthongs are sounded as follows:

ae like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i>	eu like <i>eu</i> in <i>feud</i>
au like <i>ou</i> in <i>our</i>	oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i>
ei like <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i>	ui like <i>we</i>

<sup>1</sup> Latin is pronounced to-day substantially as it was pronounced by the Romans at the beginning of the Christian era.

6.. The consonants generally have the same sound as the corresponding consonants in English. But there are the following exceptions :

**c** is like *c* in *come*

**g** is like *g* in *get*

**i-consonant** is like *y* in *yet*

**s** is like *s* in *sun*

**t** is like *t* in *time*

**v** is like *w* in *wine*

**x** is like *x* in *extra*

**bs** and **bt** are like *ps* and *pt*

**ch** is like *k* in *kite*

**gu**, **qu**, and sometimes **su** before a vowel are like *gw*, *qw*, and *sw* (*u* is not counted as a vowel)

**ph** is like *p*

**th** is like *t*

When a consonant is doubled (as **ll**), it should be pronounced twice.

#### EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

7. 1. sum, tum. 2. cum, dum. 3. ad, id. 4. in, an. 5. at, et, ut. 6. hic, hīc, hāc. 7. hōc, hūc. 8. hoc, num. 9. is, bis, īs. 10. dic, dūc. 11. fac, fer. 12. aut, hae. 13. ē, ā, ī. 14. ex, ab, ob. 15. dō, dā, dē. 16. pāx, dux. 17. nox, vōx. 18. pars, sōl. 19. trēs, mōs. 20. quō, quā. 21. iūs, qui. 22. quae, quīn. 23. quis, sē. 24. mē, tē. 25. gēns, sic. 26. vel, vir, iam.

#### SYLLABLES

8. A syllable consists of a vowel or a diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs : *ō-ce'-a-nus, ocean.*

9. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels is joined with the vowel following : *lā-ti-tū'-dō, width.*

10. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, the first is pronounced with the preceding vowel : *im-mor-tā'-lis, immortal.*

But a consonant followed by *l* or *r* is pronounced with the *l* or *r*, except in *ll* and *rr*: *pū'-bli-cus*, *public*; when *ll* or *rr* occurs, one *l* or one *r* is joined to the preceding syllable, and the other to the following syllable: *ter'-ra*, *land*.

Compound words are divided in such a way as to show the component parts: *ab'-est* (*ab*, *away*, + *est*, *he is*), *he is away*.

11. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

12. A vowel is generally short before another vowel or *h*: *pō-e'-ma*, *poem*; *nī'-hil*, *nothing*.

13. A vowel is generally short before *nt* or *nd*, and before final *m* or final *t*: *vō'-cānt*, *they call*; *vo-cā'-bām*, *I was calling*.

14. A vowel is long before *nf* or *ns*: *a'-māns*, *loving*.

15. A vowel resulting from the contraction of two vowels is long: *cō'-gō* (*co-agō*), *I bring together*.

16. The quantity of vowels other than those mentioned in the preceding sections must be learned by observation.

#### QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

17. A syllable is *long by nature* when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: *vic-tō'-ri-a*, *victory*; *prae'-mi-um*, *reward*.

18. A syllable is *short by nature* when it does not contain a long vowel or a diphthong: *o-pi'-ni-ō*, *opinion*.

19. A syllable is *long by position* when it has a short vowel followed by *x* or *z*, or by two or more consonants, unless these two consonants are *p*, *b*, *t*, *d*, *c*, *g*, followed by *l* or *r*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: *dē-tri-men'-tum*, *loss*.

## ACCENT

20. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first syllable: *pa'-ter, father.*

21. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: *dē-mōn-strā'-re, to point out; ce-le'-ri-tās, swiftness; ē-ven'-tus, outcome* (cf. 19).

22. Several words, of which the commonest are *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que*, *and*, are appended to other words. The words so appended are known as enclitics. The words to which they are appended are accented on the syllable preceding the enclitic, whether that syllable is long or short: *a-mat'-ne?* *does he love?* *ar-mă'-que, and arms.*

## EXERCISE IN ACCENT AND PRONUNCIATION

23. Divide the following words into syllables, state the rule for the accent, and then pronounce:

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. dividunt, appellāre      | 6. causīs, praecēdō       |
| 2. institūtis, differēbāmus | 7. finis, prohibitus      |
| 3. hūmānitāte, prōvinciā    | 8. initiō, persuāserāmus  |
| 4. longus, animōs           | 9. tempora, magistrātūm   |
| 5. importābunt, bellum      | 10. frāternus, conloquium |

24. The following Latin version of "Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star" may be used for practice in pronunciation, and for illustration of the preceding statements about syllables, accent, etc.:

MICĀ, MICĀ

Micā, micā, parva stella!  
Miror quaenam sis, tam bella!  
Splendēns ēminus in illō,  
Alba velut gemma, caelō.

Quandō fervēns Sōl discessit,  
 Nec calōre prāta pāscit,  
 Mox ostendis lūmen pūrum,  
 Micāns, micāns per obscūrum.

Tibi noctū qui vagātur  
 Ob scintillulam grātātur ;  
 Ni micārēs tū, nōn scīret  
 Quās per viās errāns īret.

Meum saepe thalamum lūce  
 Speculāris cūriōsā ;  
 Neque carpseris sopōrem  
 Dōnec vēnit Sōl per auram.



THE ARCH OF TITUS, SHOWING A ROMAN INSCRIPTION

## LESSON I

### THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND VERBS THE NOMINATIVE CASE USED AS SUBJECT

#### 25. The Singular and Plural of Nouns and Verbs.

NOUN	VERB
<i>Nom. Sing. agricola, farmer</i>	<i>3d Pers. Sing. labōrat, works,</i>
<i>Nom. Plur. agricolae, farmers</i>	<i>is working, does work</i>
	<i>3d Pers. Plur. labōrant, work,</i>
	<i>are working, do work</i>

a. Observe that the distinction between the singular and the plural is shown by the final letters of the noun and of the verb. These final letters of a noun are called *case endings*; the final letters of a verb are called *personal endings*.

b. Form the nominative plural of the nouns in the vocabulary, and the third person plural of the verbs.

#### 26.

#### VOCABULARY

agri'cola, farmer ( <i>agriculture</i> )	appropin'quat, approaches, draws near ( <i>propinquity</i> )
Cornēlia, Cornelia	can'tat, sings ( <i>incantation</i> )
Iūlia, Julia	labō'rat, works, labors, suffers ( <i>laboratory</i> )
nau'ta, sailor ( <i>nautical</i> )	na'tat, swims ( <i>natatorium</i> )
puel'la, girl	quis, interrog. pron., who?
et, conj., and	quid, interrog. pron., what?
-ne, enclitic, sign of a question	
am'bulat, walks ( <i>perambulate</i> )	

#### 27. The Nominative Case used as Subject.

1. *Puella cantat, the girl sings (is singing, does sing).*
2. *Puellae cantant, the girls sing (are singing, do sing).*
3. *Cantatne puella, does the girl sing (is the girl singing)?*
4. *Cantantne puellae, do the girls sing (are the girls singing)?*

a. In Latin there is no article (III, b): *puella* may be translated *girl*, *a girl*, or *the girl*; and *puellae*, *girls* or *the girls*.

b. What is the subject (XI, b) of each of the model sentences, and what is the predicate (XI, c)? In what case is the subject of a Latin verb (XXIV)?

c. Observe that the verbs agree with their subjects in number.

d. Observe that *-ne* is not separately translated. Usually it is attached to the emphatic word in the sentence, and the emphasized word is placed first. When an interrogative word is used, *-ne* is omitted: see sentence 11 below. In English *-ne* is represented on the printed page by the question mark, and in oral translation by the inflection of the voice.

**28. Rule for the Nominative Case as Subject.** *The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.*

**29. Rule for the Agreement of the Verb with its Subject.** *A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

#### EXERCISES

**30.** 1. *Nauta cantat.* 2. *Nautae cantant.* 3. *Agricola labōrat.* 4. *Agricolae labōrant.* 5. *Puella natat.* 6. *Puellae natant.* 7. *Cornēlia appropinquat.* 8. *Puellaene appropinquant?* 9. *Cor-nēlia et puellae cantant.* 10. *Iūlia labōrat et cantat.* 11. *Quid appropinquat?* 12. *Labōrantne nautae?* 13. *Quis ambulat?*

**31.** 1. The sailor is swimming. 2. The girls are singing.  
 3. Who approaches? 4. Are the sailors approaching? 5. Does  
 Cornelia sing? 6. Cornelius and Julia are walking and singing.  
 7. The girl sings, and the farmer works. 8. Sailors and farmers  
 are working.



TUBA

## LESSON II

### THE ACCUSATIVE CASE USED AS THE DIRECT OBJECT

#### 32. The Accusative Case used as the Direct Object.

1. **Nauta puellam vocat**, *the sailor calls the girl.*
2. **Nautae puellas vocant**, *the sailors call the girls.*

a. Observe that **puellam** is the object (xiv, a) of **vocat**, and **puellas** of **vocant**; and that when a Latin noun is used as the object, the case ending is not the same as when it is the subject and so in the nominative. The case of the object in Latin is called *accusative* (xxiv) and not objective, as in English.

b. Form the accusative singular and plural of the nouns in sections 26 and 34.

33. *Rule for the Accusative as the Direct Object. The object of a verb is in the accusative case.*

#### 34.

#### VOCABULARY

a'qua, water ( <i>aquatic</i> )	con'vocat, calls together ( <i>convoke</i> )
Gal'ba, Galba	ha'bet, has, holds ( <i>habit</i> )
lit'tera, letter (of the alphabet); plur., a letter, epistle ( <i>literary</i> )	lau'dat, praises ( <i>laud</i> )
ter'ra, land ( <i>terrace</i> )	vi'det, sees ( <i>provide</i> )
tu'ba, trumpet ( <i>tuba</i> )	quem, acc. of quis, whom?
a'mat, loves, likes ( <i>amateur</i> )	quid, acc. of quid, what?
	nunc, adv., now

35. *Order of Words.* Observe that in the model sentences (32) the order of Latin words is unlike the order of the words in the English sentences. The normal position of the subject of a Latin sentence is at the beginning; that of the verb is at the end. Variations from this order put emphasis on the word moved toward the beginning of the sentence; thus, **puellam nauta vocat** means that the sailor calls *a girl*. In translating Latin sentences put the emphasis where it belongs.

**EXERCISES**

**36.** 1. Galba tubām habet. 2. Tubāsne habet Galba? 3. Pueliae Cornēliam et Iūliam laudant. 4. Litterās nauta videt. 5. Nautās Galba convocat. 6. Quis Galbam videt? 7. Quem videt Galba? 8. Agricola puellās nunc convocat. 9. Videntne nautae terram? 10. Cornēliam puellae amant.

**37.** 1. Who is approaching? 2. The sailor and Galba are approaching. 3. What has the farmer? 4. The farmer has land. 5. Does Galba praise the farmers? 6. The girl sees the water and the land. 7. The sailors call together the farmers. 8. Julia now has the letter.



A SCENE IN A ROMAN STREET

## LESSON III

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

**38. The Four Conjugations.** Regular verbs in Latin are divided into four classes, or conjugations (xxvii), distinguished from one another by the stem vowel before the ending -re of the present infinitive active.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT STEM	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
<i>First Conj.</i> amā're	amā-	ā
<i>Second Conj.</i> monē're	monē-	ē
<i>Third Conj.</i> re'gere	rege-	ē
<i>Fourth Conj.</i> audi're	audi-	i

### 39. The Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation.

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1st Pers. a'mō, <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>	-ō, <i>I</i>
2d Pers. a'mā's, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-s, <i>you</i>
3d Pers. a'mat, <i>he, she, it loves, is loving, does love</i>	-t, <i>he, she, it</i>
PLURAL	
1st Pers. amā'mus, <i>we love, are loving, do love</i>	-mus, <i>we</i>
2d Pers. amā'tis, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>	-tis, <i>you</i>
3d Pers. a'mant, <i>they love, are loving, do love</i>	-nt, <i>they</i>

a. Observe that in *amō* the final a of the stem disappears, giving *amō* instead of *amaō*. In what forms is this a of the stem not long (13)?

b. When the subject of a verb is a personal pronoun, it is seldom expressed in Latin unless emphatic. Why is the omission of the subject possible? Translate *puellās convocātis* and *nautam vident*.

c. Inflect like *amō* the present indicative active of *ambulō*, *appro-pinquō*, *cantō*, *convocō*, *labōrō*, *laudō*, and *natō*.

## 40.

## VOCABULARY

dō, pres. stem dā- ( <i>the a of dō is regularly short, but long in dās</i> ), give ( <i>dative</i> )	sae'pe, adv., often sed, conj., but spec'tō, pres. stem spectā-, look at ( <i>spectator</i> )
in'cola, inhabitant	

## EXERCISES

41. 1. Ambulat, convocat, cantat. 2. Convocantne? cantantne? laudantne? 3. Natās, labōrās, ambulās. 4. Amāmus, appropin-quāmus, ambulāmus. 5. Convocātis, cantātis, amātis. 6. Amant, dat, laudāmus. 7. Quem spectās? 8. Incolās laudō. 9. Iūliam saepe laudātis. 10. Sed litterās laudāmus. 11. Quid nunc datis?

42. 1. I swim, he swims, I am swimming. 2. Are you working? we sing, does she praise? 3. They are approaching, they give, you walk. 4. You are praising, they swim, he does labor. 5. We call together the inhabitants, but you call together the sailors. 6. The girls are now looking at the water.



RUINS OF A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

## LESSON IV

### THE GENITIVE CASE USED TO DENOTE POSSESSION

#### 43. The Genitive Case used to denote Possession.

1. *Filiae Galbae cantant*, the daughters of *Galba* sing, or *Galba's daughters* sing.
2. *Filiās nautārum laudāmus*, we praise the daughters of the sailors, or we praise the sailors' daughters.
  - a. Observe that **Galbae** modifies **filiae** and tells whose daughters are singing. In the same way **nautārum** modifies **filiās** and tells whose daughters we are praising. This usage of **Galbae** and of **nautārum** is like that of the English possessive case (xxiv, a, 2). In Latin the case thus used is called the *genitive* (xxiv, b), and this usage of that case is called the *Genitive of Possession*.
  - b. Observe the case endings of the genitive. Form the genitive singular and the genitive plural of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 45.
  - c. Note the translations given to the genitives in the model sentences. Translate **filia agricolae** and **filiæ agricolärum**.
  - d. The genitive normally stands after the word it modifies.

#### 44. Rule for the Genitive of Possession. The word denoting the owner or possessor is in the genitive case.

#### 45.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>fē'mina</b> , woman ( <i>feminine</i> )	<b>exspec'tō</b> , <i>pres. stem exspectā-</i> , wait
<b>fi'lia</b> , daughter ( <i>filial</i> )	wait for ( <i>expect</i> )
<b>fortū'na</b> , fortune ( <i>fortunate</i> )	<b>fu'gō</b> , <i>pres. stem fugā-</i> , put to flight,
<b>poē'ta</b> , poet ( <i>poetic</i> )	rout
<b>rēgi'na</b> , queen	<b>li'berō</b> , <i>pres. stem liberā-</i> , set free,
<b>cu'ius</b> , <i>gen. of quis and of quid</i> , of whom? whose? of what?	free ( <i>liberate</i> )
<b>dēlec'tō</b> , <i>pres. stem dēlectā-</i> , delight, please ( <i>delectable</i> )	<b>por'tō</b> , <i>pres. stem portā-</i> , carry, bring ( <i>portable</i> )
	<b>et'iam</b> , <i>adv.</i> , even

**EXERCISES**

**46.** 1. Dēlectat, fugāmus, liberās. 2. Exspectāmus, portant, dēlectās. 3. Dēlectāmus, fugātis, liberant. 4. Liberatne? liberō, portāmus. 5. Filiās incolārum liberant. 6. Poētae fortūna rēgīnam dēlectat. 7. Spectāmus filiās fēminaē. 8. Filiane Galbae litterās exspectat? 9. Etiam tubae nautārum incolās fugant. 10. Cuius litterās portās?

**47.** 1. I am calling together the sailors of the queen. 2. The poets' daughters love the land. 3. Whose daughter are you setting free? 4. Do they praise Galba's daughters? 5. We are now waiting for the farmers. 6. Whom does the fortune of the farmers delight?



A STREET IN POMPEII TO-DAY

## LESSON V

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION · CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH QUOD

#### 48. The Present Indicative Active of the Second Conjugation.

##### SINGULAR

1st Pers. mo'neō, *I advise, am advising, do advise*

2d Pers. mo'nēs, *you advise, are advising, do advise*

3d Pers. mo'neōt, *he, she, it advises, is advising, does advise*

##### PLURAL

1st Pers. monē'mus, *we advise, are advising, do advise*

2d Pers. monē'tis, *you advise, are advising, do advise*

3d Pers. mo'nēnt, *they advise, are advising, do advise*

a. What verbs belong to the second conjugation (38)?

b. Observe that to the stem **monē-** the same personal endings are added to inflect **moneō** that were added to the stem **amā-** to inflect **amō**. Observe the three forms in which the present tense has the **e** of the stem not marked long. Compare the forms of the present tense of **amō** (39).

c. To the stems **docē-**, **habē-**, **terrē-**, and **vidē-** add the personal endings and thus inflect their present indicative active.

#### 49.

##### VOCABULARY

pecū'nia, money (*pecuniary*)

mo'neō, monēre, advise, warn (*admonition*)

pirā'ta, pirate (*piratical*)

ter'reō, terrēre, scare, frighten (*terror*)

prae'da, booty, plunder (*predatory*)

vi'deō, vidēre, see (*improvident*)

cūr, *adv.*, why?

quod, *conj.*, because

do'ceō, docēre, teach, show (*docile*)

ha'beō, habēre, have, hold (*habit*)

a. The infinitive will hereafter be given with each verb in the vocabulary. Of what help will this be to you (38)?

**50. Causal Clause.** For the kinds of clauses in a complex sentence see XIX, XX.

**Incolās monet quod pīrātē appropinquant,** *he warns the inhabitants because the pirates are approaching.*

a. Observe that **quod** introduces a dependent clause, which tells the reason, or cause, of what is stated in the independent part of the sentence. Such a **quod** clause is called a *causal clause*.

**51. Rule for a Causal Clause with Quod.** *The cause of an action may be expressed by a dependent clause introduced by quod.*

#### EXERCISES

**52.** 1. Pecūniām habēs. 2. Iūliām doceō. 3. Incolās saepe monēs. 4. Puellāsne terrent? 5. Quem vident? 6. Monēmus et docēmus. 7. Quid habēmus? 8. Praedam nunc videō. 9. Tubam vidētis. 10. Agricolāsne monētis? 11. Litterās habent. 12. Iūlia filiās poētēs docet. 13. Etiam pecūniām agricolārum habent pīrātēs. 14. Filiārum fortūna fēminām dēlectat. 15. Cūr Iūliām et Cornēliām monēt? 16. Quem docēs et monēs? 17. Fēminaē puellās laudant quod labōrant.

**53.** 1. They are advising. 2. They have. 3. I am warning. 4. You frighten. 5. We see. 6. Does he teach the girls? 7. Do Cornelius and Julia look at the pirate? 8. Why do the pirates frighten the inhabitants? 9. They have the money and the booty. 10. We praise the woman because she teaches the girls. 11. What do you see? What are you looking at?



A ROMAN COIN

## LESSON VI

### THE DATIVE CASE USED AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT · THE ABLATIVE USED IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES TO SHOW PLACE WHERE

**54. The Dative and Ablative Cases.** Besides the three cases that you have already studied, there are in Latin in common use two other cases, the *dative* and the *ablative*. For the general character of these cases see xxiv, *a*, 4 ; *b*.

#### 55.

#### VOCABULARY

do'mina, lady, mistress (of slaves) (dominant)	ha'bitō, habitāre, dwell, live ( <i>in-habitant</i> )
fā'bulā, story ( <i>fable</i> )	ma'neō, manēre, remain ( <i>mansion</i> )
in'sula, island ( <i>peninsula</i> )	nā'rō, nārrāre, tell, relate ( <i>narrator</i> )
vi'a, way, road, street ( <i>viaduct</i> )	cui, dat. of quis and of quid, to whom? for whom? to what? for what?
in, prep. with abl., in, on dēmōn'strō, dēmōnstrāre, point out, show ( <i>demonstrate</i> )	

#### 56. The Dative used as Indirect Object.

*Cornēliae et puellīs fābulam nārrō, I am telling a story to Cornelia and the girls, or I am telling Cornelia and the girls a story.*

*a.* Observe that what is being told is a story, *fābulam*, the direct object; and that the persons to whom the story is told are *Cornelia* and the *girls*. *Cornēliae* and *puellīs*, therefore, are in the dative case, as this is the case which expresses the relation of *to* or *for* (xxiv, *b*). This usage, which is like the English (xxiv, *a*, 4), is called the *Dative of the Indirect Object*.

*b.* The case endings of the dative are -ae, singular, and -is, plural. Form the dative, singular and plural, of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 55.

**57. Rule for the Dative of the Indirect Object.** *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

**58. The Ablative used in Prepositional Phrases to show Place Where.**

In **terrā et in insulis habitant**, they live on the land and on the islands.

a. Observe that the phrases (xvi, a) *on the land*, **in terrā**, and *on the islands*, **in insulis**, show *place where*. **Terrā** and **insulis** are in the ablative case (xxiv, b).

b. The case endings of the ablative are -ā, singular, and -is, plural.

c. Form the ablative, singular and plural, of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 55.

**59. Rule for the Ablative of Place Where.** *Place where is commonly expressed by a phrase consisting of a preposition, usually in, with the ablative case.*

**60. Order of Words.** The indirect object normally stands before the direct object. An ablative normally stands before the direct object. Variations from this order give emphasis to the word removed from its normal position.

#### EXERCISES

**61.** 1. *Agricola dominae viam dēmōnstrat.* 2. *Puellis etiam Cornēlia fābulam nārrat.* 3. *In insulā habitāmus.* 4. *Quis poētīs insulam dēmōnstrat?* 5. *Cūr pīrātae in aquā manent?* 6. *Cui pecūniām dās?* 7. *Nautae agricolis praedam dēmōnstrant.* 8. *Incolae in viis appropinquant et rēgīnam spectant.* 9. *Dominām amant quod fābulās nārrat.*

**62.** 1. To whom are you pointing out the lady? 2. I am pointing out the letter to Julia. 3. They are telling stories to the queen. 4. Galba's daughter gives money to the sailors. 5. Do the pirates live on the island? 6. Whose daughters are approaching in the street?

## LESSON VII

### THE FIRST DECLENSION · GENDER

**63. The First Declension.** There are five declensions (xxii) of Latin nouns. Those nouns which end in *-a* in the nominative singular and in *-ae* in the genitive singular are said to belong to the *first declension*. Learn the complete inflection of the noun **agricola**:

SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i> agri'cola	-a
<i>Gen.</i> agri'colae	-ae
<i>Dat.</i> agri'colae	-ae
<i>Acc.</i> agri'colam	-am
<i>Abl.</i> agri'colā	-ā

PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i> agri'colae	-ae
<i>Gen.</i> agricolā'rūm	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i> agri'colis	-is
<i>Acc.</i> agri'colās	-ās
<i>Abl.</i> agri'colis	-is

a. Observe that the inflection of a noun consists merely in adding the case endings to an unchangeable part of the word. This unchangeable part is called the *base*. Decline like **agricola** the nouns in section 55.

**64. Gender.** Latin nouns are masculine, feminine, or neuter in gender (xxv, *a*, *b*).

a. Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. **Nauta**, **agricola**, **Galba**, **poēta**, and **pīrāta** are the masculine nouns you have learned. Hereafter the gender of nouns will be shown in the vocabularies by the letters *m.*, *f.*, or *n.*

## 65.

## VOCABULARY

diligen'tia, -ae, f., diligence ( <i>dili-</i> <i>gent</i> )	por'ta, -ae, f., gate ( <i>porta</i> )
fu'ga, -ae, f., flight, rout ( <i>refuge</i> )	prōvin'cia, -ae, f., province ( <i>pro-</i> <i>vincial</i> )
Germā'nia, -ae, f., Germany ( <i>Ger-</i> <i>manic</i> )	pug'na, -ae, f., fight ( <i>pugnacious</i> )
Grae'cia, -ae, f., Greece ( <i>Grecian</i> )	sil've, -ae, f., woods, forest ( <i>silvan</i> )
Ita'lia, -ae, f., Italy ( <i>Italian</i> )	victō'ria, -ae, f., victory ( <i>victorious</i> )

a. The ending -ae of the genitive singular is placed after the nouns in the vocabulary to indicate that these nouns belong to the first declension.

## EXERCISES

66. 1. Cūr poētae in silvis manent? 2. Cui victōriam rēgi-nae nārrās? 3. In portā Iūliam et Cornēliam videō. 4. In Germāniā et in Graeciā saepe agricolās convocant. 5. Habitантne in prōvinciā? 6. Victōria nautārum agricolās terret. 7. Diligentia puellārum fēminam dēlectat. 8. In pugnā pīrātās Italiae fugāmus. 9. Galba fugam pīrātārum nārrat.

67. 1. I am living in a province of Greece. 2. The forests of the provinces delight the poets. 3. He gives money to Julia's daughter. 4. To whom do you give water? 5. Whose diligence do you praise? 6. They are waiting in the road and looking at the woods.



A WALL DRAWING. PROBABLY THE WORK OF A ROMAN SCHOOLBOY

## FIRST REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS I-VII

**68.** Give the English meanings of the following words:

agricola	dō	habitō	-ne	quis
ambulō	doceō	in	nunc	quod
amō	domina	incola	pecūnia	rēgina
appropinquō	et	īnsula	pīrāta	saepe
aqua	etiam	labōrō	poēta	sed
cantō	exspectō	laudō	porta	silva
convocō	fābula	liberō	portō	spectō
cui	fēmina	littera	praeda	terra
cuius	filia	maneō	prōvincia	terreō
cūr	fortūna	moneō	puella	tuba
dēlectō	fuga	nārrō	pugna	via
dēmōnstrō	fugō	natō	quem	victōria
diligentia	habeō	nauta	quid	videō

**69.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

often	sing	approach, draw near
to whom? to what?	walk	give
labor, work, suffer	farmer	booty, plunder
whom?	call together	island
wait, wait for, expect	flight, rout	poet
put to flight, rout	land	trumpet
love, like	forest, woods	teach, show
girl	diligence	lady, mistress
gate	delight, please	remain
and	who?	way, road, street
water	but	inhabitant
have, hold	in, on	advise, warn
dwell, live	look at	sailor
story	because	province

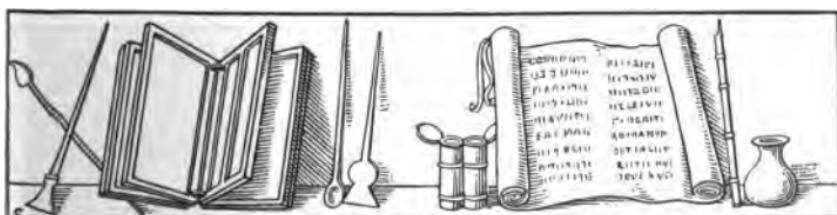
point out, show	fight	tell, relate, narrate
daughter	victory	letter
set free, free, liberate	see	praise
queen	fortune	what?
why?	carry, bring	scare, frighten
money	woman	whose?
even	pirate	swim
now		

70. Decline the nouns and conjugate the verbs in 68. Give the genitive singular of each noun; give the other cases, in the singular and in the plural. Give the third person, singular and plural, of the present indicative of each verb in 68.

71. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 68. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

72. Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a brief sentence in Latin:

1. Nominative as the subject
2. Agreement of the verb with its subject
3. Accusative as the object
4. Genitive of possession
5. Causal clause with **quod**
6. Dative of the indirect object
7. Ablative of place where
8. Questions



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

## LESSON VIII

### THE SECOND DECLENSION

**73. The Second Declension.** Most nouns of the second declension end in **-us** or **-um**. Those ending in **-us** are generally masculine; those in **-um** are neuter. *Hortus*, *garden*, and *dōnum*, *gift*, are inflected as follows:

		SINGULAR			
		CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hor'tus</i>	<b>-us</b>		<i>dō'num</i>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hor'tī</i>	<b>-i</b>		<i>dō'nī</i>	<b>-i</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hor'tō</i>	<b>-ō</b>		<i>dō'nō</i>	<b>-ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hor'tum</i>	<b>-um</b>		<i>dō'num</i>	<b>-um</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hor'tō</i>	<b>-ō</b>		<i>dō'nō</i>	<b>-ō</b>
		PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hor'tī</i>	<b>-i</b>		<i>dō'na</i>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hortō'rum</i>	<b>-ōrum</b>		<i>dōnō'rum</i>	<b>-ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hor'tīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>		<i>dō'nīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hor'tōs</i>	<b>-ōs</b>		<i>dō'na</i>	<b>-a</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hor'tīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>		<i>dō'nīs</i>	<b>-īs</b>

a. Learn the case endings first. Then learn the inflection by adding the case endings to the base of each noun. Then practice the inflection of the nouns in section 74.

b. What do you notice about the dative and the ablative plural of the first and second declensions? What cases are alike in the second declension?

### 74.

### VOCABULARY

<b>ami'cus, -i, m.</b> , friend ( <i>amicable</i> )	<b>hor'tus, -i, m.</b> , garden ( <i>horticulture</i> )
<b>do'minus, -i, m.</b> , master (of slaves) ( <i>domineer</i> )	
<b>dō'num, -i, n.</b> , gift, present ( <i>donor</i> )	<b>op'pidum, -i, n.</b> , town
<b>e'quus, -i, m.</b> , horse ( <i>equine</i> )	<b>ser'vus, -i, m.</b> , slave ( <i>servile</i> )
<b>frūmen'tum, -i, n.</b> , grain	<b>tribū'nus, -i, m.</b> , tribune ( <i>tribunal</i> )

**EXERCISES**

75. 1. Oppidum videō. 2. Oppida vidēmus. 3. Dominusne servum monet? 4. Equum tribūnus spectat. 5. Equī domīnōrum servōs dēlectant. 6. Mārcus amīcō fābulam nārrat. 7. Domīnī amīcis praeدام dant. 8. In oppidis amīcōs saepe convocāmus. 9. Servī appropinquant et frūmentum et aquam portant.

76. 1. Who has the tribune's horse? 2. The servants now have the gifts of the masters. 3. Have you friends in the garden? 4. A servant carries the grain of the tribune. 5. Whose gift are they showing to Marcus? 6. We see the town and the gardens of the town.



RUINS OF AN AMPHITHEATER

## LESSON IX

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**77. Adjectives in Latin.** Latin adjectives, unlike English adjectives, are declined (xxii). There are two declensions of adjectives.

**78. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.** One class of adjectives has in its masculine and neuter forms the case endings of the second declension, and in its feminine forms the case endings of the first declension: as, **bonus** (masc.), **bona** (fem.), **bonum** (neut.), *good*. Learn the full declension of **bonus** (643).

**79. Rule for the Agreement of Adjectives.** *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> hortus bonus	puella bona	dōnum bonum
<i>Gen.</i> hortī bonī	puellae bonae	dōnī bonī
<i>Dat.</i> hortō bonō	puellae bonae	dōnō bonō
etc.	etc.	etc.

a. Complete the declension of the expressions given above. Decline together **amicus bonus**, *good friend*; **fābula grāta**, *pleasing story*; **oppidum magnum**, *large town*.

**80.** The rule given in 79 does not mean that adjectives must have the same case endings as the nouns they modify. An adjective modifying a masculine noun of the first declension will not have the same case endings as the noun. Thus,

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> nauta bonus	nautae bonī
<i>Gen.</i> nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i> nautae bonō	nautis bonis
etc.	etc.

a. Complete the declension of **nauta bonus**. Decline **poēta grātus**, *pleasing poet*.

**81. Order of Words.** An adjective normally follows the noun which it modifies.

## 82.

## VOCABULARY

car'rus, -i, m., wagon, cart ( <i>car</i> )	grā'tus, grā'ta, grā'tum, pleasing, welcome ( <i>gratitude</i> )
ci'bus, -i, m., food	mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num, great, large ( <i>magnitude</i> )
pil'um, -i, n., javelin	va'lidus, va'lida, va'lidum, strong, robust ( <i>valid</i> )
rē'mus, -i, m., oar ( <i>trireme</i> )	at'que, conj., and also
ven'tus, -i, m., wind ( <i>ventilate</i> )	nōn, adv., not ( <i>nonexistent</i> )
pro'bō, probāre, approve, approve of ( <i>approbation</i> )	ubi, adv., where? ( <i>ubiquitous</i> )
bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, good, kind ( <i>bonus</i> )	

## EXERCISES

**83.** 1. Equōs magnōs spectāmus atque probāmus. 2. Tribū-nus amicō bonō pilum dat. 3. Dōnum grātum nautae Iūliam dēlectat. 4. Nauta validus rēmōs validōs habet. 5. Servōs bonōs videt puella. 6. Nautas ventī magni nōn terrent. 7. Ubi frūmentum agricolārum validōrum vidētis? 8. In carrō magnō frūmentum portant. 9. Pirātae agricolās terrent quod pīla habent.

**84.** 1. I have a large wagon. 2. The good master has a good slave. 3. And he also gives the good slave a welcome gift. 4. Does the slave approve of the gift? 5. They do not live in a large town of Greece. 6. He is not calling together the good sailors. 7. Where do you see a large forest?



## LESSON X

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *SUM* · PREDICATE NOUN AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

**85. The Present Indicative of *Sum*.** The irregular verb *sum*, *I am*, is conjugated in the present indicative as follows :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st Pers.	<i>sum, I am</i>	<i>su'mus, we are</i>
2d Pers.	<i>es, you are</i>	<i>es'tis, you are</i>
3d Pers.	<i>est, he, she, it is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>

**86. Predicate Noun and Predicate Adjective.** For the definition of a predicate noun and of a predicate adjective, see xv.

1. **Mārcus est agricola**, *Marcus is a farmer.*
2. **Nautae sunt amici**, *the sailors are friends.*
3. **Hortus est magnus**, *the garden is large.*
4. **Puellae sunt grātae**, *the girls are welcome.*

a. Observe the case of *agricola*, *amici*, *magnus*, and *grātae* (xv, c).

**87. Rule for the Agreement of a Predicate Noun.** *A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*

**88. Rule for the Agreement of a Predicate Adjective.** *A predicate adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb.*

**89. Order of Words.** The verb *sum* generally has no emphasis (unless it begins the sentence), and it is placed in the sentence where it sounds best or where it adds clearness.

In Latin phrases consisting of a monosyllabic preposition, adjective, and noun the order of words is often adjective, preposition, noun : as, *magnō in oppidō, in the large town.*



WITHIN A ROMAN HOUSE



## 90.

## VOCABULARY

<i>bel'lum, -i, n.</i> , war ( <i>belligerent</i> )	<i>lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum</i> , long ( <i>longitude</i> )
<i>Britan'nia, -ae, f.</i> , Britain ( <i>Britanic</i> )	<i>me'us, me'a, me'um</i> , my, mine
<i>de'a, -ae, f.</i> , goddess ( <i>deity</i> )	<i>no'vus, no'va, no'vum</i> , new ( <i>novelty</i> )
<i>de'us, -i, m.</i> , god ( <i>deify</i> )	<i>par'vus, par'va, par'vum</i> , small, little
<i>Eurō'pa, -ae, f.</i> , Europe ( <i>European</i> )	<i>tu'us, tu'a, tu'um</i> , your, yours (referring to one owner)
<i>Rō'ma, -ae, f.</i> , Rome	<i>e'rat, he, she, it was</i>
<i>Rō'ma'nus, -i, m.</i> , a Roman ( <i>Roman</i> )	<i>e'rant, they were</i>
<i>Ves'ta, -ae, f.</i> , Vesta ( <i>vestal</i> )	
<i>lā'tus, lā'ta, lā'tum</i> , wide, broad ( <i>latitude</i> )	

## EXERCISES

91. 1. Galba agricola est. 2. Galba est validus. 3. Iūlia et Cornēlia sunt filiae meae. 4. Filia mea est parva. 5. Estne oppidum tuum magnum? 6. Britannia est insula Eurōpae. 7. Vesta erat dea Rōmae. 8. Carri Rōmānōrum boni et validi erant. 9. Nōn grātum est bellum. 10. Bella nōn grāta sunt. 11. Graecia est terra parva Eurōpae. 12. Sumus amici tribūni. 13. Magnō in oppidō viās lātās vidēmus.

92. 1. The streets of the town are long. 2. The streets of Rome were not broad. 3. The roads of Britain are broad and long. 4. Where are you? 5. The new gifts of the tribune are pleasing. 6. We praise the gods because they give gifts. 7. We are Romans, but we are living in Britain.



PUERI PUELLAEQUE

## LESSON XI

### APPOSITION

#### 93. Apposition.

1. Galba, tribūnus, pilum habet, *Galba, the tribune, has a javelin.*
2. Mārcum amicūm amō, *I love (my) friend Marcus.*

a. Observe that **tribūnus** denotes the same person as **Galba**, and is joined to **Galba** as a descriptive or explanatory noun; and that **amicūm** is related in the same way to **Mārcum**. Such words are called *appositives*.

**94. Rule for Apposition.** *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

#### 95.

### VOCABULARY

clā'rus, -a, -um, famous, clear (clarify)	pa'rō, parāre, prepare, get ready (prepare)
dē, prep. with abl., from, concerning (depend)	pa'tria, -ae, f., native land, country (patriotism)
ōce'anus, -i, m., ocean (oceanic)	tem'plum, -i, n., temple

### CORNELIA ET IULIA

**96.** Cornēlia et Iūlia puellae parvae sunt. Ubi habitant? Nōn in Graeciā, sed clārō in oppidō Italiae habitant. Incolae Rōmae sunt. Italia patria Rōmānōrum est. Rōma viās lātās et templā magna habet. Rōmānī bella amant et probant.

Poētae filia est Cornēlia. Poēta lātis in hortis saepe ambulat. Atque dē bellō longō et fugā incolārum Germāniae cantat, quod victōriam Rōmānōrum probat.

Iūlia filia agricolae validi est. Agricola equōs et carrōs novōs habet. Cibum et frūmentum equī agricultae portant.



TEMPLUM

Servi agricultae equis aquam dant. Iūlia equōs amat et servōs laudat. Bonus dominus est agriculta.

Mārcus et Galba, tribūnī, amici puellārum sunt. Mārcus poētae amīcus est et fābulās grātās Cornēliae nārrat. Galba Iūliae silvās et insulās ōceani dēmōnstrat.

Fēmina bona puellās docet. Diligentia Cornēliae fēminam dēlectat. In hōrtō poētae puellās convocat et fābulās nārrat. Fābulae dē bellō puellās parvās terrent.

Saepe Vestae dōna parant. Quis est Vesta? Vesta dea Rōmānōrum est et templum habet. Saepe in viis Rōmae puellae ambulant et praedam Germāniae et Britanniae spectant.

## LESSON XII

### THE SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN **-ER**, **-IR**, **-IUS**, AND **-IUM**

**97. Nouns of the Second Declension in *-er* and *-ir*.** Some nouns of the second declension end in *-er* and *-ir*. They are slightly different from **hortus** in their inflection:

SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i> pu'er	a'ger	vir
<i>Gen.</i> pu'erī	a'grī	vi'rī
<i>Dat.</i> pu'erō	a'grō	vi'rō
<i>Acc.</i> pu'erum	a'grum	vi'rūm
<i>Abl.</i> pu'erō	a'grō	vi'rō
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i> pu'erī	a'grī	vi'rī
<i>Gen.</i> puerō'rūm	a'grō'rūm	virō'rūm
<i>Dat.</i> pu'erīs	a'grīs	vi'rīs
<i>Acc.</i> pu'erōs	a'grōs	vi'rōs
<i>Abl.</i> pu'erīs	a'grīs	vi'rīs

*a.* Observe that these nouns are declined in the same way as **hortus** except that they lack the ending *-us* in the nominative singular. **Ager** is like **puer** except that *e* before *r* occurs only in the nominative singular.

**98. Nouns of the Second Declension in *-ius* and *-ium*.** Nouns of the second declension ending in *-ius* and *-ium* contract the genitive ending *-ii* to *-i*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: **auxilium**, gen. **auxili'i**. Learn the declension of **filius** and **proelium** (637).

**99. Gender of Nouns of the Second Declension.** Nouns of the second declension ending in *-um* are neuter; most others are masculine.

## 100.

## VOCABULARY

a'ger, agri, m., field ( <i>agriculture</i> ) <sup>1</sup>	prae'mium, praemi, n., reward ( <i>premium</i> )
auxi'lium, auxi'li, n., aid, help ( <i>auxiliary</i> )	proe'lium, proeli, n., battle
fi'lius, fili, m., son ( <i>filial</i> )	pu'er, pueri, m., boy ( <i>puerile</i> )
gla'dius, gladi, m., sword ( <i>gladiator</i> )	so'cius, soci, m., comrade, ally ( <i>associate</i> )
nūn'tius, nūnti, m., messenger ( <i>pronunciation</i> )	vir, viri, m., man ( <i>virile</i> )

## EXERCISES

101. 1. Filiū virōrum in Britanniā sunt. 2. Virī erant sociī. 3. Nūn'tius sociōrum sum. 4. Puerōs parvōs, filiōs tribūni, exspectāmus. 5. Pueri gladium et pilum Mārci habent. 6. Quis virō viam dēmōnstrat? 7. Proelium est longum et sociī auxiliū exspectant. 8. In agrō labōrant vir et filii nūnti. 9. Cūr viris praemia nunc datis?

102. 1. The son of the messenger is a small boy. 2. We see your sword, but we have not your javelin. 3. They frighten the little boys and the woman. 4. The men are putting the allies to flight. 5. Where do the messengers live? 6. I have my son's sword. 7. Wars and battles delight the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> The spelling of the English derivatives *agriculture*, *puerile*, and *virile* will help you to recall the spelling of the genitives of *ager*, *puer*, and *vir*.



## LESSON XIII

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS ENDING IN -ER

**103. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions in -er.**  
Some adjectives of the first and second declensions end in -er in the nominative singular masculine. Their inflection resembles that of *puer* and of *ager*.

- a. Learn the declension of *liber* and *noster* (643).
- b. Observe that *liber* retains the e in all forms, as *puer* does, while *noster*, like *ager*, has no e after the nominative.
- c. Decline *miser*, *wretched*, like *liber*. The other adjectives in this book that end in -er are declined like *noster*.
- d. Decline together *vir liber*, *free man*; *fēmina misera*, *poor woman*; *bellum miserum*, *wretched war*; *poēta liber*, *free poet*; *amicus noster*, *our friend*.

### 104.

### VOCABULARY

li'ber, li'bera, li'berum, free ( <i>lib-</i> <i>eral</i> )	nos'ter, nos'tra, nos'trum, our ( <i>nostrum</i> )
mi'ser, mi'sera, mi'serum, poor, unhappy, wretched ( <i>miserable</i> )	su'perō, superāre, surpass, defeat, overcome, conquer ( <i>insuperable</i> )
mul'tus, mul'ta, mul'tum, much ( <i>multitude</i> )	ves'ter, ves'tra, ves'trum, your (of more than one owner)
mul'ti, mul'tae, mul'ta, many	vo'cō, vocāre, call ( <i>vocation</i> )

### EXERCISES

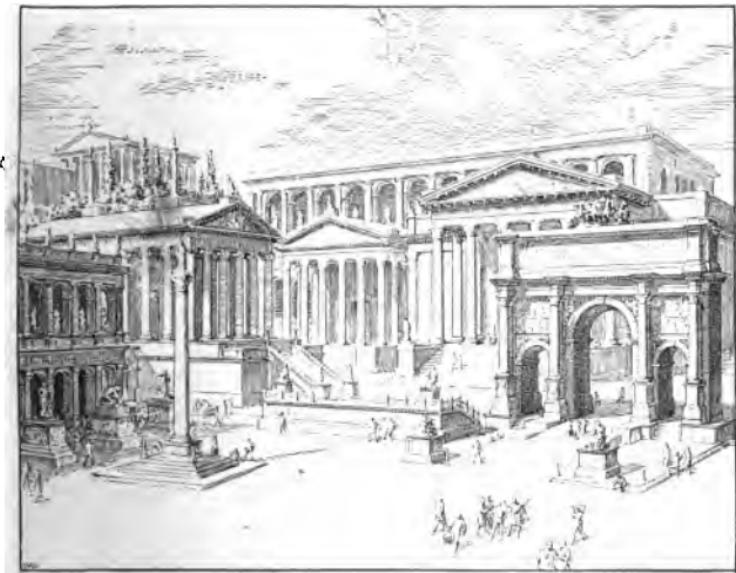
- 105.** 1. Equōs in agrō Mārci amici videō. 2. Nūntius miser fābulam miseram dē fugā sociōrum nārrat. 3. Vestris amicis praemia dant. 4. Pecūnia, dōnum Cornēliae, filium nostrum dēlectat. 5. Sumus virī liberī in oppidō liberō. 6. Deae Graeciae multae erant. 7. Socius noster est miser, quod gladium

nōn habet. 8. Rōmānōs in proeliō superant. 9. Vocatne filius tuus? 10. Dominō servus miser cibum parat.

106. 1. Our friends, Marcus and Galba, are wretched.  
 2. There are many carts in the streets of our town. 3. She calls together the unhappy sons of the messengers. 4. Where do you see your horse? 5. The winds do not frighten the sailors. 6. We are sons of free men. 7. I have a javelin, the gift of a friend.

#### DE GRAECIA

107. Graecia, terra parva, prōvincia Rōmānōrum erat. Athēnae, Sparta, Thēbae, Corinthus clāra oppida Graeciae erant. In oppidis erant templa multa deōrum et deārum. In viis oppidōrum statuae (*statues*) multae virōrum clārōrum erant. Incolae nōn erant miseri. Quis incolās Graeciae nōn laudat?



A RESTORATION OF THE ROMAN FORUM

## LESSON XIV

### THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF SUM · THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

**108. The Imperfect Indicative of Sum.** The imperfect indicative of **sum** is inflected as follows :

#### SINGULAR

1. e'ram, *I was*
2. e'rās, *you were*
3. e'rat, *he, she, it was*

#### PLURAL

- erā'mus, *we were*
- erā'tis, *you were*
- e'rānt, *they were*

**109. The Future Indicative of Sum.** The future indicative of **sum** is inflected as follows :

#### SINGULAR

1. e'rō, *I shall be*
2. e'ris, *you will be*
3. e'rit, *he, she, it will be*

#### PLURAL

- e'rimus, *we shall be*
- e'ritis, *you will be*
- e'runt, *they will be*

### 110. The Dative with Adjectives.

**Dōnum puerō erit grātūm, the gift will be pleasing to the boy.**

a. Observe that **puerō** is translated with the adjective **grātūm, pleasing to the boy**. Certain Latin adjectives, particularly those meaning *near, fit, friendly, pleasing, like*, and their opposites, are thus followed by the case expressing *to or for*, exactly as they are followed in English by a phrase beginning with *to or for*: as, *fit for war, unfriendly to us*. This usage is known as the *Dative with Adjectives*.

**111. Rule for the Dative with Adjectives.** Certain adjectives meaning *near, fit, friendly, pleasing, like*, and their opposites, may be accompanied by a dative to show the person or the thing toward which the quality of the adjective is directed.

## 112.

## VOCABULARY

ami'cus, -a, -um, friendly	in'terim, <i>adv.</i> , meanwhile ( <i>interim</i> )
cer'tē, <i>adv.</i> , certainly	
fini'timus, -a, -um, neighboring, near ( <i>affinity</i> )	li'ber, libri, <i>m.</i> , book ( <i>library</i> )
idō'neus, -a, -um, fit, suitable	propin'quus, -a, -um, near ( <i>proximity</i> )
inimi'cus, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile ( <i>inimical</i> )	pro'ximus, -a, -um, nearest, next, very near ( <i>proximity</i> )
iniū'ria, -ae, <i>f.</i> , injustice, wrong ( <i>injury</i> )	

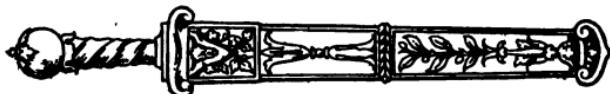
## EXERCISES

113. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, eram, erō. 5. Es, erās, eris. 6. Estis, erātis, eritis. 7. Certē erāmuſ inimici Mārcō, vestrō filiō. 8. Proxiſ oppidō erant multi agri. 9. Iniūriae sociōrum multae erunt. 10. Īnsulam terrae propinquam videō. 11. Venti nautis nōn erunt grāti. 12. Agricolae bellō longō idōnei nōn erant. 13. Interim vestris filiis erimus amīci. 14. Gladii atque pila proeliō idōnea<sup>1</sup> sunt.

114. 1. I am, we are. 2. Where were we? I was in the town. 3. I shall be, we shall be. 4. Is he a tribune? They are allies. 5. Meanwhile you will be a free man. 6. Our towns are near Greece. 7. In our towns the men are unfriendly to Rome. 8. There will be<sup>2</sup> a great battle in Britain. 9. The books will certainly be welcome to my friend Marcus.

<sup>1</sup> The predicate adjective idōnea is neuter because the two subjects are things without life.

<sup>2</sup> Express *there will be* by *erit*, and place *erit* at the beginning of the sentence. How do you say *there are?* *there is?* *there were?*



GLADIUS

## SECOND REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS VIII-XIV

115. Give the English meanings of the following words:

ager	deus	interim	nūntius	rēmūs
amicus, <i>noun</i>	dominus	lātus	ōceanus	servus
amicus, <i>adj.</i>	dōnum	liber	oppidum	socius
atque	equus	liber	parō	superō
auxilium	filius	longus	parvus	templum
bellum	finitimus	magnus	patria	tribūnus
bonus	frūmentum	meus	pīlum	tuus
carrus	gladius	miser	praemium	ubi
certē	grātus	multus	probō	validus
cibus	hortus	multi	proelium	ventus
clārus	idōneus	nōn	propinquus	vester
dē	inimīcus	noster	proximus	vir
dea	iniūria	novus	puer	vocō

116. Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

garden	from, concerning	strong, robust
many	where?	native land, country
oar	son	great, large
man	war	your ( <i>sing.</i> )
call	comrade, ally	slave
god	meanwhile	aid, help
long	horse	near
sword	wind	nearest, next
goddess	boy	javelin
food	good, kind	unfriendly
much	not	new
grain	messenger	battle
approve, approve of	famous	get ready
injustice, wrong	friendly	certainly

friend	field	book
tribune	small, little	fit, suitable
your ( <i>plur.</i> )	gift	free
temple	pleasing, welcome	our
my, mine	surpass, defeat, overcome, conquer	town
master	wide, broad	reward
cart	neighboring, near	ocean
and also	poor, unhappy, wretched	

117. Decline each noun and adjective in 115. Conjugate each verb in the present indicative active. Give the genitive singular of each noun; give the other cases, in the singular and the plural. Conjugate **sum** in the imperfect and future indicative.

118. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 115. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

119. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Agreement of adjectives | 4. Apposition             |
| 2. Predicate noun          | 5. Dative with adjectives |
| 3. Predicate adjective     |                           |



A ROMAN BOY

A ROMAN GIRL

## LESSON XV

### THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

120. The Imperfect Indicative Active, First and Second Conjugations. The imperfect indicative active of the first and second conjugations is inflected as follows :

#### SINGULAR

1. amā'bam, *I was loving*
2. amā'bās, *you were loving*
3. amā'bat, *he was loving*

#### PLURAL

- amābā'mus, *we were loving*  
amābā'tis, *you were loving*  
amā'bānt, *they were loving*

#### SINGULAR

1. monē'bam, *I was advising*
2. monē'bās, *you were advising*
3. monē'bat, *he was advising*

#### PLURAL

- monēbā'mus, *we were advising*  
monēbā'tis, *you were advising*  
monē'bānt, *they were advising*

a. Observe that in this tense the personal ending of the first person singular is **-m**, not **-s**.

b. Observe that **amābam** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense sign **-bā-**, and to that tense sign the personal endings : **amā-bā-m** etc. Divide **monēbam** into three parts in the same way.

c. Inflect the imperfect of the verbs in 68 and 115.

d. The imperfect tense expresses action going on in past time.

### 121. The Ablative of Means.

Rōmāni gladiis et pilis pugnābant, *the Romans were fighting with swords and javelins.*

a. Observe that **gladiis** and **pilis** are in the ablative, since they express the relations of *with* and *by*. They answer the questions *with what?* *by means of what?* The ablative so used is called the *Ablative of Means*. It is limited to nouns that denote things, and is translated by a phrase beginning with *by*, *with*, or *by means of*.

**122. Rule for the Ablative of Means.** *The means by which an action is accomplished is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (xxiv, b).*

## 123.

## VOCABULARY

ar'mō, armāre, arm, equip ( <i>armor</i> )	lēgā'tus, -ī, m., lieutenant, ambas-
com'pleō, complēre, fill ( <i>complete</i> )	sador ( <i>legation</i> )
dēfes'sus, -a, -um, tired out, weary	pug'nō, pugnāre, fight ( <i>pugilist</i> )
Helvē'tii, -ōrum, m. plur., Helve-	scū'tum, -ī, n., shield ( <i>escutcheon</i> )
tians	vī'cus, -ī, m., village ( <i>vicinity</i> )

## EXERCISES

**124.** 1. Dēmōnstrābant, parābat, complēbātis. 2. Nārrābam, vidēbās, habitābāmus. 3. Superābās, habēbātis, probābat. 4. Cantābās, liberābam, manēbātis. 5. Terrēbam, vocābat, dēlectābātis. 6. Lēgātōs convocābam. 7. Agricolae frūmentum et cibum carris parvis portābant. 8. Interim gladiīs in silvis pugnābant. 9. Scūtis amicōs nostrōs armābāmus. 10. Lēgātum, amicum meum, vocābam. 11. Pilis tribūnum et lēgātum in pugnā superābant. 12. Deis dōna vestra erunt grāta. 13. Vīcus proximus oceānō erat.

**125.** 1. I was walking, but you (*sing.*) were waiting in the field. 2. We were arming, they were remaining. 3. You (*plur.*) were approaching, and they were fighting. 4. He was working in the village. 5. We were teaching by means of stories and books. 6. With your swords you were liberating your friends. 7. Food was welcome to the tired Helvetians. 8. The men were fighting with long javelins. 9. The lieutenant was filling the village with food and grain.

## LESSON XVI

### THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

**126.** The Future Indicative Active, First and Second Conjugations. The future indicative active of the first and second conjugations is inflected as follows:

#### SINGULAR

1. *amā'bō, I shall love*
2. *amā'biſ, you will love*
3. *amā'bit, he will love*

#### PLURAL

- amā'bimus, we shall love*  
*ama'bītis, you will love*  
*amā'bunt, they will love*

#### SINGULAR

1. *monē'bō, I shall advise*
2. *monē'biſ, you will advise*
3. *monē'bit, he will advise*

#### PLURAL

- monē'bimus, we shall advise*  
*monē'bītis, you will advise*  
*monē'bunt, they will advise*

a. Observe that the future of **amō** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense sign **-bi-**, and to the tense sign the personal endings; but the **i** is dropped in the first person, and in the third person plural is changed to **u**.

i. How is the future of **moneō** formed?

b. Inflect the future of the verbs in 68 and 115.

## 127.

### VOCABULARY

**aedi'ficō, aedificāre,** build (*edifice*)

**ae'ger, ae'gra, ae'grum,** sick

**cum,** prep. with *abl.*, with

**cū'ra, -ae, f.,** care, anxiety (*curator*)

**in,** prep. with *acc.*, into, to

**nāvi'gium, nāvi'gi,** *n.*, boat

**pro'perō, properāre,** hasten

**quō, adv.,** whither?

**stu'dium, studi,** *n.*, zeal, eagerness (*study*)

**te'neō, tenēre,** hold, keep (*tenant*)

## 128. The Ablative of Manner.

1. **Mārcus cum studiō labōrat**, *Marcus works with zeal (zealously).*
2. **Mārcus magnō cum studiō labōrat**, *Marcus works with great zeal.*
3. **Mārcus magnō studiō labōrat**, *Marcus works with great zeal.*

a. Observe that *manner* is expressed in these sentences by the use of the ablative case. Observe that 2 and 3 are translated in the same way, and that **cum** may be omitted when there is an adjective in the phrase. The ablative thus used answers the questions *how?* *in what way?* *in what manner?* and is called the *Ablative of Manner*. The ablative of manner may often be translated by an adverb: **cum studiō**, *zealously*.

129. **Rule for the Ablative of Manner.** *The ablative with cum is used with abstract nouns (i, f) to denote the manner of an action; but cum may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun of the phrase.*

## EXERCISES

- 130.** 1. **Vocābunt, complēbunt, properābunt.** 2. **Armābitne?** *superābit, tenēbimus.* 3. **Manēbuntne?** *dēmōnstrābimus, terrēbō.* 4. **Labōrābis, docēbitis, habēbō.** 5. **Quō properābit** *agricola validus?* 6. **In agrōs properābunt** *agricola et pueri.* 7. **In agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō.** 8. **Cum cūrā frūmentum in vicūm portābunt.** 9. **Magnā diligentiā nāvigium** *aedificābitis.* 10. **Servī aegri parvō studiō** *labōrant.*

- 131.** 1. **You (sing.) will build.** 2. **He will hasten.** 3. **Who will not remain?** 4. **You (plur.) will hold.** 5. **We shall carry the sick men with great care.** 6. **Whither will the lieutenant hasten?** 7. **He will hasten into Greece and also will arm the inhabitants.** 8. **Where will our friends fight zealously?** 9. **The men were diligently filling the boats.**

## LESSON XVII

### PRINCIPAL PARTS · THE PERFECT STEM · THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

**132. Principal Parts.** The principal parts of the verb *amō* are as follows :

PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. IND. ACT.	PERF. PASS. PART.
<i>amō</i>	<i>amāre</i>	<i>amāvi</i>	<i>amātus</i>

a. The principal parts of the verb are so called because all forms of the verb can be made from them, or from the three stems shown in the principal parts. These three stems are as follows :

1. Present stem : *amā-*, found by dropping the *-re* of the present infinitive active.
2. Perfect stem : *amāv-*, found by dropping the personal ending *-i* of the first person singular of the perfect indicative active.
3. Participial stem : *amāt-*, found by dropping the nominative ending *-us* of the perfect passive participle.

**133. The Perfect Stem.** By the use of the present stem you have conjugated the present, imperfect, and future tenses. By the use of the perfect stem *amāv-* the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses are conjugated.

**134. The Perfect Indicative Active of the First Conjugation.** The perfect indicative active of *amō* is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS OF PERFECT TENSE
1. <i>amā'vi</i> , <i>I have loved, I loved</i>	<i>-i</i>
2. <i>amāv is'ti</i> , <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	<i>-istī</i>
3. <i>amā'vit</i> , <i>he has loved, etc.</i>	<i>-it</i>
PLURAL	
1. <i>amā'vimus</i> , <i>we have loved, etc.</i>	<i>-imūs</i>
2. <i>amāv is'tis</i> , <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	<i>-istis</i>
3. <i>amāv ē'runt</i> , <i>they have loved, etc.</i>	<i>-ērunt</i>

a. Observe that the perfect tense has two meanings: *I have loved* and *I loved*. Both express completed action. *I have loved* indicates that the action is completed at the present time; and the perfect tense so used is known as the *perfect definite*. *I loved* indicates merely that the action was completed at some indefinite time in the past; and the perfect tense so used is known as the *perfect indefinite*. The imperfect tense, in contrast with the perfect, expresses an action going on in the past (120, d).

b. Give the principal parts of each verb of the first conjugation in 68 and 115; they are formed in the same way as those of *amō* (except *dō*, *dare*, *dēdi*, *datus*). Inflect the perfect tense of each.

#### EXERCISES

135. 1. *Vocāvitne?* *convocāvit*, *superāvit*. 2. *Pugnāvērunt*, *exspectāvērunt*, *labōrāvērunt*. 3. *Properāvimus*, *aedificāvimus*, *armāvimus*. 4. *Laudāvine?* *vocāvisti*, *properāvistis*. 5. *Portāvit*, *dēlectāvit*, *dedit*.

136. 1. You have praised, you showed, you related. 2. I have given, I brought, I set free. 3. They approved, they have sung, they swam. 4. We gave, we dwelt, we showed.

#### 137.

#### VOCABULARY

*ar'ma, -ōrum*, *n. plur.*, arms

*Rō'mulus, -i*, *m.*, Romulus

*di'ū*, *adv.*, for a long time, long

*Sabi'ni, -ōrum*, *m. plur.*, the Sabines

*pō*, *prep. with abl.*, before, for,  
in defense of (*proceed*)

*vul'nerō*, *vulnerāre*, *vulnerāvi*, *vul-*  
*nerātus*, wound (*vulnerable*)

#### DE SABINIS

138. *Rōmulus Rōmam, clārum oppidum Italiae, aedificāvit*.  
*Validi viri erant Rōmāni et patriam amābant*. *Saepe pō*  
*patriā pugnābant et saepe Sabinōs armis in bellō superābant*.  
*Sabini bona arma habēbant et magnō cum studiō pilis longis*  
*diū pugnāvērunt*. *Sed Rōmāni Sabinōs fugāvērunt et multōs*  
*virōs gladiīs vulnerāvērunt*.

## LESSON XVIII

### THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, SECOND CONJUGATION THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

**139. Principal Parts of Verbs of the Second Conjugation.**  
The principal parts of verbs of the second conjugation are not so regular as those of the first conjugation. You have already had some verbs of the second conjugation. Their principal parts are as follows :

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētus
doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitū
maneō	manēre	mānsi	mānsūrus
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	—
terreō	terrēre	terrui	territus
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus

*a.* Learn the principal parts of these verbs. What is the perfect stem of each?

*b.* Learn the inflection of the perfect tense of **moneō** (659), and practice the inflection of the perfect tense of the other verbs.

#### EXERCISES

**140.** 1. Monuit, monuērunt, docuit. 2. Docuērunt, habuit, habuērunt. 3. Terruistī, terruistis, tenuistīne? 4. Vidi? vidēruntne? mānsimus. 5. Tenuit, tenuērunt, terruērunt.

**141.** 1. I have filled, you have seen, we have held. 2. He frightened, it had, they have filled. 3. She has remained, I have taught, you (*plur.*) have warned.

**142. The Ablative of Accompaniment.**

*Cum filiō meō ambulābat, he was walking with my son.*

a. Observe that the phrase **cum filiō** answers the questions *with whom?* *in whose company?* This use of the ablative with the preposition **cum** is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment*.

**143. Rule for the Ablative of Accompaniment.** *The ablative with cum is used to show accompaniment.*

**144.****VOCABULARY**

capti'vus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , captive ( <i>captivate</i> )	lo'cus, -ī, <i>m.</i> ( <i>plur. loca, n.</i> ), place ( <i>location</i> )
cau'sa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , cause, reason	
hi'emō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemā- tūrus, <sup>1</sup> spend the winter	peri'culum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , peril, danger ( <i>peril</i> )

**EXERCISES**

- 145.** 1. Puerī carrum nostrum frūmentō complēvērunt.  
 2. Cum cūrā puellam aegram certē portāvērunt. 3. Scūta et  
 gladiōs captivōrum prō portis vidi. 4. Locus proeliō idōneus  
 nōn erat. 5. Lēgātus cum multīs viris in Germāniā prope-  
 rāvit. 6. Causam belli dēmōnstrābit. 7. In Graeciā cum amicīs  
 vestris hiemāvī. 8. Magnō cum periculō mānsērunt.

- 146.** 1. The swords and the javelins frightened the cap-  
 tives. 2. They fought with the tribune in the long war.  
 3. The women were spending the winter in Italy. 4. Who  
 will tell the lieutenant the cause of the war? 5. They have  
 filled the place with arms. 6. The Romans have fought with  
 the allies in defense of Rome.

<sup>1</sup> Future active participle (441, a). This form, if it occurs, is given in the principal parts where the perfect passive participle is not in use.

## LESSON XIX

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS* · THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

**147. The Demonstrative *Is*.** The demonstrative *is*, *this*, *that*, plur. *these*, *those*, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>is</i>	e'a	id	iī (e'i)	e'ae	e'a
<i>Gen.</i> e'ius	e'ius	e'ius	eō'rum	eā'rum	eō'rum
<i>Dat.</i> e'i	e'i	e'i	iīs (e'is)	iīs (e'is)	iīs (e'is)
<i>Acc.</i> e'um	e'am	id	e'ōs	e'ās	e'a
<i>Abl.</i> e'ō	e'ā	e'ō	iīs (e'is)	iīs (e'is)	iīs (e'is)

a. II and iīs are pronounced as monosyllables, **i** and **is**.

**148. The Uses of *Is*.** There is no word in English like *is*. Although it is a demonstrative pronoun (II, f) and means *this* and *that*, it does not point emphatically to what is near, as does *hic*, or to what is remote, as does *ille* (228). Generally it refers to somebody or to something that has just been mentioned. Sometimes it approaches in meaning the English definite article *the*. It is translated by *this* or *that* as the meaning of the sentence may require.

1. Is agricolās convocāvit, *this* (or *that*) man called the farmers together.
2. Is servus cum diligentiā labōrat, *this* (or *that*) slave works diligently.

a. Observe that *is* is used in the first sentence as a pronoun, and in the second sentence as an adjective (III, c). **Is**, when an adjective, usually precedes its noun.

- b. Decline together id dōnum; is nūntius; ea patria.

**149. The Perfect Indicative of *Sum*.** The perfect indicative of *sum* is conjugated as follows:

## SINGULAR

1. *fu'ī, I have been, was*
2. *fuīs'tī, you have been, were*
3. *fu'it, he has been, was*

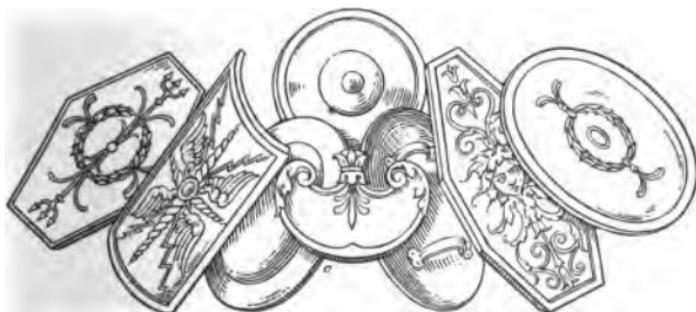
## PLURAL

- fu'imus, we have been, were*
- fuis'tis, you have been, were*
- fuē'runt, they have been, were*

**EXERCISES**

**150.** 1. Id scūtum vīdī. 2. Is gladius est meus. 3. Ea pugna erit longa. 4. Eō gladiō pugnābō. 5. Ei captīvō cibum dedit. 6. Id erat tuum. 7. Periculum eōrum lēgātōrum dēmōnstrābat. 8. In Germāniā et in terrā Helvētiōrum fuimus. 9. Fuitne tua filia aegra? 10. Dominus eius servi fuit dēfessus. 11. Ea victōria Rōmānōs dēlectāvit. 12. Cum eō amicō in Britanniam properābam. 13. Ubi fuistis?

**151.** 1. By means of these arms we shall overcome the pirates on the ocean. 2. That help is pleasing to the Romans. 3. I have often been in those woods. 4. I have taught the sons of these farmers. 5. You have seen and praised these allies because they fought with zeal. 6. Whither were you hastening with this boy? 7. The causes of this war have been many.



SCUTA

## LESSON XX

### THE INTERROGATIVE *QUIS*

**152. The Uses of the Interrogative *Quis*.** The interrogative *quis* (*qui*), *who?* *which?* *what?* may be used as a pronoun or as an adjective (II, *e*; III, *e*): *quis vocat?* *who calls?* *quod dōnum habēs?* *what gift have you?*

**153. The Declension of the Interrogative Pronoun.** The interrogative pronoun *quis* is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quis	quid	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cu'ius	cu'ius	quō'rūm	quā'rūm	quō'rūm
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus
<i>Acc.</i> que'm	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quō	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus

a. Which forms have you already learned?

**154. The Declension of the Interrogative Adjective.** The interrogative adjective *qui* is declined as follows in the singular (the plural is the same as that of *quis*):

SINGULAR		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> qui	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i> cu'ius	cu'ius	cu'ius
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō

a. Decline together *qui captivus*; *quae causa*; *quod periculum*.

**EXERCISES**

- 155.** 1. Qui id templum aedificāvērunt? 2. Qui lēgāti eōs virōs armāvērunt? 3. Quid in eō agrō est? 4. Cui dat Mārcus id praemium? 5. Quibus terris est Britannia proxima? 6. Quem laudātis? 7. Quem librum laudāvit Cornēlia? 8. Quō gladiō captivum vulnerāvērunt? 9. Quod periculum nārrās?



MARS

- 156.** 1. Who was the messenger of the gods? 2. What gift did he give to this boy? 3. Whose shield did that slave have? 4. To whom have they shown the causes of this war? 5. Whom have you overcome? 6. With what arms have they overcome the Helvetians? 7. In which village did they live?

**157.****VOCABULARY**

adōrō, adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātus,	imperium, impe'ri, <i>n.</i> , command, pray to, worship ( <i>adoration</i> )
animus; -ī, <i>m.</i> , feeling, mind ( <i>ani-</i> <i>mus</i> )	i'taque, <i>conj.</i> , and so, therefore

**DE DEIS ROMANORUM**

- 158.** Mars, prōavus (*the ancestor*) Rōmānōrum, arma et proelia et bella amābat. Rōmulus et Remus, filii deī armōrum, Rōmam aedificāvērunt. Itaque proelia et bella animōs Rōmānōrum dēlectāvērunt. Mercurium et Neptūnum et Vestam Rōmānī adōrābant. Mercurius, nūntius deōrum, imperia deōrum incolis terrārum (*the earth*) nārrābat. Neptūnum, deum aquārum et oceānī, nautae adōrābant. Fēminaē Vestam, deam foci (*hearth*), adōrābant et ei deae multa dōna parābant.

## LESSON XXI

### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AND PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

**159.** The Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect Indicative Active of the Third Conjugation. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of the verb *regō* (660). What are the present and perfect stems?

a. Observe that the personal endings, except in the first person singular of the future, are the same as in the first and second conjugations.

b. Observe that the differences between this conjugation and the first and second conjugations are in the present and future tenses.

c. Observe that in the present tense the *e* of the present stem *rege-* disappears before *ō* in the first person, just as happened in *ama-ō*; and that it becomes *u* in the third person plural, while in the other persons it is *i*. The inflection is like that of *erō*, future of *sum*.

d. Observe that the future does not use *-bi-* as a tense sign, but has *-a-* in the first person singular, and *-e-* in the other persons.

e. Give heed to the quantities and the accents. Inflect like *regō* the verbs in the following vocabulary.

### 160.

### VOCABULARY

*bene*, *adv.*, well (*benevolent*)

*emō*, *emere*, *ēmī*, *ēmptus*, buy

*hodiē*, *adv.*, to-day

(*preēmption*)

*ōlim*, *adv.*, once, formerly

*mittō*, *mittere*, *misi*, *missus*, send

*tum*, *adv.*, then

(*remit*)

*dūcō*, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductus*, lead  
(*conduct*)

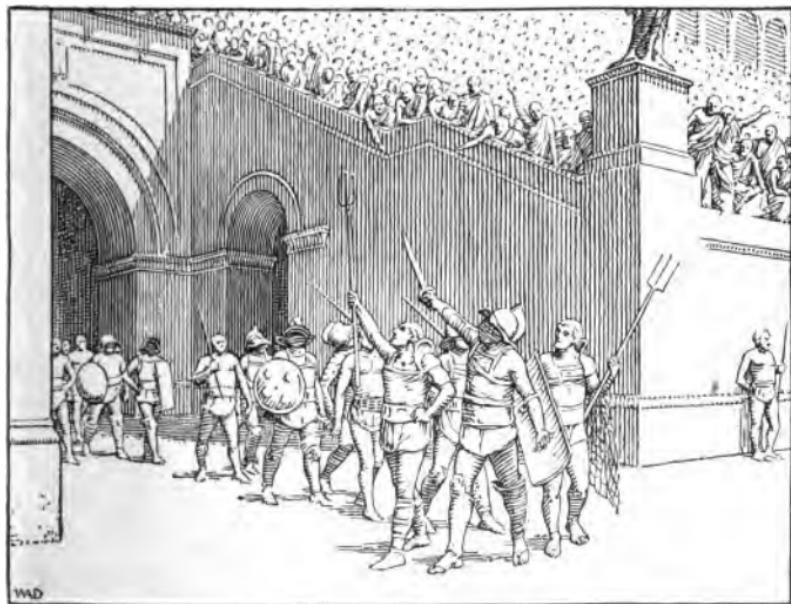
*regō*, *regere*, *rēxi*, *rēctus*, rule,  
manage (*regent*)

### EXERCISES

**161.** 1. *Regit*, *regēbat*, *reget*. 2. *Emō*, *emēbam*, *emam*.  
3. *Dūcunt*, *dūcent*, *dūcēbat*. 4. *Rēxit*, *rēxērunt*, *dūxit*. 5. *Dūxērunt*, *ēmistī*, *ēmistis*. 6. *Misi*, *misimus*, *misit*. 7. *Mittimus*,

mittunt, mittent. 8. Is agricola multōs agrōs habet. 9. Frūmentum in oppidum magnum nāvigiis mittet. 10. Frūmentum in vicum equis validis mittet. 11. Quis eōs equōs in viā dūcet? 12. Filii agricolae, Mārcus et Galba, equōs dūxērunt et hodiē dūcent. 13. Tum arma nova ement. 14. Ōlim Rōmānī Italiam bene rēxērunt.

162. 1. They rule, they were ruling, they will rule. 2. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 3. I have bought, we bought, they bought. 4. I am sending, I shall send, I have sent. 5. You send, you will send, you have sent. 6. The Romans once had many lands. 7. Often they did not rule these lands well. 8. Then the allies sent assistance. 9. What girls spent the winter in Italy? 10. I shall send a lieutenant with these captives into Italy.



GLADIATORS ENTERING THE ARENA

## THIRD REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XV-XXI

**163.** Give the English meanings of the following words:

adōrō	causa	hiemō	mittō	regō
aedificō	compleō	hodiē	nāvigium	scūtum
aeger	cum	imperium	ōlim	studium
animus	cūra	in	periculum	teneō
arma	dēfessus	is	prō	tum
armō	diū	itaque	properō	vīcus
bene	dūcō	lēgātus	pugnō	vulnerō
captīvus	emō	locus	quō	

**164.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

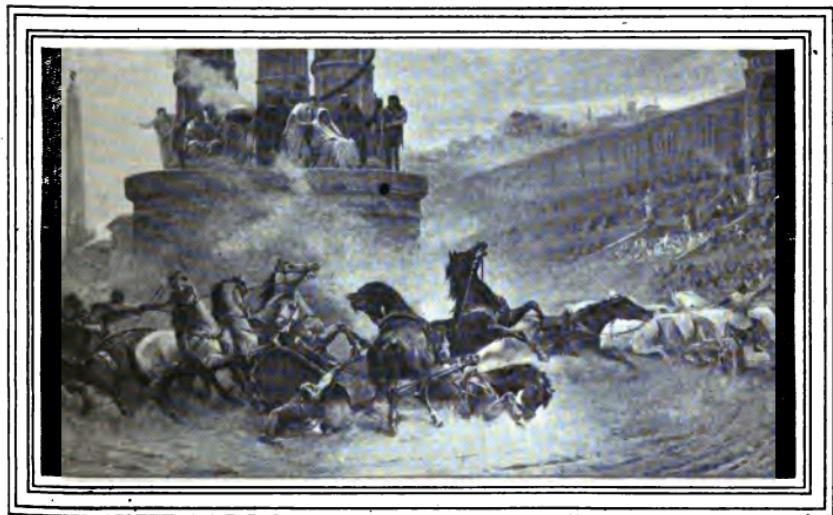
lead	rule	zeal, eagerness
once, formerly	place	care, anxiety
peril	equip, arm	arms
with	sick	pray to, worship
before, for, in defense of	shield	hold, keep
then	spend the winter	hasten
whither?	this, that	captive
village	into, to	to-day
tired out, weary	send	cause, reason
feeling, mind	well	buy
fight	lieutenant, envoy	command, power
wound	fill	and so, therefore
for a long time, long	build	boat

**165.** Decline each noun and each adjective in 163. Conjugate each verb in the present, imperfect, and future indicative active. Give the principal parts of each verb in 68, 115, and 163. Conjugate each verb in 163 in the perfect indicative active. Decline *is* and *quis*.

**166.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 163. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**167.** Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

1. Ablative of means                            3. Ablative of accompaniment
2. Ablative of manner



A RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

## LESSON XXII

### READING LESSON

168.

### VOCABULARY

āla, -ae, *f.*, wing

cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax

Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete

Daedalus, -i, *m.*, Dædalus, father  
of Icarus

iam, *adv.*, now, already

īcarus, -i, *m.*, Icarus

que, *conj.*, enclitic (22), and

quoque, *adv.*, also, too

aptō, aptāre, aptāvī, aptātus, fit,  
fit to, adjust (*adapt*)

cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī,

cōfirmātus, strengthen, en-  
courage (*confirmation*)

dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidi, —, fall  
off, fall down (*deciduous*)

finō, fingere, finxi, fictus, fash-  
ion, devise (*fiction*)

postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, pos-  
tulātus, demand (*postulate*)

solvō, solvere, solvī, salūtus, loose  
(*solve*)

volō, volāre, volāvī, volātūrus, fly  
(*volatile*)

169.

### DE ICARO

MĀRCUS. Fābulam bonam amīcus meus hodiē nārrāvit.

IŪLIA. Dē quō nārrāvit amīcus tuus?

MĀRCUS. Dē īcarō, Daedali filiō, puerō miserō.

IŪLIA. Ubi habitābat īcarus? In Britanniā?

MĀRCUS. Nōn in Britanniā habitābat, sed in Crētā; īsulā  
magnā et clārā. Daedalus filiō ālās finxit et parāvit. Eās  
ālās īcarō magnā cum cūrā cērā aptāvit. Ālāe īcarō grātiae  
erant. Tum Daedalus puerum volāre (*to fly*) docuit, sed altius  
(*too high*) volāvit īcarus. Itaque sōl (*the sun*) cēram solvit,  
et ālāe dēcidērunt.

IŪLIA. Sed quid dē īcarō?

MĀRCUS. īcarus quoque dēcidit in oēceanum.

IŪLIA. Ēheu (*alas*), miserum īcarum!

## ROMANI PRO SOCIIS PUGNANT

**170.** Quod iniūiae multae fuērunt, sociī nostrī auxilium postulant. Itaque Rōmānī lēgātū cum viris in terrā Helvētiōrum mittent. Is lēgātū iam virōs convocāvit in oppidū. Cibū et carrōs ēmit et virōs gladiis scūtisque armāvit. Sociī interim frūmentū parāvērunt. Hodie lēgātū animōs virōrum cōfirmābit. Tum in agrōs finitimōs virōs dūcet et proelium exspectābit. Locus eius proeliū propinquus Helvētiis est. Nostri virī magnō cum studiō prō sociis pugnābunt et Helvētiōs superābunt. Multōs captivōs in oppidū dūcent. Ei captivi in vīcis nostrīs hiemābunt.



ICARUS IN OCEANUM DECIDIT

## LESSON XXIII

### THE THIRD DECLENSION

**171. The Third Declension.** Nouns of the third declension end variously in the nominative singular. They are of masculine, feminine, or neuter gender. Their inflection is illustrated by the following words :

<i>rēx</i> , m. <i>king</i>	<i>mīlēs</i> , m. <i>soldier</i>	<i>virtūs</i> , f. <i>valor</i>	<i>caput</i> , n. <i>head</i>	CASE ENDINGS M. AND F. N.
		SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i> <i>rēx</i>	<i>mī'les</i>	<i>vir'tūs</i>	<i>ca'put</i>	<i>-s</i> or — —
<i>Gen.</i> <i>rē'gis</i>	<i>mī'lītis</i>	<i>virtū'tis</i>	<i>ca'pitīs</i>	<i>-is</i> <i>-is</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>rē'gī</i>	<i>mī'lītī</i>	<i>virtū'tī</i>	<i>ca'pitī</i>	<i>-ī</i> <i>-ī</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>rē'gem</i>	<i>mī'lītem</i>	<i>virtū'tem</i>	<i>ca'put</i>	<i>-em</i> —
<i>Abl.</i> <i>rē'ge</i>	<i>mī'līte</i>	<i>virtū'te</i>	<i>ca'pite</i>	<i>-e</i> <i>-e</i>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i> <i>rē'gēs</i>	<i>mī'lītēs</i>	<i>virtū'tēs</i>	<i>ca'pitā</i>	<i>-ēs</i> <i>-a</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>rē'gum</i>	<i>mī'lītūm</i>	<i>virtū'tūm</i>	<i>ca'pitūm</i>	<i>-um</i> <i>-um</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>rē'gibus</i>	<i>mī'lītibūs</i>	<i>virtū'tibūs</i>	<i>capi'tibūs</i>	<i>-ibus</i> <i>-ibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>rē'gēs</i>	<i>mī'lītēs</i>	<i>virtū'tēs</i>	<i>ca'pitā</i>	<i>-ēs</i> <i>-a</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>rē'gibus</i>	<i>mī'lītibūs</i>	<i>virtū'tibūs</i>	<i>capi'tibūs</i>	<i>-ibus</i> <i>-ibus</i>

a. To decline a noun of the third declension it is necessary to know the gender, and the spelling of the nominative and the genitive singular. These things, therefore, must be learned about every noun of this declension. Often an English derivative will suggest the spelling of the genitive singular : as, *capital*, *capitis*; *military*, *militis*.

b. No adequate rule for the gender of nouns of the third declension can be given. But

Nouns ending in *-tor* are masculine.

Nouns ending in *-tās*, *-tūs*, or *-tūdō*, and most nouns ending in *-ī* are feminine.

Nouns ending in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar* are neuter.

c. Learn the case endings. Then practice the declension of the nouns above and of those in the vocabulary. Observe that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

d. Decline together **miles bonus**, good soldier; **virtūs nostra**, our valor; and **caput parvum**, small head.

## 172.

## VOCABULARY

<b>caput, capitis, n.</b> , head ( <i>capital</i> )	<b>lapis, lapidis, m.</b> , stone ( <i>dilapidate</i> )
<b>dux, ducis, m.</b> , leader, general ( <i>conductor</i> )	<b>miles, militis, m.</b> , soldier ( <i>military</i> )
<b>eques, equitis, m.</b> , horseman ( <i>eques-</i> <i>trian</i> )	<b>pedes, peditis, m.</b> , foot soldier ( <i>pedestrian</i> )
<b>et . . . et, conj.</b> , both . . . and	<b>rēx, rēgis, m.</b> , king ( <i>regal</i> )
<b>fortiter, adv.</b> , bravely	<b>virtūs, virtūtis, f.</b> , valor, courage ( <i>virtue</i> )

## EXERCISES

173. 1. Rēgem et ducem hodiē vidi. 2. Capita multōrum peditum vīdimus. 3. Et rēgēs et ducēs militēs nostrōs dūxērunt. 4. Etiam equitēs prō rēge et duce fortiter pugnābant. 5. Virtūte et studiō<sup>1</sup> sociōs superāvērunt. 6. Lapidibus et pilis multōs agricolās vulnerāvērunt. 7. Virtūs equitum atque studium peditum lēgātum certē dēlectābit.<sup>2</sup> 8. Quis iīs equitibus scūta emet? 9. Nostrōs militēs in silvās quoque misimus.

174. 1. The commands of the king have been many. 2. We shall approve of the commands of the kings. 3. By the valor of these soldiers we shall overcome the Helvetians. 4. I shall spend the winter with the general. 5. In a town I saw a king. 6. This king was a good general and ruled well. 7. He bought food for the wretched foot soldiers. 8. He sent both arms and grain into that town.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the ablative of an abstract noun may express means.

<sup>2</sup> Observe that a singular verb may be used with two subjects, if the subjects are abstract nouns and considered as a single whole.

## LESSON XXIV

THE THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN *-IO* · THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH · THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

**175. The Third Conjugation: Verbs in *-io*.** Certain verbs of the third conjugation differ in inflection from the regular verbs of that conjugation. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of *capiō*, *take* (661).

a. Wherein does the inflection of *capiō* differ from that of *regō* in the present? in the imperfect? in the future?

b. Verbs in *-io*, with the infinitive in *-ere*, are conjugated like *capiō*. Like *capiō* inflect in the same tenses *fugiō* and *iaciō* (176).

### 176.

### VOCABULARY

<b>ā (ab)</b> , <i>prep. with abl.</i> , away from, from, by ( <i>avert</i> )	<b>pēs, pedis, m.</b> , foot ( <i>pedal</i> )
<b>ad</b> , <i>prep. with acc.</i> , to, toward ( <i>adhere</i> )	<b>capiō, capere, cēpī, captus</b> , take, capture, receive ( <i>captive</i> )
<b>conloquium, conlo'qui</b> , <i>n.</i> , confer- ence, interview ( <i>colloquial</i> )	<b>dīmittō, dīmittere, dimisi, dimis-</b> <b>sus</b> , send away ( <i>dismiss</i> )
<b>ē (ex)</b> , <i>prep. with abl.</i> , out of, from ( <i>exit</i> )	<b>fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitūrus</b> , flee, run away ( <i>fugitive</i> )
<b>mūrus, -i, m.</b> , wall ( <i>mural</i> )	<b>iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus</b> , throw, hurl, cast, fling ( <i>reject</i> )

a. *Ab* and *ex* are used instead of *ā* and *ē* before words beginning with a vowel or *h*; before consonants either *ā* or *ab*, *ē* or *ex* may be used.

### 177. The Ablative of Place from Which.

1. **Militēs ab vīcō properant**, the soldiers are hastening away from the village.
2. **Militēs ex vīcō properant**, the soldiers are hastening out of the village.
3. **Militēs dē vīcō properant**, the soldiers are hastening from (down from) the village.

a. Observe that the phrases **ab vīcō**, **ex vīcō**, and **dē vīcō** denote the *place from which* the motion is directed. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Place from Which*. **Ab vīcō** (1) indicates that the soldiers started *from the vicinity of* the village; while **ex vīcō** (2) indicates that they started from some point or place *within* the village.

**178. Rule for the Ablative of Place from Which.** *Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

### 179. The Accusative of Place to Which.

1. **Lēgātōs in oppidum misērunt**, *they sent ambassadors into the town.*

2. **Lēgātōs ad oppidum misērunt**, *they sent ambassadors to the town.*

a. Observe that the phrases **in oppidum** and **ad oppidum** denote the *place to which* the motion is directed. This usage is known as the *Accusative of Place to Which*.

**180. Rule for the Accusative of Place to Which.** *Place to which is expressed by the accusative with ad or in.*

### EXERCISES

181. 1. Capiet, capit, capiunt. 2. Iaciō, iaciam, iaciēbam.  
 3. Cēpērunt, iēcit, iēcimus. 4. Fūgimus, fugimus, dimisimus.  
 5. Ex conloquiō fugiunt. 6. Ab vīcō in agrōs fugient. 7. Dē oppidō ad ūceanum fūgit. 8. Qui litterās ad rēgem misērunt?  
 9. Dē mūris eius oppidi pila iēcērunt. 10. Dēfessōs militēs ex proeliō dimisit. 11. Cūr ab eō locō fugis? 12. Carrōs nostrōs capient.

182. 1. He will hurl, they will hurl, they hurl. 2. You throw, you will throw, you have thrown. 3. They wounded the feet of the horsemen. 4. I shall hasten from Italy into the province. 5. Both women and girls were fleeing from the fields. 6. They have hastened from Germany into Italy. 7. He led the tribune to the conference.

## LESSON XXV

### THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE · PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES EXPRESSING CAUSE

#### 183.

#### VOCABULARY

centuriō, centuriōnis, *m.*, centurion

corpus, corporis, *n.*, body (*corporal*)<sup>1</sup>

doleō, dolēre, dolui, dolitūrus,  
grieve (*doleful*)

explōrātor, explōrātōris, *m.*, scout  
(*explore*)

homō, hominis, *m.*, man (*homicide*)

inopia, -ae, *f.*, want, lack

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of

pater, patris, *m.*, father (*paternal*)

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account  
of

soror, sorōris, *f.*, sister (*sorority*)

vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound (*vul-  
nerable*)

a. Decline centuriō miser, corpus magnum, homō dēfessus, id vulnus.

#### 184. The Ablative of Cause.

1. Lēgātus mīlitem virtūte laudāvit, *the lieutenant praised the  
soldier for (because of, on account of) his valor.*
2. Peditēs viā longā sunt dēfessi, *the foot soldiers are tired out  
with (from, because of) the long march.*

a. Observe that the ablatives *virtūte* and *viā* denote *cause* or *re-  
ason*. Observe the various prepositions used in translating these abla-  
tives: *for, with, from, because of, on account of*. This ablative answers  
the question *why?* and is known as the *Ablative of Cause*.

185. *Rule for the Ablative of Cause.* *The ablative without  
a preposition is used to express cause.*

186. *Prepositional Phrases expressing Cause.* Cause may  
also be expressed by a prepositional phrase consisting of *ob*  
or *propter* with the accusative, or of *dē* or *ex* with the ablative:

<sup>1</sup> See 171, *a.*

1. **Lēgātus** mīlītem ob (propter) virtūtem laudāvit, *the lieutenant praised the soldier on account of his courage.*
  2. **Multis dē causis** in Italiām properābunt, *for many reasons they will hurry into Italy.*
- a. Observe the translation of **dē** in the phrase **dē causis**.

### EXERCISES

- 187.** 1. Multis dē causis Rōmānī auxiliū nōn mīsērunt.  
 2. Lapidibūs pilisque eōs hominēs vulnerāvērunt. 3. Multa vulnera in capitibus et in corporibūs habent. 4. Hodīē patrēs vulneribūs filiōrum dolēbunt. 5. Dux nōster magnā victōriā centuriōnēs laudābit. 6. Periculum explōrātōrum mīlēs terruit. 7. Tum in mūrōs oppidi ob iniūriās nōn fugiēbātis. 8. Propter inopiam cibi<sup>1</sup> magnō in periculō fuimus. 9. Lēgātus equitēs et peditēs ad conloquium dūxit.

- 188.** 1. We have often been tired because of wounds. 2. I shall praise our soldiers because of their courage and zeal. 3. Our fathers will fight for a long time and will capture much booty. 4. Which centurion was throwing javelins down from the wall? 5. On account of a lack of food and water Marcus and Galba, the centurions, did not fight with courage. 6. My sister is now grieving because the women of Britain are wretched. 7. In the meantime the scouts related the commands of the general.



CENTURIO

<sup>1</sup> This is a new usage of the genitive case. As used here, the genitive denotes that of which something consists or is made. It is called the *Genitive of Material*.

## LESSON XXVI

### THE THIRD DECLENSION: *I*-STEMS

**189. The Third Declension: *i*-Stems.** Certain nouns of the third declension have *i*-stems. These include:

1. Nouns which end in **-is** or **-es** in the nominative singular and have no more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative.
2. Neuters ending in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.
3. Nouns ending in **-ns** or **-rs**.
4. Monosyllables ending in **-s** or **-x**, with a consonant preceding the **-s** or **-x**.

These nouns show the following peculiarities of declension:

1. The genitive plural ends in **-ium**.
2. The accusative plural of masculines and of feminines ends in **-is** or **-es**.
3. The nominative and the accusative plural of neuters end in **-ia**.
4. The ablative singular of neuters and of a few other words ends in **-i**.

The declension of nouns having *i*-stems is illustrated by the following paradigms:

hostis, m., <i>enemy</i>	mare, n., <i>sea</i>	cohors, f., <i>cohort</i>	mōns, m., <i>mountain</i>
STEM hosti-	STEM mari-	STEM cohorti-	STEM monti-
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i> hos'tis	ma're	co'hor's	mōns
<i>Gen.</i> hos'tis	ma'ris	cohor'tis	mon'tis
<i>Dat.</i> hos'ti	ma'rī	cohor'tī	mon'tī
<i>Acc.</i> hos'tem	ma're	cohor'tem	mon'tem
<i>Abl.</i> hos'te	ma'rī	cohor'te	mon'te

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hos'tēs</i>	<i>ma'ria</i>	<i>cohor'tēs</i>	<i>mon'tēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hos'tium</i>	<i>ma'rium</i>	<i>cohor'tium</i>	<i>mon'tium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hos'tibus</i>	<i>ma'rībus</i>	<i>cohor'tibus</i>	<i>mon'tibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hos'tis (-ēs)</i>	<i>ma'ria</i>	<i>cohor'tis (-ēs)</i>	<i>mon'tis (-ēs)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hos'tibus</i>	<i>ma'rībus</i>	<i>cohor'tibus</i>	<i>mon'tibus</i>

a. For the guidance of the learner, in the succeeding vocabularies nouns having i-stems will be followed by the stem.

b. Decline each noun in 190.

## 190.

## VOCABULARY

**civis**, *civis* (*civi-*), *m.*, citizen (*civil*)  
**cohors**, *cohorts* (*cohorti-*), *f.*, cohort  
**collis**, *collis* (*colli-*), *m.*, hill  
**finis**, *finis* (*fini-*), *m.*, end; *plur.*, territories (*finish*)  
**hostis**, *hostis* (*hosti-*), *m.*, enemy (*hostile*)  
**ignis**, *ignis* (*igni-*), *m.*, fire (*ignite*)

**mare**, *maris* (*mari-*), *n.*, sea (*marine*)  
**mōns**, *montis* (*monti-*), *m.*, mountain (*mount*)  
**nāvis**, *nāvis* (*nāvi-*), *f.*, ship (*navigate*)  
**urbs**, *urbis* (*urbi-*), *f.*, city (*urban*)

## EXERCISES

191. 1. Victōria hostium cīvīs urbis Rōmae terruit. 2. Collis et montī Italiae nōn vīdi. 3. Explorātōrēs et centuriōnēs ex finibus Sabinōrum fūgērunt. 4. Rōmāni multās nāvīs et nāvigia in marī habuērunt. 5. Magnō periculō cīvēs cibum frūmentumque in urbem portant. 6. Cohortēs quoque mittēmus et hostis superābimus. 7. Propinquum montī erat oppidum. 8. Virtūs cīvium grāta duci fuit.

192. 1. Have we many ships to-day? 2. Formerly they lived on the hills and mountains. 3. The territories of the Romans were wide. 4. These citizens are not fit for war. 5. Our soldiers have captured many cities of Greece. 6. Who are throwing javelins down from the walls of the cities? 7. Boys see great fires in the city.

## LESSON XXVII

### THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

**193. Prepositions with the Accusative.** The following prepositions are used with the accusative :

ad, to, toward, against ( <i>adverse</i> )	among (of more than two objects) ( <i>intervene</i> )
ante, before, in front of ( <i>antecedent</i> )	ob, on account of, because of
apud, near, with, among	per, through ( <i>perennial</i> )
contrā, against ( <i>contradict</i> )	post, after, behind ( <i>postpone</i> )
in, into, against ( <i>inspire</i> )	propter, on account of, because of
inter, between (of two objects),	trāns, across ( <i>transatlantic</i> )

**194. Prepositions with the Ablative.** The following prepositions are used with the ablative :

ā, ab, away from, from, by ( <i>ablative</i> )	in, in, at, on ( <i>insist</i> )
cum, with ( <i>compete</i> )	prō, in front of, in behalf of ( <i>protect</i> )
dē, down from, concerning ( <i>depose</i> )	sine, without ( <i>sinecure</i> )
ē, ex, out of, from ( <i>expose</i> )	

a. Which preposition is used with both cases? With what difference in meaning?

b. Learn the meanings of all these prepositions.

**195. Methods of saying "to," "on account of," "because of," and "with" in Latin:**

a. *To*: If the phrase expresses the *indirect object*, use the dative. If the phrase occurs with a verb of *motion* (as *mittō*), use **ad** or **in** with the accusative.

b. *On account of, because of*: Use either **ob** or **propter** with the accusative, or use the ablative.

Remember that the preposition **dē** or **ex** is used in certain phrases (as, **multis dē causis**, *for many reasons*).

c. *With*: If the phrase expresses *means*, use the ablative.

If the phrase expresses *manner*, use the ablative with **cum**; omit **cum**, if you wish, when there is an adjective in the phrase.

If the phrase expresses *accompaniment*, use the ablative with **cum**.

If the phrase expresses *cause*, use either **ob** or **propter** with the accusative, or use the ablative of cause.



EQUES ROMANUS

### 196. Adjectives used as Nouns.

Adjectives are often used as nouns (*III, f.*); as, **amicus**, -i, m., *a friend*, from **amicus**, a, -um, *friendly*; **multa**, -ōrum, n., *many things*, from **multi**, -ae, -a, *many*. So also **finitimi**, *neighbors*, and **nostrī**, *our men*.

### EXERCISES

197. 1. *Nostrī centuriōnem inter captivōs vidērunt.* 2. *Finitimi propter eam victōriam Rōmānōrum dolent.* 3. *Cūr cohortēs per silvās ad oppidum fugiēbant?* 4. *Cum cūrā vestrās filiās libris docuistis.* 5. *Equitēs et peditēs ante portam sunt.* 6. *Sine periculō in urbe manēbimus.* 7. *Atque multa ex eā urbe portavērunt.* 8. *Trāns agrum lātum explorātōrēs dūcīt.* 9. *In prōvinciā cum multis militibus fuit.*

198. 1. After this battle he will send our men into Germany. 2. They captured the town without help. 3. The neighbors were fighting bravely against the enemy. 4. In front of the town was a hill. 5. Near the lieutenant a messenger was waiting. 6. We shall hurry through Italy and shall spend the winter among those mountains.

## LESSON XXVIII

### READING LESSON

199.

### VOCABULARY

exemplum, -i, n., example	tergum, -i, n., back; <i>ā</i> <i>tergō</i> , in the rear
factum, -i, n., act, deed ( <i>fact</i> )	terror, terrōris, m., terror, fear
Horātius, Horāti, m., Horatius, a Roman	Tiberis, -is (acc. -im), m., Tiber, a river
nam, conj., for	timidus, -a, -um, fearful ( <i>timid</i> )
pauci, -ae, -a, plur., few, only a few ( <i>paucity</i> )	dēfendō; dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēn- sus, defend ( <i>defense</i> )
pōns, pontis (ponti-), m., bridge (pontoon)	obsidēō, obsidēre, obsēdi, obsessus, besiege
Porsena, -ae, m., Porsena, a king of Etruria	servō, servāre, servāvi, servātus, save, protect ( <i>preserve</i> )
Sublicius, -a, -um, Sublician (rest- ing on piles)	sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sus- tentus, hold up, sustain, hold in check
tandem, adv., at last, finally	

### HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

200. Porſena, Rōmānōrum hostis, rēx fuit clārus. Ōlim urbem  
Rōmam obsidēbat. Magnus erat terror Rōmānōrum, quod Porſena  
multōs militēs habēbat. Timidae fēminaē in templis deōs  
adōrābant. Sed virtūs validī virī Rōmam dēfendit. Nam paucis  
cum sociōs prō ponte Subliciō Horātius hostis sustinuit. Cīvēs  
interim *ā* *tergō* pontem solvunt et rescindunt (*break down*).  
Tum sociōs Horātius dimittit et pontem contrā hostis dēfendit.  
Tandem dēcidit pōns, et inter pīla hostium Horātius in Tiberim  
dēsilit (*jumps down*) et ad sociōs natat. Id exemplum virtūtis  
Rōmam servāvit. Hodī facta Horāti laudāmus.

201.

## VOCABULARY

<b>contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus,</b> struggle ( <i>contend</i> )	<b>incolō, incolere, incolui, ——,</b> dwell in, inhabit
<b>cotidiānus, -a, -um,</b> daily	<b>magnopere, adv.,</b> greatly
<b>ferē, adv.,</b> almost	<b>nātiō, nātiōnis, f.,</b> race, people, tribe ( <i>national</i> )
<b>Gallia, -ae, f.,</b> Gaul ( <i>Gallic</i> )	<b>nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,</b> not only . . . but also
<b>Gallus, -ī, m.,</b> a Gaul (inhabitant of Gaul)	<b>Rhēnus, -ī, m.,</b> Rhine ( <i>Rhenish</i> )
<b>Germāni, -ōrum, m. plur.,</b> Germans	<b>timeō, timēre, timui, ——,</b> fear, dread
<b>Hispāni, -ōrum, m. plur.,</b> Spaniards	
<b>Hispānia, -ae, f.,</b> Spain	

## DE NATIONIBUS EUROPAE

**202.** Hispānia et Gallia et Germānia erant nātiōnēs Eurōpae. Proxima ōceanō erat Hispānia. Galli inter Hispāniam et Germāniām, Germāni trāns Rhēnum incolēbant. Germāni paucōs vicōs etiam in Galliā habēbant. Quod eae nātiōnēs hostēs erant, Rōmāni cum Hispānis et Gallis et Germānis saepe pugnāvērunt.

Inter Galliam et mare erat nova prōvincia Rōmae. Incolae eius prōvinciae iniūriās Gallōrum diū sustinuērunt. Tandem ab Rōmānīs auxilium postulāvērunt; nam Helvētiōs finitimōs magnopere timēbant. Helvētiī nōn sōlum prōvinciae sed etiam Germānis inimici erant et cum Germānis cotidiānis ferē proeliis contendēbant.



HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

## FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XXII-XXVIII

**203.** Give the English meanings of the following words:

ā, ab	dēcidō	homō	nāvis	rēx
ad	dēfendō	hostis	nōn sōlum . . .	servō
ante	dēmittō	iaciō	sed etiam	sine
apud	dōlō	iam	ob	solvō
capiō	dux	ignis	obsideō	soror
caput	ē, ex	incolō	pater	sustineō
centuriō	eques	inopia	paucī	tandem
cīvis	et . . . et	inter	pedes	tergum
cohors	exemplum	lapis	per	terror
collis	explōrātor	magnopere	pēs	timeō
cōfirmō	factum	mare	pōns	timidus
conlōquium	ferē	mīles	post	trāns
contendō	fingō	mōns	postulō	urhs
contrā	finis	mūrus	propter	virtūs
corpus	fortiter	nam	-que	volō
cotidiānus	fugiō	nātiō	quoque	vulnus

**204.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

sister	back	after	on account of, because of
few, only a few	wall	and	near, with, among
fly	without	father	conference, interview
both . . . and	bridge	head	to, toward, against
across	enemy	daily	from, away from
hill	now	defend	not only . . . but also
foot soldier	horseman	stone	throw, hurl, cast
ship	at last	before	valor, courage
grieve	soldier	centurion	leader, general
fear, dread	bravely	for	fashion, devise
mountain	citizen	fall down	dwell in, inhabit
city	terror	loose	between, among

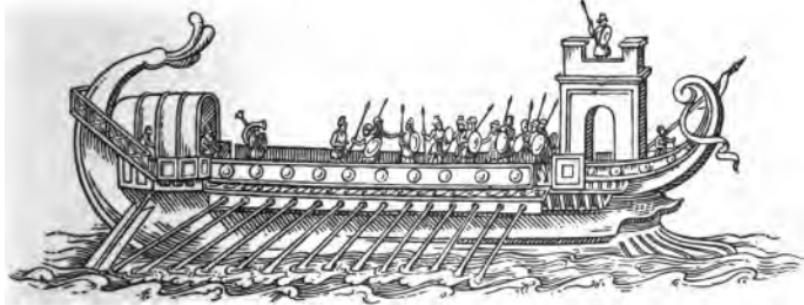
take, capture	king	sea	race, people, tribe
fire	greatly	foot	end, territories
struggle	scout	flee	strengthen, encourage
man	against	body	hold up, sustain, hold in check
wound	lack, want	besiege	act, deed
send away	demand	cohort	example
out of, from	through	almost	save, protect
fearful			

**205.** Decline each noun in 203. Give the principal parts of each verb. Conjugate each verb of the third conjugation in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active. Use each preposition in a Latin phrase. Which nouns have i-stems?

**206.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 203. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**207.** Give the rule, if there is one, for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Ablative of place from which           | 5. Prepositions with the accusative |
| 2. Accusative of place to which           |                                     |
| 3. Ablative of cause                      | 6. Prepositions with the ablative   |
| 4. Prepositional phrases expressing cause | 7. Adjectives used as nouns         |



NAVIS

## LESSON XXIX.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION .

**208. Adjectives of the Third Declension.** Besides the adjectives of the first and second declensions there are also adjectives of the third declension. They use the endings of the third declension of nouns.

a. Some of these adjectives have the same form for the nominative singular of all three genders: as, **audāx**, *bold*. Others have the same form for the masculine and feminine nominative singular, but a different form for the neuter nominative singular: as, **brevis**,  *breve*, *short*. Still others have a different form in the nominative singular for each gender: as, **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *keen*, *eager*.

b. Learn the declension of **audāx**, **brevis**, and **ācer** (644).

c. Observe that the adjectives having two or three endings in the nominative singular have only -i in the ablative singular. Adjectives of one ending more often have -i than -e in the ablative. Compare the endings of these adjectives with the endings of nouns having i-stems (189). What differences are there?

d. Decline **proelium ācre**, *keen battle*; **corpus breve**, *short body*; **hostis audāx**, *bold enemy*; **vir ācer**, *bold man*.

### 209.

### VOCABULARY

<b>ācer</b> , <b>ācris</b> , <b>ācre</b> , <i>keen</i> , <i>eager</i> , <i>sharp</i> <i>(acrid)</i>	<b>fortis</b> , -e, <i>brave</i> , <i>strong</i> ( <i>fortitudo</i> )
<b>audāx</b> , <b>audācis</b> , <i>bold</i> ( <i>audacious</i> )	<b>gravis</b> , -e, <i>heavy</i> , <i>severe</i> ( <i>gravity</i> )
<b>brevis</b> , -e, <i>short</i> , <i>brief</i> ( <i>brevity</i> )	<b>labor</b> , <b>labōris</b> , m., <i>toil</i> , <i>hardship</i> <i>(laborious)</i>
<b>Caesar</b> , <b>Caesaris</b> , m., <i>Cæsar</i>	<b>omnis</b> , -e, <i>all</i> , <i>every</i> , <i>the whole</i> <i>(omnipresent)</i>
<b>commūnis</b> , -e, <i>common</i> ( <i>commu-</i> <i>nity</i> )	<b>potestās</b> , <b>pōtestātis</b> , f., <i>power</i>

NOTE. In the vocabularies the genitive singular will be given of adjectives of one ending; but in the case of adjectives of two or of three endings all the forms of the nominative singular will be given.

## EXERCISES

**210.** 1. Caesar dux audāx Rōmānōrum erat. 2. Magna fuit potestās eius ducis. 3. Omnes militēs Caesarem magnopere amābant, quod hostis saepe superāvit. 4. Labōrēs militum in bellō saepe erant gravēs. 5. Hostēs multi et acrēs erant et multa pila contrā Rōmānōs iaciēbant. 6. Sed nostrae cohortēs propter commūne periculum nōn fūgērunt. 7. Prō Rōmā fortiter pugnāvērunt. 8. Breve erat id bellum.

**211.** 1. The sword of the Romans was both short and heavy. 2. The foot soldier had a bold comrade. 3. Our men were carrying many heavy things. 4. To all my friends I shall give gifts. 5. The leader of the eager horsemen was grieving because of many hardships. 6. He dismissed all the tribunes from the conference.



CÆSAR

## LESSON XXX

### THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

**212.** **The Fourth Conjugation.** Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of **audiō** (662).

a. Compare the inflection of **audiō** with that of **capiō**. Observe that three forms of **audiō** in the present differ in quantity from the corresponding forms of **capiō**: **audis**, **audimus**, **audit̄is**. In other respects the inflection is identical with that of **capiō**.

b. Inflect like **audiō** in the same tenses **reperiō**, *find*, and **veniō**, *come*.

### 213.

### VOCABULARY

<b>flūmen, flūminis, n.</b> , river ( <i>fluent</i> )	<b>oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvi,</b> <b>oppugnātus</b> , attack ( <i>impugn</i> )
<b>nōbilis, -e</b> , noble, of high birth ( <i>nobility</i> )	<b>reperiō, reperire, repperi, repertus,</b> <i>find (repertory)</i>
<b>audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus</b> , hear ( <i>audible</i> )	<b>veniō, venire, vēnī, ventūrus</b> , come ( <i>invent</i> )

### EXERCISES

**214.** 1. **Audiō**, audiēbam, audiam. 2. **Auditne?** audiēbat, audiet. 3. **Audiunt**, audiēbant, audient. 4. **Audimus**, audiēmus, audiētis. 5. **Audīvī**, audis, audiērunt. 6. **Venis**, venit, vēnistī. 7. **Vēnit**, venimus, vēnimus. 8. **Reperisne?** repēristis, reperitis. 9. **Repperi**, reperit, repperit.

**215.** 1. He has found, they have found, they came. 2. You are hearing, you did come, he heard. 3. We have heard, we were finding, we came. 4. You are coming, they were finding, we shall come. 5. I shall hear, we hear, they heard. 6. He came, he has come, they hear. 7. They will defend, they have attacked, he has defended.

216.

## CONLOQUIUM

MĀRCUS. Hodiē fābulam dē Porsenā et Horātiō audivī.

IŪLIA. Quis fuit Porsena? Rōmānusne erat?

MĀRCUS. Porsena, rēx nōbilis, Rōmānōrum hostis olim fuit. Cum nullibus audācibus in finis Rōmānōrum vēnit, et urbem Rōmam oppugnābat.

IŪLIA. Fūgēruntne Rōmāni ob periculum?

MĀRCUS. Magnum erat periculum urbis et civium, quod hostēs erant fortēs et ācrēs, sed Rōmāni nōn fūgērunt.

IŪLIA. Cēpitne Porsena Rōmam?

MĀRCUS. Urbem nōn cēpit, quod virtūs validi viri cīvis dēfendēbat. Paucis cum sociis Horātius prō urbe fortiter pugnābat.

IŪLIA. Diūne hostēs sustinuit Horātius?

MĀRCUS. Nōn diū, quod hostēs erant multi, et multa pila iaciēbant. Tandem trāns flūmen ad sociōs natāvit. Rōmāni Horātium ob eam virtūtem laudāvērunt.



SOLDIERS MARCHING

## LESSON XXXI

### THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

#### 217.

#### VOCABULARY

aestās, aestatis, f., summer	secundus, -a, -um, second ( <i>secondary</i> )
annus, -i, m., year ( <i>annual</i> )	tempus, temporis, n., time ( <i>temporal</i> )
decem, adj., indecl., ten ( <i>decimal</i> )	gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, manage,
hiems, hiemis, f., winter	carry on ( <i>vicegerent</i> )
hōra, -ae, f., hour ( <i>horoscope</i> )	prīmā lūce, at dawn
lūx, lūcis, f., light ( <i>translucent</i> )	bellum gerere, carry on war, wage
nox, noctis ( <i>nocti-</i> ), f., night ( <i>nocturnal</i> )	war
prīmus, -a, -um, first ( <i>primary</i> )	

#### 218. The Ablative of Time.

1. Hominēs aestāte et hieme labōrant, *men toil in summer and in winter.*
2. Decem annis Caesar multa bella gessit, *within ten years César carried on many wars.*

a. Observe that these ablatives are expressions of time. They answer the questions *when?*, *in* or *within what time?* This usage of the ablative is known as the *Ablative of Time*. It may be translated by a phrase beginning with *in*, *at*, *within*, or *during*.

**219. Rule for the Ablative of Time.** *The time at which or within which a thing happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

#### EXERCISES

- ↓
1. Hieme ventī in mari sunt gravēs.
  2. Aestāte agri-colae in agris labōrabant.
  3. Prīmā lūce ad Caesarem venient.
  4. Caesar bellum fortibus cum hostibus gessit.
  5. Omnēs

prōvinciās paucis annis superāvit. 6. Quō tempore noctis in urbem vēnistī? 7. Secundā hōrā proelī decem explōrātōrēs capiunt. 8. Nūntius eō tempore lēgātō litterās dēmōnstrāvit.

221. 1. Welcome summer will come in a short time. 2. At the second hour of the night we heard these commands. 3. He found ten wounds on the body of the foot soldier. 4. At dawn Cæsar sent this cohort between the hill and the mountain. 5. They all fled from the province in the first year of the war. 6. Why did they not carry on war with the Romans in the winter?

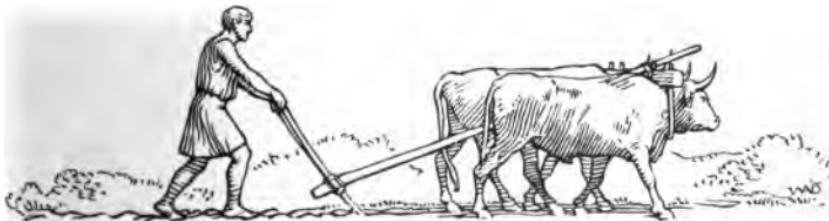
#### LACONIC SPEECHES<sup>1</sup>

222. 1. Amīcus ōlim Spartānum rogāvit: "Cūr mūrōs nōn habet Sparta?" Spartānus respondit: "Nostra urbs mūrōs optimōs (*the very best*) habet, yirtūtem incolārum fortium."

2. Rēx Spartānus ōlim dixit: "Mei cīvēs numquam rogāvērunt, 'Quot sunt hostēs?' sed 'Ubi sunt?'"

3. Hostis ante pugnam Spartānō dixit: "Sōlem propter pīlōrum multitūdinem et sagittārum nōn vidēbitis." "In umbrā igitur pugnābimus," respondit Spartānus.

<sup>1</sup> The meanings of words that are not given in the vocabularies of the lessons may be found in the general vocabulary.



AESTATE AGRICOLA IN AGRIS LABORAT

## LESSON XXXII

### THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

**223. The Formation of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.** The pluperfect (xxxiii, b) and the future perfect (xxxiii, b) indicative active of **amō** are inflected as follows :

#### PLUPERFECT

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>amā'veram</b> , <i>I had loved</i>   | <b>amāverā'mus</b> , <i>we had loved</i>  |
| 2. <b>amā'verās</b> , <i>you had loved</i> | <b>amāverā'tis</b> , <i>you had loved</i> |
| 3. <b>amā'verat</b> , <i>he had loved</i>  | <b>amā'verant</b> , <i>they had loved</i> |

#### FUTURE PERFECT

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>amā'verō</b> , <i>I shall have loved</i>   | <b>amāve'rimus</b> , <i>we shall have loved</i> |
| 2. <b>amā'veris</b> , <i>you will have loved</i> | <b>amāve'ritis</b> , <i>you will have loved</i> |
| 3. <b>amā'verit</b> , <i>he will have loved</i>  | <b>amā'verint</b> , <i>they will have loved</i> |

a. Observe that the pluperfect is formed by adding the imperfect of **sum** (108) to the perfect stem ; and the future perfect by adding the future of **sum** to the perfect stem. One form, however, is not spelled as it is in the inflection of **sum**. Which form ?

b. The tense sign of the pluperfect is **-erā-** ; of the future perfect, **-eri-**.

c. What are the perfect stems of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, and **sum**? Inflect the pluperfect and future perfect tenses of these verbs, and of the verbs in 203.

d. What auxiliary verbs (iv, f) are to be used in translating these tenses? What English tense is the same as the pluperfect?

e. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect use the perfect stem, and so belong to the perfect system of the verb. Make synopses (671) in this system of the model verbs.

## 224.

## VOCABULARY

civitās, civitatis, <i>f.</i> , state, clan	prīnceps, prīcipis, <i>m.</i> , chief ( <i>principal</i> )
Labiēnus, -i, <i>m.</i> , Labienus, a Roman officer	Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman
populus, -i, <i>m.</i> , people ( <i>population</i> )	tēlum, -i, <i>n.</i> , weapon

## EXERCISES

225. 1. Émerint, gesseram, hiemāverātis. 2. Dēmōnstrāverant, audiveris, superāverāmus. 3. Tenuerō, complēveram, armāverās. 4. Habitāveris, vocāverat, mānserō. 5. Nārrāverātis, miserās, fūgerimus. 6. Exspectāveram, doluerō, cōfirmāverit. 7. Sustinuerat, rēxeram, properāveris. 8. Labiēnus prīcipem virtūte laudāverat. 9. Fortis homō amicōs multōs et ācrīs habuerit. 10. Caesar bella nōn sōlum in Galliā sed etiam in Britanniā gesserat. 11. Quō tempore noctis arma cēperis? 12. Galli oppida magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 13. Populus Rōmānus cīvēs eius civitātis liberāverat.



A GALLIC CHIEFTAIN

226. 1. We shall have frightened, you (*sing.*) had come, you (*plur.*) will have dismissed. 2. He will have fought, he had captured, they had defended. 3. We had led, they will have wounded, he will have thrown. 4. You (*sing.*) will have built, we had found, they will have carried. 5. The Roman people had long held the Gauls in check. 6. The chiefs had called together all the clans. 7. Labienus will have found many weapons in that place. 8. The Gauls had waited for aid. 9. At last we had attacked that hill.

## LESSON XXXIII

### THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HIC* AND *ILLE* · PLACE FROM WHICH AND TO WHICH, IN NAMES OF TOWNS

**227.** The Demonstratives *Hic* and *Ille*. Review the declension of *is* (654), and learn the declension of *hic* and *ille* (654).

a. Decline *hic princeps*, *haec civitās*, *hoc tēlum*, *ille Gallus*, *illa nox*, and *illud tempus*.

**228.** The Distinction between *Is*, *Hic*, and *Ille*. *Is* is used indifferently for *this* or *that* without emphasis (148). *Hic* means *this*, and *ille* *that*, with a certain emphasis. *Hic* is applied to what is *near* the speaker in place, time, or thought. *Ille* is applied to what is *not near* the speaker in place, time, or thought. *Hic* and *ille*, like *is*, are used both as demonstrative adjectives and as demonstrative pronouns: as, *hoc dōnum meum*, *illud tuum est*, *this gift is mine*, *that is yours*. Demonstratives, when used as adjectives, regularly precede their nouns.

**229.** Place from Which and to Which, in Names of Towns. You have already learned that *place from which* is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*) (178); and that *place to which* is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in* (180). If, however, the *place from which* or *to which* is the name of a town, the prepositions are omitted: as, *Rōmā vēnit*, *he came from Rome*; *Rōmam vēnit*, *he came to Rome*. *Domus*, *home*, also omits the preposition: *domum vēnit*, *he came home (homeward)*.

**230.** Complete Rules for Place from Which and to Which.  
a. *Place from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*); but with the names of towns, and with *domus*, the preposition is omitted.

b. Place to which is usually expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; but with the names of towns, and with *domus*, the preposition is omitted.

## 231.

## VOCABULARY

<i>Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur.</i>	Athens	<i>frāter, frātris, m.</i>	brother ( <i>fraternal</i> )
<i>Capua, -ae, f.</i>	Capua	<i>hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. or adj.</i>	
<i>Carthāgō, -inis, f.</i>	Carthage	<i>this</i>	
<i>Corinthus, -ī, f.</i>	Corinth <sup>1</sup>	<i>ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. or adj.</i>	
<i>Delphī, -ōrum, m. plur.</i>	Delphi	<i>that</i>	
<i>domum, acc.</i>	home, homeward		
<i>domō, abl.</i>	from home		

## EXERCISES

232. 1. Dux illōs equitēs peditēsque Capuam misit. 2. Tandem ex Italiā Carthāginem propter commūne periculum proparāvit. 3. Hi militēs Athēnis vēnerant et in Galliā pugnābant. 4. Secundā illius noctis hōrā nūntium Corinthum misit. 5. Illi lēgātī praedam Rōmam portāverant. 6. Populus audāx in hāc insulā habitāverat. 7. Huic centuriōni amicus fueram. 8. Ex his finibus omnēs principēs Delphōs fūgerant, quod illō tempore hostēs bellum parābant.

233. 1. From Delphi they had come to Athens. 2. From home my brother hastened to Corinth. 3. Cæsar had sent messengers through those states. 4. In these years the Gauls had been friendly to the Roman people. 5. These enemies will have fought with Cæsar with great courage. 6. This is a javelin, that is a sword.

<sup>1</sup> Most names of towns are feminine.

## LESSON XXXIV

### READING LESSON

#### VICTORIA CAESARIS

**234.** In Galliā multae et fortēs cīvitātēs erant. Prīcipēs hārum cīvitātūm potestātem imperiaque Rōmānōrum timuērunt. Multōs militēs igitur convocāverant et inter montis et collis Rōmānōs exspectābant.

Prīmō annō belli populus Rōmānus Caesarem contrā Gallōs mīsit. Is dux, cum Labiēnō et peditib⁹ et paucis equitib⁹,



MILITES ROMANI

ex Italiā aestāte properāvit et sine periculō in finis Gallōrum vēnit. His in locis explōrātōrēs Caesaris hostēs repperērunt.

Prīmā lūce militēs Rōmāni Gallōs oppugnāvērunt. Ācre erat proelium. Galli lapidibus et tēlis gravibus locum dēfendēbant. Nostri pila iaciēbant et gladiis hostis sustinēbant. Tandem Galli dēfessi ob inopiam tēlōrum et vulnera trāns flūmen fūgērunt.

Decem annis Caesar multa bella in Galliā gessit et multōs captivōs Rōmam mīsit.

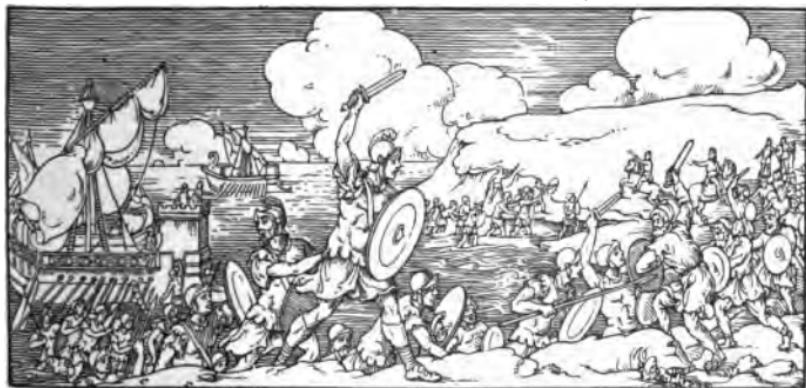
235.

## VOCABULARY

Britanni, -ōrum, <i>m.</i> <i>plur.</i> , the Britons	nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvi, nāvīgātus, sail ( <i>navigation</i> )
Cassivellaunus, -i, <i>m.</i> , Cassivel-launus	occupō, occupāre, occupāvi, occupātus, seize, take possession of ( <i>occupy</i> )
obses, obsidis, <i>m.</i> , hostage	vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvi, vāstātus, lay waste ( <i>devastate</i> )
tamen, <i>adv.</i> , yet, but, nevertheless	

## DE CAESARE ET BRITANNIS

236. Quod Britanni ad Gallōs auxilium saepe miserant, Caesar in insulam Britanniam nāvigāvit. Territi (*although frightened*) magnō numerō nāvium et virōrum, Britanni fortēs magnā cum virtūte prō patriā pugnāvērunt. Tandem tamen ab litorē fūgērunt. Post hoc proelium Rōmāni agrōs hostium vāstāvērunt et oppida occupāvērunt et multam praedam cēpērunt. Cassivellaunus, princeps Britannōrum, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsit. Caesar obsidēs postulāvit. Cum his obsidibus et captivis multis ex Britanniā in Galliam vēnit. Propter hanc victoriā magna erat potestās Rōmānōrum in Britanniā.



IN BRITANNIAM CAESAR NAVIGAT

## LESSON XXXV

### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

**237. The Passive Voice.** In the active voice the subject of the verb is *acting*; in the passive voice it is *acted on* (xxviii) : as,

*The general praises the soldier* (active).

*The soldier is praised by the general* (passive).

**238. The Present Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation.** The present indicative passive of *amō* is inflected as follows :

SINGULAR	PERS. ENDINGS	PLURAL	PERS. ENDINGS
1. <i>a'mor, I am loved</i> ( <i>I am</i> -r <i>being loved</i> )	-r	<i>amā'mur, we are loved</i> -mur	
2. <i>amā'ris, you are loved</i>	-ris	<i>amā'mini, you are loved</i> -mini	
3. <i>amā'tur, he, she, it is loved</i>	-tur	<i>ama n'tur, they are loved</i> -ntur	

a. Observe that these passive forms differ from the active only in the personal endings. The endings are added to the present stem *amā-* exactly as they were in the active voice.

**239. The Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation.** Compare the imperfect and the future active and passive of *amō* (658). Observe that the passive endings are added to the tense stems *amābā-* and *amābi-*, exactly as in the active voice, except in the second person singular of the future, where *-bi-* is changed to *-be-*. Learn these tenses of *moneō* (659).

### EXERCISES

- 240.** 1. *Amat, amātur.* 2. *Amābat, amābātur.* 3. *Amābit, amābitur.* 4. *Amant, amantur.* 5. *Amābant, amābantur.* 6. *Amābuntne? amābunturne?* 7. *Amāmus, amāmur.* 8. *Moneō,*

moneor. 9. Monēbam, monēbar. 10. Monēbō, monēbor.  
11. Monēbitis, monēbimini. 12. Monētis, monēmini.

**241.** 1. You praise, you are praised. 2. They were praising, they were being praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. I teach, I am taught. 5. We teach, we are taught. 6. We shall teach, we shall be taught. 7. They teach, they are taught.

**242. The Ablative of Agent.**

1. *Labiēnus militem laudat, Labienus praises the soldier.*
2. *Miles ab Labiēnō laudātur, the soldier is being praised by Labienus.*

a. Observe the changes made in turning the active sentence into the passive: (1) the object in the active becomes the subject in the passive; (2) the subject of the active is expressed in the passive by the ablative with **ab**. This ablative is known as the *Ablative of Agent*.

b. The *agent* is the person doing something. The ablative of *agent* should not be confused with the ablative of *means* (22), which has no preposition: as, *miles lapide vulnerātur, the soldier is wounded by a stone*; *miles ā Gallō vulnerātur, the soldier is wounded by a Gaul*.

**243. Rule for the Ablative of Agent.** *The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

**EXERCISES**

**244.** 1. Hic puer ā frātre meō laudābātur. 2. Haec praeda Rōmam ā Caesare portābitur. 3. Ā quō nōn amātur potestās? 4. Fābulae multae dē Britanniā ab iīs nūntiis nārrābuntur. 5. Oppidum ab militibus oppugnātur. 6. In hāc pugnā decem hominēs ā Gallis vulnerantur. 7. Nāvibus frūmentum portābitur.

**245.** 1. All these Gauls will be held in check by those horsemen. 2. My brothers were praised by that boy. 3. Aid is being awaited by the enemy. 4. A few cohorts were seen by the chief. 5. Rome was loved by all the Romans.

## LESSON XXXVI

### THE RELATIVE *QUI*

**246. The Relative *Qui*.** The relative *qui*, *who*, *which*, *that*, is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quībus	quībus	quībus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quībus	quībus	quībus

a. Compare the declension of the relative *qui* with that of the interrogative *qui* (154).

**247. Agreement of the Relative with its Antecedent.**

1. *Puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant, the girls whom we praised were good.*
2. *Praemium quod ille homō portat laudātur, the reward which that man is bringing is praised.*
3. *Homō cuius gladium habeō est nauta, the man whose sword I have is a sailor.*

a. Observe that the relative (*ii, d*) in each sentence refers to a certain word. This word is called its *antecedent* (*ii, b*). Observe that the relative has the same gender and number as its antecedent, but that its case is different. Thus, in sentences 1 and 2 it is accusative because it is the object of **laudāvimus** or of **portat**; in sentence 3 it is genitive because it indicates the possessor of **gladium**.

b. A relative clause modifies its antecedent as an adjective modifies its noun.

**248. Rule for the Agreement of the Relative.** *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the way it is used in its own clause.*

249.

## VOCABULARY

cōnsilium, cōnsi'li, <i>n.</i> , advice, plan ( <i>counsel</i> )	mercātor, mercātōris, <i>m.</i> , trader, merchant ( <i>merchandise</i> )
frūstrā, <i>adv.</i> , in vain ( <i>frustrate</i> )	qui, quae, quod, <i>rel. pron.</i> , who, which, that, as
legiō, legiōnis, <i>f.</i> , legion ( <i>legionary</i> )	turris, turris ('turri-), <i>f.</i> , tower ( <i>turret</i> )

māter, mātris, *f.*, mother (*mater-nal*)

## EXERCISES

250. 1. Illa fēmina quam vidēs est māter Cornēliae. 2. Mer-cātōrēs multa in Germāniam portant. 3. Hostēs ācrēs, ā quibus nostra patria vāstātur, sunt Rō-mānī. 4. Iī hominēs, quōrum virtūte et cōsiliis urbs tenē-bātur, domum ē bellō venient. 5. Turrēs, quae cum cūrā aedi-ficābantur, ab hostibus vāstā-buntur. 6. Obsidēs qui ā Rōmānīs liberantur Athēnās properābunt. 7. Dux legiōnis quam Caesar trāns flūmen mīsit erat Labiēnus.

251. 1. The weapons which we have brought are not good. 2. This summer you will fight with Caesar, who is defending the province. 3. I shall praise the plan by which that town is being laid waste. 4. Caesar had ten legions in the wars which he carried on with the Gauls. 5. The woman to whom I showed the way is the mother of this unhappy hostage.



MATER CUM PUERIS

## FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XXIX-XXXVI

**252.** Give the English meanings of the following words:

ācer	decem	hōra	nox	qui
aestās	flūmen	ille	obses	reperiō
annus	fortis	labor	occupō	secundus
audāx	frāter	legiō	omnis	tamen
audiō	frūstrā	lūx	oppugnō	tēlum
brevis	gerō	māter	populus	tempus
cīvitās	gravis	mercātor	potestās	turris
commūnis	hic	nāvigō	prīmus	vāstō
cōnsilium	hiems	nōbilis	prīnceps	veniō

**253.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

legion	this	find
come	brother	toil, hardship
that	who, which, that, as	sail
ten	all	advice, plan
summer	mother	in vain
hostage	second	short, brief
time	brave, strong	trader
year	hour	power
river	night	chief
winter	bold	tower
first	manage, carry on, wage	yet, nevertheless
common	state, clan	heavy
light	noble, of high birth	people
weapon	attack	seize, take possession of
hear	keen, eager, sharp	lay waste

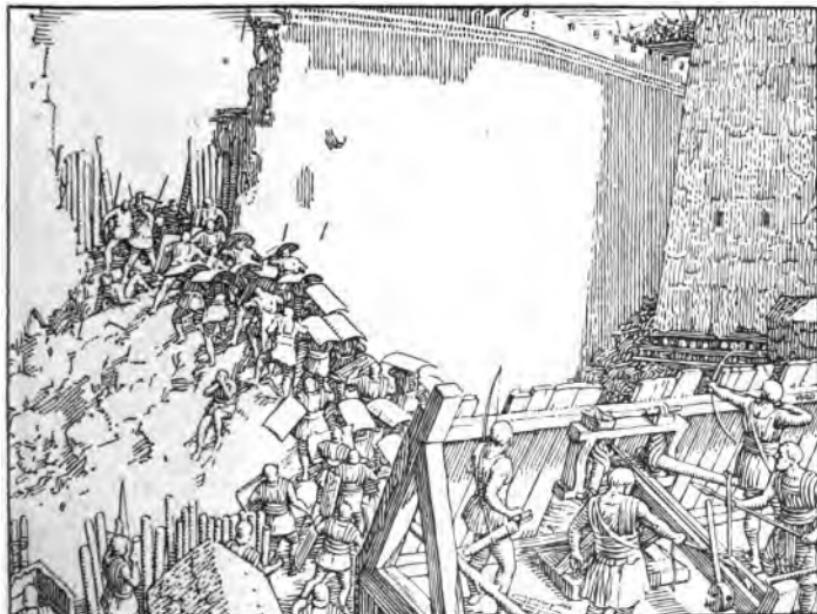
**254.** Decline each noun and each adjective in 252. Give the principal parts of each verb. Conjugate each verb of the fourth

conjugation throughout the indicative mood. Make synopses (671) of each verb in the third person singular and plural. Decline **hic**, **ille**, and **qui**.

**255.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 252. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**256.** Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

1. Ablative of time
- 2: Place from which, in names of towns
3. Place to which, in names of towns
4. Ablative of agent
5. Agreement of the relative



HOSTES CONTRA ROMANOS OPPIDUM DEFENDUNT



## LESSON XXXVII

### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *REGO* AND *CARIO*

**257.** The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *Regō* and *Capiō*. Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of *regō* and *capiō*, and learn the passive of the same tenses (660, 661).

*a.* Observe that to form the passive you have only to substitute the passive personal endings for the active, except in one form. Which one is that, and what is the change?

*b.* Like *regō* inflect in both voices the same tenses of *dūcō*, *mittō*, and *gerō*; inflect *iaciō* and *recipiō* like *capiō*.

#### EXERCISES

**258.** 1. Regit, regitur. 2. Regēbat, regēbātur. 3. Reget, regētūr. 4. Regunt, reguntur. 5. Regent, regentur. 6. Regis, regeris. 7. Regēbās, regēbāris. 8. Regēs, regēris. 9. Regimus, regimur. 10. Regitis, regimini. 11. Regam, regar. 12. Capiunt, capiuntur. 13. Capiēbat, capiēbātur. 14. Capiet, capiētūr. 15. Capient, capientur. 16. Capiēs, capiēris. 17. Capis, caperis. 18. Capiēbās, capiēbāris.

**259.** 1. He leads, he is led. 2. They will lead, they will be led. 3. They lead, they are led. 4. You lead, you are led. 5. We shall lead, we shall be led. 6. We send, we are sent. 7. Is he sent? are they sent? 8. He will send; he will be sent. 9. You are sent, you will be sent. 10. They were waging, I was waging. 11. We wage, we shall wage. 12. We throw, we are thrown. 13. We threw, we were being thrown. 14. Who receives? who was being received?

## 260.

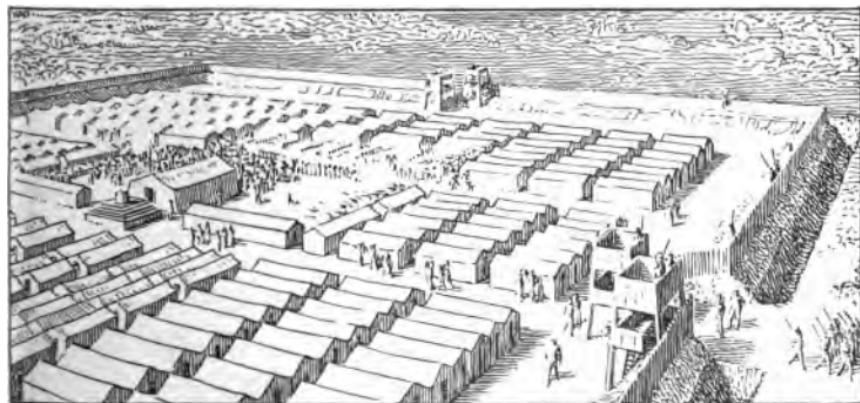
## VOCABULARY

<i>castra, -ōrum, n. plur.,</i> camp <i>(Lancaster)</i>	<i>pāx, pācis, f.,</i> peace ( <i>pacify</i> )
<i>cōsul, cōnsulis, m.,</i> consul ( <i>con-</i> <i>sular</i> )	<i>recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus,</i> receive, welcome ( <i>recipient</i> )
<i>nōn iam, adv.,</i> no longer	<i>vincō, vincere, vici, victus, defeat,</i> conquer ( <i>invincible</i> )

## EXERCISES

261. 1. Lēgāti dē pāce in castra cōnsulis vēnērunt. 2. Iam ad cōsulem dūcuntur hi lēgāti. 3. Bene ā cōsule recipientur. 4. Nōn iam urbs hostium dēfenditur. 5. Tēla quae dē mūris iaciēbantur multōs vulnerābant. 6. Militēs cōnsulis nōn saepe ā Gallis vincuntur. 7. Pāx populō Rōmānō grāta erit.

262. 1. Labienus with only a few cohorts will be sent from Rome into Gaul. 2. Those towns of Gaul will be defended bravely. 3. The legion is being led out of the camp. 4. Many states of Gaul are being conquered to-day. 5. The new plans of our allies were being announced to the neighbors. 6. They will be received by Cæsar, who has conquered the Helvetians.



CASTRA ROMANA

## LESSON XXXVIII

### THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

**263. The Personal Pronouns.** The personal pronouns (II, c) are *ego, I*; *tū, you*; *is, he*; *ea, she*; *id, it*.

In reality there is no pronoun of the third person in Latin. The demonstrative *is* (148, 228) is so often used as a personal pronoun that it may be classed as the pronoun of the third person. Sometimes the demonstratives *hic* and *ille* are similarly used. Learn the declension of the personal pronouns (652).

**264. The Personal Pronouns as Subjects of Verbs.** The personal pronouns are expressed as subjects only for emphasis, especially the emphasis of contrast: as, *ego tē laudō, tū mē nōn laudās, I praise you, you do not praise me*.

**265. The Reflexive Pronouns.** A reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of its clause (II, h). Learn the declension of the reflexive pronouns (653).

**266. The Use of the Reflexive Pronouns.** The use of the reflexive pronouns is illustrated by the following sentences:

1. *Tū tē amās, you love yourself.*
2. *Omnēs hominēs sē amant, all men love themselves.*

a. Observe that *tē* and *sē* refer to the subjects of their sentences.

b. Remember that *is, he*; *ea, she*; and *id, it*, are used as personal pronouns, but not as reflexive pronouns; and that *sui* is always a reflexive pronoun, and not a personal pronoun.

**267. Relative Clauses referring to Personal Pronouns.**

*Tū, qui venīs, es amīcus meus, you, who are coming, are my friend.*

a. Observe that the verb of the relative clause is in the same person as the antecedent.

## 268.

## VOCABULARY

<i>cotidiē</i> , <i>adv.</i> , daily	<i>reliqui</i> , <i>-ōrum</i> , <i>m. plur.</i> , the rest
<i>ego</i> , <i>pers. pron.</i> , I ( <i>egotistic</i> )	<i>sui</i> , <i>reflex. pron.</i> , of himself, herself, itself, themselves
<i>interficiō</i> , <i>interficere</i> , <i>interfēci</i> , in-	<i>tempestās</i> , <i>tempestātis</i> , <i>f.</i> , weather, storm ( <i>tempest</i> )
terfectus, kill	
<i>is</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>id</i> , <i>pers. pron.</i> , he, she, it	<i>tū</i> , <i>pers. pron.</i> , you
<i>reliquus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> , rest of, remain-	
ing ( <i>relic</i> )	

## EXERCISES

269. 1. Scūtum eius erat grave. 2. Amici eōrum fuerant militēs. 3. Studium eārum laudātur. 4. Vōbiscum<sup>1</sup> propter tempestātem manēbō. 5. Contrā eōs bellum geritur. 6. Estne Mārcus tēcum? 7. Cum eā ambulābat. 8. Sine vōbis Athēnās properābunt. 9. Nōs sumus miseri, vōs aegrī et dēfessī estis. 10. Omnia vestra cōnsilia nōbis sunt grāta. 11. Pater et māter eius ab vōbis bene recipiēbantur. 12. Reliqui principēs, qui sē armābant, ad conloquium nōn vēnērunt. 13. Itaque ad sē centuriōnēm vocat et ei cōsilium nārrat. 14. Cotidiē Caesar peditēs ē castrīs dūcēbat.

270. 1. His mother and my father saw you. 2. They are now with me. 3. To him, to her, to them I shall give rewards. 4. Their camp is being attacked. 5. I shall hurry into town with you. 6. We shall free ourselves with severe hardship. 7. She has wounded herself with her father's sword. 8. The rest will kill themselves. 9. Their towns are being laid waste by the Gauls this summer.

<sup>1</sup> The preposition **cum** is appended to the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns in the manner of an enclitic (22); so usually to relative and interrogative pronouns.

## LESSON XXXIX

### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

**271.** The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *Audiō*. Review the active voice of *audiō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and learn the passive of the same tenses (662)

a. Like *audiō* inflect *impediō*, *hinder*, and *reperiō*, *find*, in the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

#### EXERCISES

**272.** 1. Audit, auditur. 2. Audiēbat, audiēbātur. 3. Audiet, audiētūr. 4. Audimus, audīmūr. 5. Audiēmus, audiēmūr. 6. Audiam, audiar. 7. Audit̄is, audīmīnī. 8. Audiēt̄is, audiēmīnī. 9. Audis, audiris. 10. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 11. Audiunt, audiuntur. 12. Audiēbant, audiēbantur.

**273.** 1. I hinder, I am hindered. 2. I was hindering, I was being hindered. 3. I shall hinder, I shall be hindered. 4. They hinder, they are hindered. 5. They will hinder, they will be hindered. 6. He finds, he is found. 7. He found, he was found. 8. He will find, he will be found.

#### 274.

#### VOCABULARY

*aedificium*, *aedifi'ci*, *n.*, building  
(*edifice*)

*Coriolānus*, *-i*, *m.*, Coriolanus

*maximē*, *adv.*, greatly, very much  
(*maximum*)

*statim*, *adv.*, at once

*Veturia*, *-ae*, *f.*, Veturia

*Volsci*, *-ōrum*, *m.*, Volscians

*dicō*, *dicere*, *dixi*, *dictus*, say (*dic-tion*)

*impediō*, *impedire*, *impediv̄i*, *impeditus*, hinder (*impede*)

*incitō*, *incitare*, *incitāvi*, *incitātus*, arouse, impel (*incite*)

*praebēō*, *praebēre*, *praebui*, *praebitus*, cause, furnish, show

**EXERCISES****VETURIA, MATER CORIOLANI**

**275.** Urbī Rōmae ōlim magnum periculum ā Volscīs, qui erant populi Rōmāni hostēs audācēs, praebēbātur. Volsci ā Coriolānō, Rōmānō, incitābantur et dūcēbantur. Iam aedificia multa in agris ab hostibus vāstābantur. Civēs sē armābant. Urbs cibō complēbātur ā cōnsule. Frūstrā hostēs impediēbantur. Tum periculō magnō Rōmāni mātrem Coriolānī dē pāce ad eum misērunt, quod ea ab filiō maximē amābātur. Veturia, māter Coriolānī, in castra ad filium vēnit. In castris eum repperit. Coriolānus eam vīdit et dixit, "Mea patria mē et sociōs meōs vīcit." Statim ab urbe fūgit cum hostibus.

**276.****VOCABULARY**

autem, <i>postpositive<sup>1</sup> conj.</i> , but, how- ever, besides	perturbātus, disturb, throw into confusion ( <i>perturbation</i> )
enim, <i>postpositive conj.</i> , for perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvi,	pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus, put, place ( <i>postpone</i> )

**DE PERSEO**

**277.** Dē Perseō multae fābulae nārrantur ā poētis. Perseus filius fuit Iovis (642), rēgis deōrum. Avus eius Ācrisius fuit. Ille Perseum interficere volēbat<sup>2</sup>; nam propter imperia deōrum puerum timēbat. Cēpit igitur eum adhūc infantem, et cum mātre in arcā posuit. Tum in mare arcām iēcit. Danaē, Persei māter, maximē timēbat, tempestās enim magna mare perturbābat. Perseus autem in sinū (*in the arms*) mātris dormiēbat.

<sup>1</sup> Never the first word in the sentence or clause.

<sup>2</sup> *interficere volēbat*, wished to kill. The infinitive used in this way is called a complementary infinitive (394).

## LESSON XL

### THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

**278. The Possessive Adjectives.** The possessive adjectives are as follows :

meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>your</i> (sing.)
noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i>	vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> (plur.)
suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their</i> ( <i>own</i> ), used reflexively	

a. To show possession the possessive adjectives are used instead of the genitives *mei*, *tui*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, and *sui*. They may also be used as possessive pronouns : as, *mea*, *mine*; *nostrī*, *our men*.

**279. The Distinction between *Suus* and the Possessive Genitive of *Is*.**

1. *Miles scūtum eius habet*, *the soldier has his shield* (i. e. somebody else's shield).
2. *Miles suum scūtum habet*, *the soldier has his own shield*.

a. *Eius* (sentence 1) does not refer to the subject; *suum* (sentence 2) does refer to the subject. *Suus* is always reflexive, but the genitives of *is*, *ea*, *id* are never reflexive.

**280. When Possessive Adjectives are used in Latin.** When the meaning is clear, a possessive adjective is omitted unless emphatic : as,

1. *Caesar militēs in castra redūxit*, *Cæsar led his soldiers back into camp*.
2. *Caesar suōs militēs in castra redūxit*, *Cæsar led his (own) soldiers back into camp* (but the others he left outside).

**281. The Ablative of Separation.**

1. *Hic homō cibō caret*, *this man lacks* (is separated from) food.
2. *Germāni Rōmānōs ā finibus suis prohibēbant*, *the Germans were keeping the Romans away from their lands*.

a. Observe that the ablative is here used to denote that from which there is freedom, removal, or separation, or that which is lacking. The ablative so used answers the questions *from what? of what?* and is called the *Ablative of Separation*. It is of the same nature as the ablative of *place whence*.

**282. Rule for the Ablative of Separation.** *Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative without a preposition, or with the prepositions à (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

### 283.

### VOCABULARY

<i>posteā, adv.</i> , afterwards	<i>interclūsus</i> , cut off, shut off (conclude)
<i>suus, -a, -um</i> , his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)	<i>privō, privāre, privāvi, privātus</i> , keep from, deprive of ( <i>privatiōn</i> )
<i>careō, carēre, carui, caritūrus</i> , lack, want ( <i>caret</i> )	<i>prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibui, prohibitus</i> , keep away (from), re- strain ( <i>prohibit</i> )
<i>dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, dēstitū-</i> <i>-rus</i> , leave off, cease ( <i>desist</i> )	
<i>interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsi,</i>	

### EXERCISES

**284.** 1. Caesar autem suōs militēs trāns flūmen misit.  
 2. Caesar eius frātrem in castris reperiet. 3. Ille vir aeger aquā privābatur. 4. Posteā ea civitās cibō et frūmentō carēbat.  
 5. Ab aedificiis et pecūniā huius populi militēs diū prohibuit.  
 6. Ob inopiam armōrum proeliō Germāni dēstiterunt. 7. Nostri,  
 quī in castra Germānōrum properāverant, eōs tēlis privāvē-  
 runt. 8. Flūmen nostrōs viā interclūdēbat. 9. Apud flūmen  
 nāvigia ab hostibus eō tempore aedificābantur.

**285.** 1. Our friends lacked money. 2. The enemy will de-  
 fend their own buildings. 3. You will free us from care.  
 4. Cæsar announced to his (men) his plans concerning peace.  
 5. They will afterwards deprive the Germans of all power.  
 6. The rest of the chiefs were being shut off from their towns,

## LESSON XLI

### THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

#### 286. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of All Conjugations.

a. Review the principal parts of **amō**, and notice especially the perfect passive participle. Examine the formation of the perfect indicative passive (658). Observe that it is formed by using the present tense of **sum** with the perfect passive participle **amātus**. Those tenses which are formed with the help of the perfect passive participle belong to the participial system of the verb (671).

b. Examine the pluperfect and the future perfect indicative passive. Observe that they are formed by using the imperfect and the future of **sum** with the perfect passive participle.

c. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of all verbs are formed in the same way.

d. The participle **amātus** is declined like **bonus**; and so in the nominative singular and plural it is changed to agree with the subject of the verb in number and gender. These changes are made because a participle is an adjective in its nature. Observe these changes as illustrated in 287.

e. Recall the principal parts of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, and inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of these verbs and of those in 252.

#### EXERCISES

287. 1. Vir amātus est, fēmina amāta est, bellum amātūm est. 2. Virī amāti sunt, fēminae amātae sunt, bella amāta sunt. 3. Militēs moniti erant, puer monitus erit, oppidum monitum erat. 4. Agricola captus est, urbs rēcta est, prōvincia rēcta erat. 5. Captus sum, captus eram, captus erō. 6. Auditus es, auditus erās, auditus eris. 7. Auditī sumus, auditī erāmus, auditī erimus.

288. 1. The Gaul was warned, had been warned, will have been warned. 2. The buildings have been taken, had been taken, will have been taken. 3. The territories had been ruled by the Germans. 4. The cities will have been defended. 5. And so we (*fem.*) shall have been heard.

## 289.

## VOCABULARY

<b>concilium</b> , <i>conci'lii</i> , <i>n.</i> , meeting (council)	<b>imperātor</b> , <i>imperātōris</i> , <i>m.</i> , general, commander ( <i>emperor</i> )
<b>ibi</b> , <i>adv.</i> , there	<b>mora</b> , <i>-ae</i> , <i>f.</i> , delay ( <i>moratorium</i> )
<b>impedimentum</b> , <i>-i</i> , <i>n.</i> , hindrance; <i>plur.</i> , baggage ( <i>impediment</i> )	<b>verbum</b> , <i>-i</i> , <i>n.</i> , word ( <i>verbal</i> )

## EXERCISES

290. 1. Multa in Italiā oppida ā Rōmānis aedificāta sunt. 2. Pauci Germānī ibi tēlis nostrōrum interfecti sunt. 3. Tua verba ā mē audita erunt. 4. Eō tempore imperātor ab impedimentis carrisque interclūsus erat. 5. Bellum, quod ā Caesare gestum est, longum fuit. 6. Militēs, qui ab eō in Galliam missi sunt, frūmentō caruērunt. 7. Praeda, quae ab imperātōre nostrō capta erat, sine morā Rōmam portāta est. 8. In conciliō suis Caesar dixit, "Cōnsilia mea ab hostibus nōn impedita sunt."

## IUPPITER PERSEUM SERVAT (CONTINUED FROM 277)

291. Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vidit, et filium suum servāre cōstituit (*determined to save*). Tranquillum igitur fēcit mare, et arcā ad insulam Seriphum dūxit. Huius insulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam<sup>1</sup> arca ad lītus ducta est, Danaē in harēnā dormiēbat. Post breve tempus ā virō reperta est, et ad rēgem adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum bene recēpit, et eis sēdem tūtam in finibus suis praebuit.

<sup>1</sup> **Postquam** introduces a subordinate clause of time (xx, e).

## LESSON XLII

### THE FOURTH DECLENSION

**292. The Fourth Declension.** Nouns of the fourth declension end in the nominative singular in **-us** or **-ū**. Those ending in **-us** are masculine, with a few exceptions; those ending in **-ū** are neuter. These nouns are inflected as follows:

	exercitus, m.	cornū, n.	CASE ENDINGS	
	army	horn, wing	SINGULAR	MASC.      NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	exer'citus	cor'nū	-us	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	exer'citūs	cor'nūs	-īs	-īs
<i>Dat.</i>	exerci'tui (-ū)	cor'nū	-i (-ū)	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	exer'citum	cor'nū	-um	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	exer'citū	cor'nū	-ū	-ū
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	exer'citūs	cor'nua	-īs	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	exerci'tuum	cor'nuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	exerci'tibus	cor'nibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exer'citūs	cor'nua	-īs	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	exerci'tibus	cor'nibus	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus

a. A few nouns of this declension may have the dative and the ablative plural in **-ibus**; such nouns in this book are **lacus**, *lake*, and **portus**, *harbor*.

b. **Domus**, *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, are the only feminine nouns of this declension used in this book; and **cornū** is the only neuter so used. Learn the declension of **domus**, which has forms of the second declension as well as those of the fourth (642).

c. Decline **exercitus magnus**, **mea manus**, and **cornū longum**.

## 293.

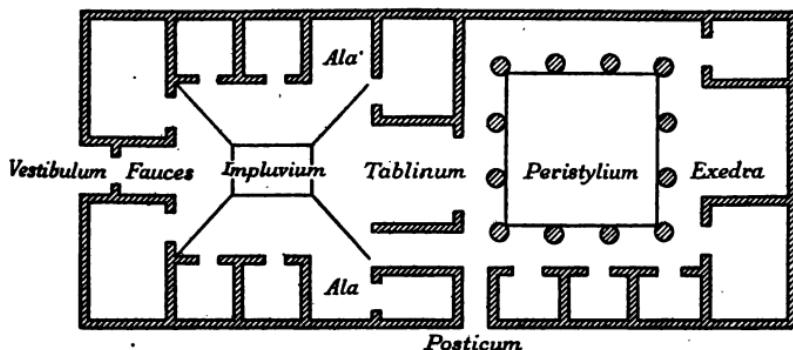
## VOCABULARY

<i>adventus, -ūs, m., coming (<i>advent</i>)</i>	<i>lacus, -ūs, m., lake (<i>lake</i>)</i>
<i>commeātus, -ūs, m., supplies</i>	<i>manus, -ūs, f., hand, handful, band</i>
<i>cornū, -ūs, n., horn, wing (of an army) (<i>cornucopia</i>)</i>	<i>(of men) (<i>manufacture</i>)</i>
<i>domus, -ūs, f., house, home (<i>domi-</i> <i>cile</i>)</i>	<i>palūs, palūdis, f., marsh, swamp</i>
<i>exercitus, -ūs, m., army (<i>exercise</i>)</i>	<i>portus, -ūs, m., harbor (<i>port</i>)</i>
	<i>mūniō, mūnire, mūnivī, mūnitus, fortify (<i>munitions</i>)</i>

## EXERCISES

294. 1. Adventus legiōnum nōs dēlectat. 2. Noster exercitus tamen Germānōs commeātibus interclūsi. 3. Inter nostrōs et hostis erat lacus. 4. Cōnsulēs erant exercitū Rōmānōrum imperātōrēs. 5. In cornib⁹ diū et fortiter pugnāverant. 6. Castra Labiēnī palūde et lacū mūniēbantur. 7. Graeciae in portibus nāvēs multās hieme vidimus. 8. Manūs hostiū spectāvimus.

295. 1. They fight both with feet and with horns. 2. Many lakes are seen by them among the mountains. 3. We had been delighted by the coming of the traders. 4. This house is mine, that is yours. 5. However, at daybreak they carried the supplies from the camp to the harbor. 6. Rome was at once fortified by the hands of the citizens. 7. Why are you hurrying home?



PLAN OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON XLIII

### THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**296. Degrees of Comparison.** Latin adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative. But in Latin, as in English, there are certain adjectives which are not compared.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE
<i>lātūs, -a, -um, wide</i> (BASE <i>lāt-</i> )	<i>lātiōr, lātiōs, wider</i>
<i>brevis, -e, short</i> (BASE <i>brev-</i> )	<i>breviōr, breviōs, shorter</i>
<i>audāx, bold</i> (BASE <i>audāc-</i> )	<i>audāciōr, audāciōs, bolder</i>
SUPERLATIVE	
<i>lātiōsissimus, -a, -um, widest</i>	
<i>breviōsissimus, -a, -um, shortest</i>	
<i>audāciōsissimus, -a, -um, boldest</i>	

a. Observe that the comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive the endings *-iōr* for the masculine and the feminine, and *-iōs* for the neuter; the superlative by adding to the base of the positive *-iōsissimus, -iōsissima, -iōsissimum*.

b. Compare *cārus, grātus, longus, fortis, and gravis*.

c. The comparative may be translated *wider, more wide, rather wide, too wide*; the superlative *widest, most wide, very wide*.

**297. The Declension of the Comparative.** The comparative is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>lātiōr</i>	<i>lātiōs</i>	<i>lātiōrēs</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>lātiōrem</i>	<i>lātiōs</i>	<i>lātiōrēs (-is)</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>lātiōre</i>	<i>lātiōre</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>

- a. The superlative is declined like **bonus** (643).  
 b. Decline the positive, the comparative, and the superlative of the adjectives in 296, b.

298.

## VOCABULARY

<i>amicitia, -ae, f.</i> , friendship	<i>senātus, -ūs, m.</i> , senate ( <i>senator</i> )
<i>equitātus, -ūs, m.</i> , cavalry	<i>faciō, facere, fēcī, factus</i> , make;
<i>impetus, -ūs, m.</i> , attack ( <i>impetu-</i> <i>ous</i> )	<i>impetum facere</i> , to make an at- tack; <i>iter facere</i> , to march, travel
<i>iter, itineris, n.</i> , way, march, jour- ney (642) ( <i>itinerary</i> )	<i>peto, petere, petivī (petīi), petitus</i> , seek, ask ( <i>petition</i> )

## EXERCISES

299. 1. Quod iter brevius est? 2. Quod iter brevissimum est? 3. Equitātus autem iter per vicōs propinquōs fēcerat. 4. Germāni dē senātū Rōmānō pācem petivērunt. 5. Amīcitia sociōrum populō Rōmānō grātissima erit. 6. Noster exercitus impetum in (*against, upon*) hostēs faciet. 7. Hoc flūmen est lātum, sed mare lātius est. 8. Galli in bellō certē fortissimī erant. 9. Ubi cīvis fortiorēs vīdistī?

300. 1. Your house is very new. 2. The general sent the cavalry by a longer way. 3. The summer in Britain is not very short. 4. This javelin is too heavy. 5. Peace, however, will be sought by all the clans of Gaul. 6. They are making an attack against the turret with little zeal. 7. The army was marching through the woods and swamps.



ROMAN SHOES

## SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XXXVII-XLIII

**301.** Give the English meanings of the following words:

adventus	ego	iter	praebeō
aedificium	enīm	lacus	privō
amīcitia	equitātus	manus	prohibeō
autem	exercitus	maximē	recipiō
careō	faciō	mora	relīquī
castra	ibi	mūniō	reliquus
commeātus	impedimentum	nōn iam	senātus
concilium	impediō	palūs	statim
cōnsul	imperātor	pāx	suī
cornū	impetus	perturbō	suus
cotidiē	incitō	petō	tempestās
dēsistō	interclūdō	pōnō	tū
dicō	interficiō	portus	verbum
domus	is	posteā	vincō

**302.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

daily	horn, wing	but, however, besides
senate	put, place	cause, furnish, show
say	I	seek, ask
army	camp	greatly, very much
lack, want	lake	keep from, deprive of
no longer	kill	he, she, it, they
for	hinder	disturb, throw into confusion
peace	make	leave off, cease
hand, band	meeting	harbor
cut off, shut off	delay	his (own), her (own), its (own)
you	the rest	rest of, remaining
at once	fortify	arouse, impel
house, home	afterwards	keep away, restrain

marsh, swamp	word	cavalry
weather, storm	consul	hindrance, baggage
receive, welcome	coming	general, commander
supplies	building	way, march, journey
there	attack	of himself, of herself, etc.
defeat, conquer	friendship	

303. Decline each noun in 301. Give the principal parts of each verb. Inflect those tenses of *dicō*, *impediō*, *pōnō*, and *privō* which are formed from the present stem. Make synopses of each verb in 301 in the third person singular and plural. Decline *ego*, *is*, and *tū*.

304. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 301. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

305. Give the rule, if there is one, for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. A personal pronoun of each person as the object of a verb
2. A personal pronoun of each person as the subject of a verb
3. A reflexive pronoun of the third person as the object of a verb
4. Ablative of separation



MILITES CASTRA MUNIUNT

## LESSON XLIV

### THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -ER OR -LIS THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

**306.** The Comparison of Adjectives in *-er*. Adjectives ending in *-er* are compared as follows :

miser, misera, miser-	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
rum, <i>wretched</i>		
ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen</i>	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrius, -a, -um

a. Observe that the comparative of these adjectives is regular ; but the superlative is formed by adding *-rimus*, *-rima*, *-rimum* to the nominative masculine of the positive. Compare similarly *aeger*.

**307.** The Comparison of Adjectives in *-lis*. The comparative of the following adjectives ending in *-lis* is regular ; but the superlative is formed by adding *-limus*, *-lima*, *-limum* to the base of the positive. Learn their meaning and comparison.

facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilius, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i>	difficilius, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, <i>like</i>	similius, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilius, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um

Most other adjectives in *-lis* are compared regularly : as, *nōbilis*, *nōbiliar*, *nōbilissimus*.

### **308. The Partitive Genitive.**

1. *Ille amīcus cōpiam pecūniae habet*, that friend has plenty of money.
2. *Multī militū vulnerāti sunt*, many of the soldiers were wounded.

a. Observe that each genitive denotes a whole, and the word on which it depends denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, of which a part is taken, is called a *Partitive Genitive*.

**309. Rule for the Partitive Genitive.** Words denoting a part may have with them a genitive of the whole from which the part is taken.

a. Numerals and a few other words have the ablative with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē* instead of the partitive genitive: as, **decem ex militibus**, *ten of the soldiers*.

### 310.

### VOCABULARY

<b>angustus</b> , -a, -um, narrow ( <i>anguish</i> )	<b>litus</b> , <i>litoris</i> , n., shore ( <i>littoral</i> )
<b>celer</b> , -eris, -ere, swift, quick ( <i>celerity</i> )	<b>pars</b> , <i>partis</i> ( <i>parti-</i> ), f., part ( <i>partition</i> )
<b>cōpia</b> , -ae, f., plenty, supply; <i>plur.</i> , troops ( <i>copious</i> )	<b>quīnque</b> , adj., indecl., five ( <i>quinquennial</i> )

### EXERCISES

**311.** 1. *Magna pars itineris est angusta sed facillima.* 2. *Prīmā lūce partem hostium in monte vīdimus.* 3. *Illa omnium urbī viārum brevissima fuit.* 4. *Hominēs Britanniae hominibus Italiae dissimillimi sunt.* 5. *Statim decem ex militibus proeliō dēsistunt.* 6. *In litore fēminaē dolēbant quod iter erat difficile.* 7. *Omnium Gallōrum ācerrimi atque celerrimī erant hostēs.* 8. *Difficillima saepe facillima sunt.* 9. *Cum cīvitātibus proximīs amīcītiā cōfirmābunt.*

**312.** 1. *Have we plenty of arms?* 2. *The march through the mountains will not be easy.* 3. *Five of my friends will be sent by me by an easier way to the shore.* 4. *Part of the soldiers were cut off from the rest of the army.* 5. *Your hand is like mine.* 6. *This is the easiest of all the ways through the territories of the Gauls.*

## LESSON XLV

### READING LESSON

**313.**

#### VOCABULARY

<b>adulēscēns, adulēscentis, m.</b> , young man ( <i>adolescent</i> )	<b>expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī,</b> <b>expugnātus, take by storm,</b>
<b>vīta, -ae, f.</b> , life ( <i>vital</i> )	<b>capture</b>
<b>appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, call, name (<i>appeal</i>)</b>	<b>iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātūrus,</b> <b>swear, take oath (<i>abjure</i>)</b>

### SCIPIO ET HANNIBAL

**314.** Scipiō et Hannibal erant clārissimī imperātōrēs. Ille (*the former*) erat Rōmānus, qui victōriās magnās reportāvit; hic (*the latter*) Poenus, qui Rōmānōs multis pugnis vīcit. Hannibal puer<sup>1</sup> ad ārās ā patre adductus est. Ibi odium iūrāvit in<sup>2</sup> Rōmānōs. Adulēscēns oppida multa in Hispāniā expugnāvit, tum Alpis montis superāvit<sup>3</sup> Rōmānōsque saepe vīcit in Italiā. Scipiō ad<sup>4</sup> Ticinum flūmen vitam patris virtūte servāvit posteāque ad<sup>4</sup> Cannās contrā Hannibalem sē fortē praebuit. Bellum in Āfricam trānsportātum est ibique Scipiō Hannibalem ad<sup>4</sup> Zamam superāvit. Ā Rōmānis appellātus est Āfricānus.

**315.**

#### VOCABULARY

<b>nātūra, -ae, f.</b> , nature, character ( <i>natural</i> )	<b>discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrūs, withdraw</b>
<b>omnīnō, adv.</b> , wholly, altogether, entirely	<b>perveniō, pervenire, pervēnl, per-</b> <b>ventūrus, come through, reach, arrive</b>
<b>prīmū, adv.</b> , first, at first	
<b>accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, receive (<i>accept</i>)</b>	<b>quaerō, quaerere, quaeſivī, quaeſitus, seek, ask (<i>inquire</i>)</b>

<sup>1</sup> puer, *when a boy.*

<sup>2</sup> in, *against.*

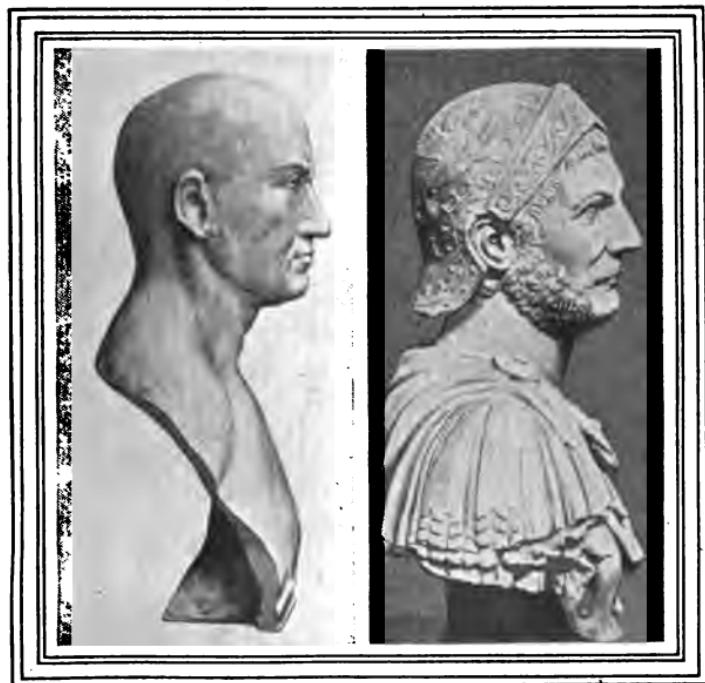
<sup>3</sup> superāvit, *passed over.*

<sup>4</sup> ad, *near.*

## PERSEUS MEDUSAM QUAERIT (CONTINUED FROM 291)

**316.** Perseus adulēscēns ex īsulā Seriphō discessit, et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaeſivit. Diū frūstrā eam quaerēbat, nam nātūram loci ignōrābat. Tandem Mercurius et Minerva ei viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Primum ad Graēas, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Hārum auxiliō tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Mercurius et Minerva ei falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum, postquam tālāria pedibus induit,<sup>1</sup> in āera<sup>2</sup> ascendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum reliquis Gorgonibus incolēbat. Gorgones mōnstra erant quārum capita anguibus omnīnō contēcta<sup>3</sup> erant. Manūs autem ex aere<sup>4</sup> erant factae.

<sup>1</sup> pedibus induit, put on his feet.    <sup>2</sup> āera, acc. of āer.    <sup>3</sup> contēcta, from contegō.    <sup>4</sup> aere, from aes.



SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL

## LESSON XLVI

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

**317. Adjectives Compared Irregularly.** Both the comparative and the superlative of several common adjectives are irregular. Commit to memory the following:

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>large</i>	maior, maius, <i>larger</i>	maximus, -a, -um, <i>largest</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
multī, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra, <i>more</i>	plūrimī, -ae, -a, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>little</i> , <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>less</i> , <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>least</i> , <i>smallest</i>

**318. The Declension of *Plūs*.** In the singular *plūs, more*, is used only as a neuter noun. Learn the declension of *plūs* (648).

**319. Other Adjectives Compared Irregularly.** There are other adjectives that are compared irregularly, some of which have no positive, but form their comparative and superlative from prepositions or adverbs, and others of which have two forms in the superlative. See 649. These should be learned as they occur in the vocabularies.

### 320. The Ablative of Degree of Difference.

1. *Pater pede altior est quam filius, the father is a foot taller than his son.*
2. *Pāx multō grātior erit quam bellum, peace will be much more welcome than war.*

a. Observe that the ablatives *pede* and *multō* answer the question (*by*) *how much?* They denote the *degree of difference* between the objects compared. This usage is called the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*.

**321. Rule for the Ablative of Degree of Difference.** *The degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

**322.****VOCABULARY**

<b>centum</b> , <i>adj., indecl.</i> , a hundred ( <i>century</i> )	<b>opera</b> , <i>-ae, f.</i> , work, activity ( <i>opera</i> )
<b>inferus</b> , <i>-a, -um</i> , low, below (649) ( <i>inferior</i> )	<b>quam</b> , <i>conj.</i> , than
<b>interdum</b> , <i>adv.</i> , sometimes	<b>sex</b> , <i>adj., indecl.</i> , six ( <i>sextant</i> )
<b>malus</b> , <i>-a, -um</i> , bad ( <i>malice</i> )	<b>superus</b> , <i>-a, -um</i> , high, above (649) ( <i>superior</i> )

**EXERCISES**

**323.** 1. In inferiōrem partem prōvinciae sex legiōnēs ā Cae-sare dūcuntur. 2. Viae urbis nostrae pedibus multis angustiōrēs sunt. 3. Maximae manūs hostium convocātae erant et Rōmānōs itinere prohibēbant. 4. Dē locis superiōribus plūrima tēla iēcē-runt. 5. Illa turris decem pedib⁹s altior quam mūrus est. 6. Minōra castra ā centum militibus dēfendēbantur. 7. Tua operae pars est maior quam mea. 8. Interdum amici nōbis cōnsilium malum dant. 9. Summum montem<sup>1</sup> videō. 10. Italiae pars inferior propter multās Graecōrum urbēs Magna Graecia appellābātur; superior pars Italiae, quod ibi Galli incolēbant, Gallia Cisalpīna vel (*or*) Gallia Citerior appellābātur.

**324.** 1. The best men sometimes do not have the most friends. 2. On the journey a great many men were killed; the rest fled into a very large forest. 3. Cornelia was a foot taller than Julia. 4. The Gauls had more horsemen than the Romans. 5. Part of the army was waiting in higher places. 6. A better plan was shown to the senate. 7. The largest towns sent a hundred hostages to Cæsar.

<sup>1</sup> **summum montem**, top of the mountain.

## LESSON XLVII.

### THE FORMATION AND THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

**325. The Formation of Adverbs.** Many adverbs are formed from adjectives. From adjectives of the first and second declensions adverbs are formed by the addition of **-e** to the base of the positive; from adjectives of the third declension they may be formed by the addition of **-iter** to the base: as, *cārē*, *dearly*, from *cārus*, *dear*; *miserē*, *wretchedly*, from *miser*, *wretched*; *āriter*, *eagerly*, from *ācer*, *eager*; but most adjectives of one ending add **-ter** to the base: as, *audācter*, from *audāx*.

a. Form adverbs from *grātus*, *lātus*, *longus*, *līber*, *aeger*, *brevis*, *fortis*, *gravis*.

**326. The Irregular Formation of Adverbs.** Some adverbs are the accusative or ablative singular neuter of the adjective: as, *multum*, *much*, from *multus*; *multō*, *much*, from *multus*; *facile*, *easily*, from *facilis*.

### '327. The Comparison of Adverbs.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>cārē</i>	<i>cārius</i>	<i>cārissimē</i>
<i>miserē</i>	<i>miserius</i>	<i>miserrimē</i>
<i>āriter</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>
<i>bene</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male</i>	<i>peius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>multum</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimū</i>

a. Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular comparative of the adjective; and that the superlative, with one exception, is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final **-us** to **-ē**.

## 328.

## VOCABULARY

amplus, -a, -um, large, spacious (ample)	multitūdō, -inis, f., great number (multitude)
arbor, arboris, f., tree (arboreal)	subitō, adv., suddenly
diligenter, adv., diligently (diligent)	praemittō, praemittere, praemisi, praemissus, send ahead (promise)
diū(diūtius, diūtissimē), adv., long	relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relic- tus, leave behind, leave (relin- quish)
hinc, adv., hence, from here, from this place	
liberi, -ōrum, m. plur., children (liberty)	

## EXERCISES

329. 1. Patrēs et mātrēs suōs liberōs maximē amant. 2. Eis cōnsilia optima dant et prō eis diligentissimē labōrant. 3. Tum in illam silvam amplam, quam hinc vidēmus, multitūdinem peditum praemittēmus. 4. Ex hōc summō monte facile videō sex urbēs centumque viās. 5. In imīs terrae partibus sunt flūmina minima. 6. Diūtius lacū quam montibus impeditae sunt cōpiae nostrae. 7. Plūrimi militēs apud portum relictī erant; reliqui impetum in hostis subitō fēcērunt. 8. Arboribus et lapidibus mūrōs facient. 9. Hoc flūmen centum pedibus lātius est quam illud.

330. 1. Sometimes Cæsar's enemies fought much more bravely than the Roman soldiers. 2. But his soldiers fought very eagerly and boldly. 3. He carried on wars with the Gauls for a very long time. 4. Often he gave ample rewards to his centurions because they had captured much booty. 5. He was killed in the city of Rome by his personal enemies (*inimicus*).



GALLIC SWORD

## LESSON XLVIII.

### THE FIFTH DECLENSION · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

**331. The Fifth Declension.** Nouns of the fifth declension end in -ēs. They are feminine, with the exception of *diēs*, *day*, which is usually masculine. They are inflected as follows:

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS
<i>Nom.</i>	di'ēs	di'ēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diē'i	diē'rum	re'i	re'rum	-ēi -ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diē'i	diē'bus	re'i	re'bus	-ēi -ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	di'ēm	di'ēs	rem	rēs	-em -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	di'ē	diē'bus	rē	re'bus	-ē -ēbus

a. The vowel e of the case endings is regularly long. It is shortened, however, in the ending -ēi after a consonant, and in the ending -em: as, *rēi* and *rem*.

b. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and the accusative plural. Decline *aciēs*, *fidēs*, and *spēs*.

### **332. The Accusative of Extent.**

1. *Decem annōs urbs oppugnābatur*, *the city was besieged for ten years.*

2. *Turris est centum pedēs alta*, *the tower is a hundred feet high.*

a. The accusative *decem annōs* denotes *extent of time*; the accusative *centum pedēs* denotes *extent of space*. Such accusatives answer the questions *how long?* *how far?* in time or in space. This usage is called the *Accusative of Extent*.

**333. Rule for the Accusative of Extent.** *Extent of time or of space is expressed by the accusative.*

## 334.

## VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēi, f., line of battle	rēs, -ei, f., thing, event, fact ( <i>reality</i> )
altus, -a, -um, high, deep ( <i>alto</i> )	spēs, -ei, f., hope
diēs, -ēi, m., day ( <i>diary</i> )	instruō, instruere, instrūxi, instrūctus, draw up, marshal ( <i>instruct</i> )
fidēs, -ei, f., trust, confidence	castra pōnere, to pitch camp
plānitiēs, -ēi, f., plain ( <i>plane</i> )	
posterus, -a, -um, next (649)	

## EXERCISES

335. 1. Caesar castra summō in monte primum posuit.  
 2. Castra summō in monte ā Caesare posita sunt. 3. Hinc hostēs magnā in plānitiē visi sunt. 4. Inter hunc montem et illam plānitiem erat flūmen, quod centum pedēs lātum et quinque pedēs altum erat. 5. Caesar autem aciem instrūxit et impetum hostium exspectābat. 6. Eius equitēs maiōrem partem diēi in cornibus manēbant. 7. Sed hostēs impetum nōn fēcērunt, quod parvam victōriæ spem habuērunt. 8. Tum adulēscēntēs frūmentō plūris diēs caruērunt. 9. Collēs post castra nostra multis pedibus altiōrēs sunt.

336. 1. Cæsar heard about this fact from very many messengers. 2. The confidence of the Gauls was very slight on that day. 3. The river was ten feet deep at this place; and so they left all the baggage on the shore. 4. This fact deprived our soldiers of all hope. 5. We shall remain six days in Italy.



AN OFFERING TO THE GODS

## LESSON. XLIX

### READING LESSON

#### A LETTER FROM POMPEII

**337.** Si tū valēs, bene est; ego quoque valeō. Hās litterās ad tē laetus<sup>1</sup> scribō. Medici cōnsiliō cum parentibus in Italīa hiemāvī. Apud<sup>2</sup> vōs nivēs (*snow*) omnia complent, sed nōs hīc nivēs rārō vidēmus. Āēr est lēnissimus; caelum rīdet. Interdum in litore ambulō vel in hortis amplis errō, nam grāmen arborēsque iam virent. Hinc videō Vesuvium montem, hinc tōtam ferē urbem, hinc pulchrās insulās in mari sitās.<sup>3</sup> Linguae Latinae cotidiē multum operaे dō. Eam linguam multō facilius quam Graecam discō. Sed iam finem faciam epistulae; mox cōram omnia tibi nārrābō. Valē,<sup>4</sup> mī amice.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *laetus*, *gladly*.   <sup>2</sup> *apud*, *with*.   <sup>3</sup> *sitās*, *situated*.   <sup>4</sup> *valē*, *farewell*. This form is the imperative singular of *valeō*. See *XXXI, a.*   <sup>5</sup> *mī amice*, *my friend*. These words are in the vocative case (*XXIV, b.*). When a person is addressed in Latin, a special case, called the vocative, is used. Generally it is the same in spelling as the nominative.



A VIEW IN POMPEII

## 338.

## VOCABULARY

cōspectus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , look, view, sight ( <i>conspectus</i> )	p̄ocēdō, p̄ocēdere, p̄ocessī, p̄o- cessūrus, go forward, advance ( <i>proceed</i> )
modus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , way, manner ( <i>mood</i> )	
saxum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , stone, rock	vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn, change ( <i>convert</i> )
excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessū- rus, go out, withdraw	

## PERSEUS MEDUSAM INTERFICIT (CONTINUED FROM 316)

339. Rēs difficillima erat caput Gorgonis abscidere,<sup>1</sup> eius enim cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva speculum Perseō dederat. Ille igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum īspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum p̄ocessit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput eius ūnō ictū abscidit. Reliquae Gorgones statim ē somnō excitātae sunt, et, ubi<sup>2</sup> rem vidērunt, perturbātae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum interficere volēbant.<sup>3</sup> Ille autem dum fugit,<sup>4</sup> galeam magi-  
cam induit; et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū eārum excessit.

<sup>1</sup> abscidere, to cut off. The infinitive is here used as the subject of erat (393). <sup>2</sup> What two meanings has ubi in this paragraph? What kind of clause does it introduce here? <sup>3</sup> interficere volēbant, wished to kill. <sup>4</sup> dum fugit, while he was fleeing. The present tense with dum is translated as if it were the imperfect tense.



HEAD OF MEDUSA

## LESSON L

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD · THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH *UT* AND *NE*

**340. The Subjunctive Mood.** The Latin subjunctive is used in both independent and dependent clauses, but the kinds of dependent clauses in which the subjunctive is used are far more numerous than the independent. In this book only some uses in dependent clauses will be studied.

**341. The Tenses of the Subjunctive.** There are four tenses of the subjunctive: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. No meanings are given for the tenses of the subjunctive, because the translation varies with the use of the mood (cf. 343, 357, 372).

**342. The Present Subjunctive.** The present subjunctive of the several conjugations and of *sum* is inflected as follows:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
1. a'mem	amē'mus	a'mer	amē'mur
2. a'mēs	amē'tis	amē'ris	amē'mini
3. a'met	a'ment	amē'tur	amen'tur
mone			
reg	{ -am, -ās, -at	-āmus, -ātis, -ant	ACTIVE
capi		-āmur, -āmīni, -antur	PASSIVE
audi			
sim, sis, sit		sīmus, sītis, sint	

*a.* Observe that the mood sign of the present subjunctive of the regular verbs is *-ē-* in the first conjugation, and *-ā-* in the others.

*b.* Learn the present subjunctive of the verbs above. Then inflect the present subjunctive active and passive of *dūcō*, *mittō*, *recipiō*, *reperiō*, and *videō*. The present subjunctive belongs in the present system (671).

**343. Purpose Clauses.**

1. *Civēs sē armant ut pugnant, the citizens arm themselves that they may fight (or, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting, to fight).*
  2. *Civēs sē armant nē superentur, the citizens arm themselves that they may not be overcome (or, in order not to be overcome, so that they may not be overcome, lest they be overcome).*
- a. Observe that the dependent clauses express the *purpose* of the action of the principal clause, **ut, that**, introducing the affirmative clause, and **nē, that not**, the negative clause.
- b. Observe the various ways of translating **ut** and **nē** and the subjunctive in these clauses. In English, purpose is most often expressed by the infinitive. In the best Latin prose, however, the purpose of an action is not expressed by the infinitive.

**344. Rule for Purpose Clauses.** *The subjunctive is used with ut or nē in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action stated in the independent clause.*

**EXERCISES**

- 345.** 1. Nūntium mittit ut cīvēs moneat. 2. Adulēscēns mititur ut cīvēs moneantur. 3. Legiō mittitur nē oppidum ab hostibus capiātur. 4. Legionēs fortiter pugnant ut oppidum capiant. 5. Puer venit ut fābulam audiat. 6. Puerī veniunt ut verba tua audiant. 7. Eōs mittimus ut prōvinciam regant. 8. Eōs mittimus ut prōvincia ab eis regātur. 9. In Galliam properātis ut bellum gerātis. 10. Centum militēs praemittimus ut castra mūniant.

- 346.** 1. He is sent to fight. 2. We send them to find the way. 3. You are sent that the enemy may not make an attack on the city. 4. The soldiers are led out of the camp that a line of battle may be drawn up. 5. I am coming to see you and your mother. 6. He fights to defend himself.

## LESSON LI

### THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE · SEQUENCE OF TENSES

**347. The Imperfect Subjunctive.** The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive active; but the final -e of the infinitive is lengthened in certain forms.

a. Learn the imperfect subjunctive of the model verbs *and* of *sum* (658–663). The imperfect subjunctive belongs in the present system (671).

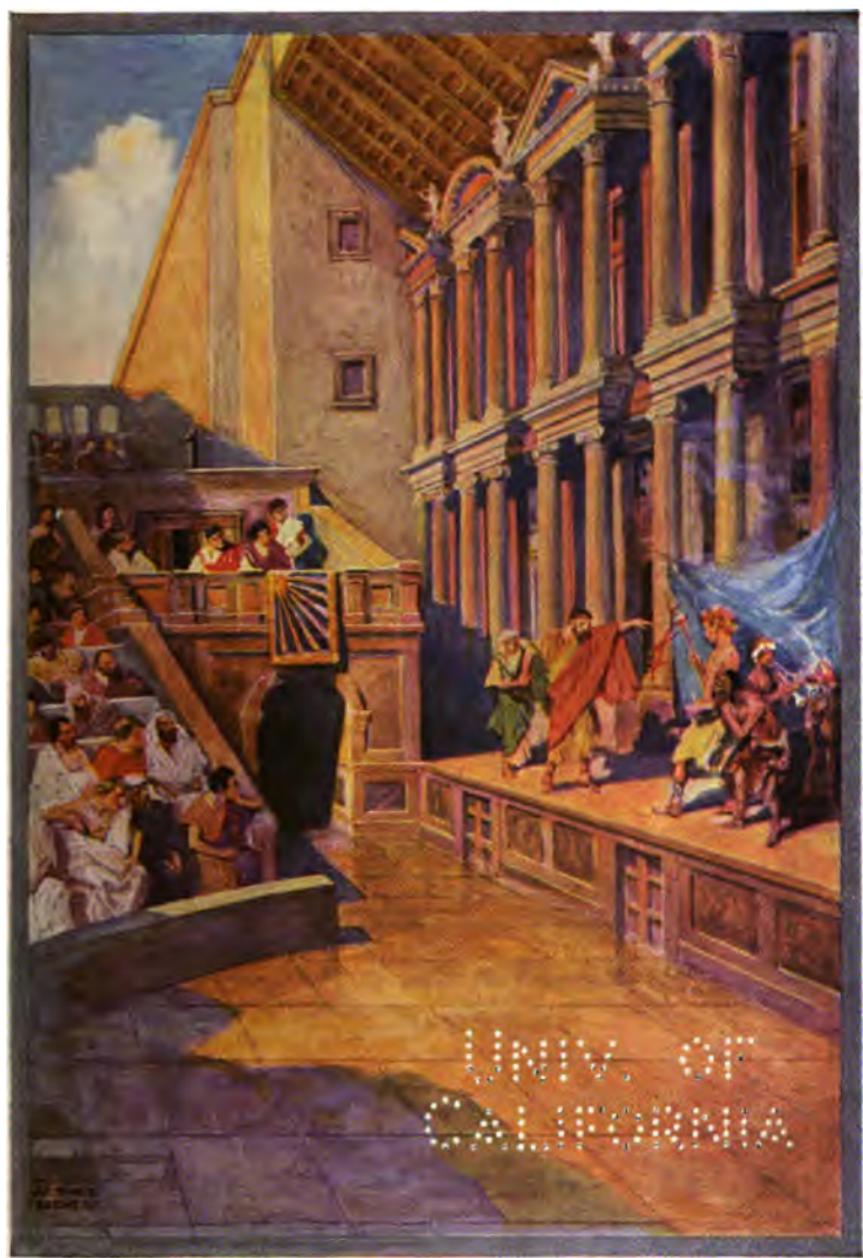
**348. Sequence of Tenses.** Examine the following English sentences :

1. He *comes* (*is coming*) that he *may* fight.
2. He *will come* that he *may* fight.
3. He *came* that he *might* fight.

a. Observe that in sentences 1 and 2 the verbs in the *independent* clauses are present and future, and that in sentence 3 the verb in the independent clause is past. Observe the change from *may* (present) to *might* (past) when a past tense takes the place of a present or a future in the verb of the independent clause. This following of one tense by another of the same kind is called *Sequence of Tenses*.

**349. Primary and Secondary Tenses.** Those tenses of the indicative which refer to present or to future time (*present*, future, and future perfect) are called *Primary Tenses*. Those tenses of the indicative which refer to past time (*imperfect*, perfect, and pluperfect) are called *Secondary Tenses*.

**350. Rule for Primary Sequence.** When the verb of the *independent clause* of a sentence is in a primary tense, a verb in the dependent clause is in the present tense if its action is incomplete, but in the perfect tense if its action is completed.



A GLIMPSE INTO A ROMAN THEATER



**351. Rule for Secondary Sequence.** When the verb of the independent clause of a sentence is in a secondary tense, a verb in the dependent clause is in the imperfect tense if its action is incomplete, but in the pluperfect if its action is completed.

a. Observe that all the verbs in the independent clauses in 345 are in the present tense, and that all the verbs in the dependent clauses are in the present subjunctive. If the verbs in the independent clauses should be changed to the future or the future perfect tense, what would be the tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clauses?

**352. Rule for the Tense of the Subjunctive in Purpose Clauses.** Since a purpose clause expresses an incomplete action, its verb will be in the present subjunctive if the verb in the independent clause is in a primary tense, and in the imperfect subjunctive if the verb of the independent clause is in a secondary tense.

#### **EXERCISES**

**353.** 1. Veniunt ut pācem petant. 2. Veniēbant ut pācem peterent. 3. Venient ut pācem petant. 4. Vēnerant ut pācem peterent. 5. Fortiter pugnābant nē ā Gallis vincerentur. 6. Trāns flūmen properāverant ut oppidum oppugnārent. 7. Legiōnēs mittentur ut hostēs commeātibus interclūdantur. 8. Ut portum dēfenderent nostri praemissi sunt. 9. Cōsul audācissimē dicet ut populum Rōmānum incitet.

**354.** 1. They labor that they may be praised. 2. They were laboring that they might be praised. 3. They will labor that they may be praised. 4. They had labored that they might be praised. 5. They threw weapons from the higher places in order to hinder the Romans. 6. He had called together the chiefs to hear the new plan. 7. They will desist from battle that they may not be killed.

## LESSON LII

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE · RESULT CLAUSES

**355. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.** A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun (xx, d); it may be the subject or the object of a verb. Purpose clauses with **ut** and **nē** are often used in Latin as the objects of certain verbs: as,

*Petit ut obsidēs dent, he asks them to give hostages (that they give hostages).*

a. Observe that the clause **ut obsidēs dent** is the object of **petit**. This is, therefore, a noun clause. The purpose clauses in the preceding lessons were adverbial in nature (xx, c).

**356. Rule for Substantive Clauses of Purpose.** Verbs meaning **ask, command, persuade, and urge** may have for their object a clause of purpose with its verb in the subjunctive.

a. In English an infinitive is generally used in the object clause.

### 357. Result Clauses.

1. *Iter tam longum est ut puer sit dēfessus, the journey is so long that the boy is tired out.*

2. *Puer tam malus fuit ut ā patre nōn laudārētur, the boy was so bad that he was not praised by his father.*

a. Observe that the dependent clauses beginning with **ut** express the result of the statements in the independent clauses, and that the subjunctive is translated by an English indicative.

b. Observe that the sequence is the same as in purpose clauses, but that the negative clause contains **ut nōn** (not **nē**).

**358. Rule for Result Clauses.** The subjunctive is used with **ut** or **ut nōn** in a dependent clause to express the result of the action stated in the independent clause. The sequence of tenses is generally the same as in purpose clauses.

## 359.

## VOCABULARY

ita, <i>adv.</i> , so, in such a way	circumveniō, circumvenire, circum-
tam, <i>adv.</i> , so	vēni, circumventus, surround
tantus, -a, -um, so great	(circumvent)
agō, agere, ēgi, āctus, act, do (agent)	imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, impe- rātus, command, order (imper- ative)

## EXERCISES

360. 1. Puer ita ēgit ut ab omnibus amārētur. 2. Urbs vās-tāta est nē ab hostibus caperētur. 3. Eum monēmus nē miles sit. 4. Imperāvit nē per nostram prōvinciam iter facerent. Q. Tanta est inopia cibi ut plūrimi aegri sint. 6. Urbs tam fortiter dēfēnsa est ut decem diēbus nōn caperētur. 7. Hostēs in silvās fūgērunt nē ā nostris circumvenirentur. 8. Caesar pīnum postulāvit ut nostris auxilium darētur..

361. 1. They were so few that they fled. 2. They were so brave that they did not flee. 3. I advise him to be more bold. 4. The lieutenant led the soldiers out of the camp in order to draw up a line of battle. 5. He demands that they pitch camp in this place. 6. The marsh is so great that our men are hindered.



A ROMAN CUP

## SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XLIV-LII

362. Give the English meanings of the following words:

accipiō	cōpia	instruō	opera	rēs
aciēs	diēs	interdūm	pars	saxum
adulēscēns	difficilis	ita	perveniō	sex
agō	diligenter	iūrō	plānitiēs	similis
altus	discēdō	liberī	posterus	spēs
amplus	dissimilis	litus	praemittō	subitō
angustus	excēdō	malus	prīnum	superus
appellō	expugnō	modus	prōcēdō	tam
arbor	facilis	multitūdō	quaerō	tantus
celer	fidēs	nātūra	quam	ut
centum	hinc	nē	quīnque	vertō
circumveniō	imperō	omnīnō	relinquō	vīta
cōspectus	īferus			

363. Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

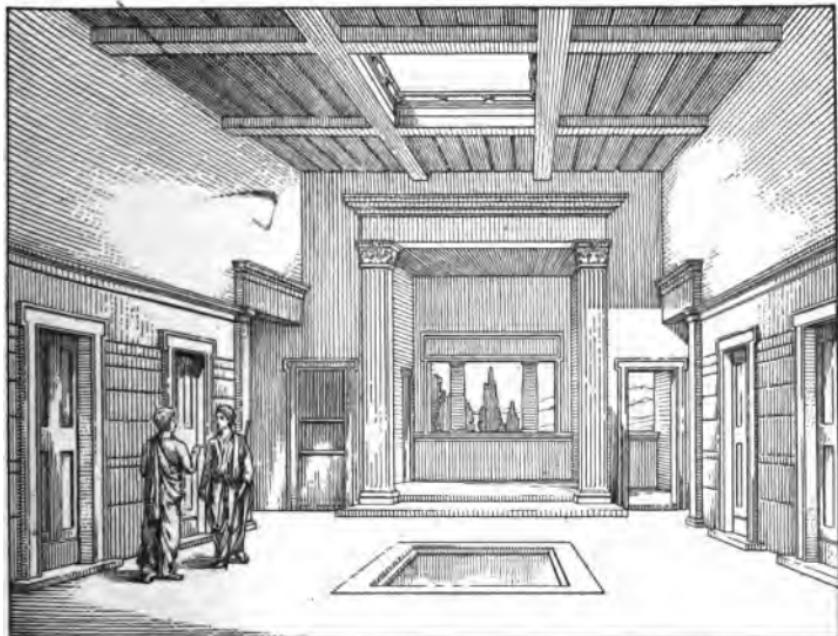
children	hundred	high, deep	swear, take oath
bad	so	turn, change	so, in such a way
hope	next	young man	nāture, character
five	plain	that not, lest	thing, event, fact
suddenly	narrow	way, manner	leave behind, leave
so great	day	send ahead	look, view, sight
part	withdraw	command, order	plenty, supply; troops
easy	hard	stone, rock	trust, confidence
than	six	wholly, entirely	draw up, marshal
unlike	seek, ask	great number	take by storm, capture
tree	act, do	so that, to	go forward, advance
sometimes	high, above	large, spacious	hence, from here
diligently	call, name	first, at first	come through, reach,
shore	like	work, activity	arrive
receive	low, below	line of battle	go out, withdraw
life	surround	swift, quick	

**364.** Decline each noun and each adjective in 362. Conjugate each verb in the present and the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural.

**365.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 362. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**366.** Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Partitive genitive               | 4. Adverbial clause of purpose   |
| 2. Ablative of degree of difference | 5. Substantive clause of purpose |
| 3. Accusative of extent             | 6. Adverbial clause of result    |
|                                     | 7. Sequence of tenses            |



THE ATRIUM OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON LIII

### READING LESSON

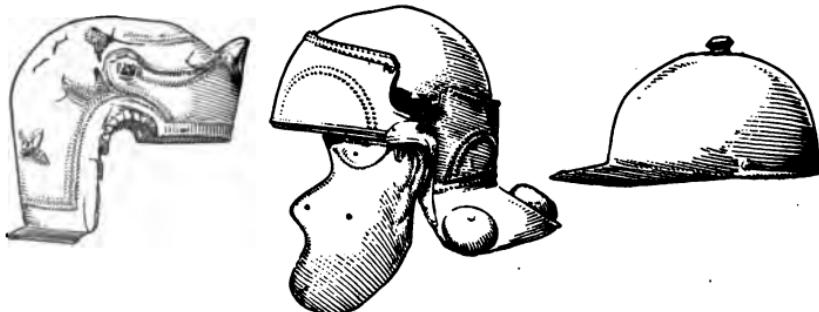
**367.**

#### VOCABULARY

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, give way, retire ( <i>secede</i> )	ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxi, ēductus, lead out, lead forth
conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, place, station ( <i>collocation</i> )	iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid ( <i>adjutant</i> )

### CAESAR HOSTIS VINCIT

**368.** Posterō diē Caesar ex castris exercitum ēdūxit et iter ad flūmen fēcit. Quae (*this*) rēs hostibus nūntiāta est, quōrum peditēs ā nostris summō in colle visi sunt. Tum Caesar equitēs in cornibus conlocāvit ut peditēs iuvārent, et militum animōs ad pugnam ita incitāvit : "Omnis reī pūblicae spēs in nostrā virtūte posita est. Audācēs fortūna iuvat.. Fortēs vincent." Hostēs tam āriter in nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt ut hī cēderent. Brevi autem tempore hostēs ita superāti sunt ut ex omnibus pugnae partibus trāns flūmen fugerent. Eōrum dux captus est et Rōmam missus est.



ROMAN HELMETS

369.

## VOCABULARY

cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstitui,	sultus, plan, deliberate, consult ( <i>consultation</i> )
cōnstitūtus, establish, deter- mine ( <i>constitution</i> )	trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus, give over, surrender ( <i>tradition</i> )
cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsului, cōn-	

## ANDROMEDA FILIA CEPHEI (CONTINUED FROM 339)

370. Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus illō tempore regēbat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, oīlim offenderat; itaque Neptūnus mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc mōnstrum cotidiē ē mari veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Quam (*this*) ob causam terror animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ūrāculum dei Hammōnis cōnsuluit, et ā deō iussus est<sup>1</sup> filiam Andromedam mōnstrō trādere.<sup>2</sup> Illa autem virgō pulcherrimā erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, maximē doluit. Volēbat tamen cīvis suōs ē tantō periculō servāre,<sup>3</sup> et ob eam causam imperāta Hammōnis facere<sup>4</sup> cōnstituit.

<sup>1</sup> iussus est, from iubeō. <sup>2</sup> trādere, translate with iussus est. <sup>3</sup> servāre, translate with volēbat (394). <sup>4</sup> facere, translate with cōnstituit (394).



A ROMAN CHARIOT

## LESSON LIV

### THE PERFECT AND THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE INDIRECT QUESTIONS

**371. The Perfect and the Pluperfect Subjunctive.** The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are formed on the perfect stem (671) :

amāv	-erim, -eris, -erit,	-erīmus, -erītis, -erint
amāv	-issem, -issēs, -isset,	-issēmus, -issētis, -issent

The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive passive belong to the participial system (671).

- a. Learn these tenses of the model verbs and of *sum* (658-663). Inflect the entire subjunctive of *agō*, *pōnō*, *dō*, and *videō*.

**372. Indirect Questions.** An indirect question is a subordinate clause which contains the substance of a direct question : as,

1. *Ubi sunt? where are they?*
2. *Audit ubi sint, he hears where they are.*

a. Observe that the dependent clause in 2 begins with an interrogative word (*ubi*) and contains the substance of the direct question in 1. Observe that the subjunctive mood is used, and that the clause is substantive in nature. Every subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word is an indirect question.

b. An indirect question, with its verb in the subjunctive, may be used as the subject or the object of another verb. Indirect questions usually follow the general rule for the sequence of tenses : as,

1. **Audit, he hears**
  2. **Audiet, he will hear**
  3. **Audiverit, he will have heard**
- ubi sint, where they are*

*ubi fuerint, where they were or where they have been*

}

- |                             |   |                                   |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Audiēbat, he was hearing | } | ubi essent, where they were       |
| 2. Audivit, he heard        |   | ubi fuissent, where they had been |
| 3. Audiverat, he had heard  |   |                                   |

**373. Rule for Indirect Questions.** The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. If the verb of the independent clause is in a primary tense, the verb of the indirect question is put in the present subjunctive for an incomplete action, but in the perfect for a completed action. If the verb of the independent clause is in a secondary tense, the verb of the indirect question is put in the imperfect subjunctive for an incomplete action, but in the pluperfect for a completed action.

**374.****VOCABULARY**

num, <i>adv.</i> , whether	rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, ask
quot, <i>adv.</i> , how many ( <i>quotient</i> )	(arrogant)
unde, <i>adv.</i> , whence	sciō, scire, scīvī, scītus, know (science)

**EXERCISES**

- 375.** 1. Rogat quid agant, quid ēgerint. 2. Sciēbat quid age-  
rent, quid ēgissent. 3. Tibi dicam cūr labōrent, cūr labōrāverint.  
4. Audiverant unde militēs venirent, unde vēnissent. 5. Rogā-  
vērunt cūr laudārētur, cūr laudātī essent. 6. Scit cūr mane-  
ant, cūr mānserint. 7. Nōbis dixit quid illi puerī fēcissent.  
8. Rogāvī num saepe in Italiā fuisset. 9. Scisne quot annōs  
Rōmānī Britanniam tenuerint?

- 376.** 1. I shall tell you where they were and what they did.  
2. These come to see, those to be seen. 3. They are so tired  
that they are not working to-day. 4. He asked me why I had  
come. 5. I had heard where he had been. 6. The general  
asked whether they had all come. 7. Do you know how many  
soldiers are coming?

## LESSON LV

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES · THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

**377. Numeral Adjectives.** For the definition of numeral adjectives see III, c. A list of Latin cardinal and ordinal numerals is given in 651.

**378. The Declension of Numeral Adjectives.** The cardinals *ūnus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, are declined; so, too, are the words for the *hundreds*, as, *ducenti*, *two hundred*, *trecenti*, *three hundred*, and (in the plural) *mille*, *thousand*. The other cardinals are not declined. The ordinals are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions.

a. Learn the declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille* (646).

**379. The Use of *Mille*.** The singular of *mille* is indeclinable, and is used either as an adjective or as a neuter noun: *mille* (adj.) *hominēs*, *a thousand men*, or *mille* (noun) *hominum*. The plural is used only as a noun. When used as a noun it takes the partitive genitive: *mille hominum*, *a thousand (of) men*; *quattuor mīlia hominum*, *four thousand(s of) men*.

### 380. The Objective Genitive.

*Spēs praedae hominēs incitat, hope of booty impels the men.*

a. Observe that the genitive *praedae* expresses the thing hoped for, the object of the hope. This usage of the genitive case is called the *Objective Genitive*. The difference between the possessive and the objective genitive is illustrated by *timor canis*, *fear of the dog*, which may mean the dog's fear (possessive) or fear felt for the dog (objective).

**381. Rule for the Objective Genitive.** *Some nouns of action and feeling may have with them a genitive to express the object of the action or feeling implied in the nouns.*

382.

## VOCABULARY

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right (dexterous)	passus, -ūs, m., pace ( <i>pace</i> )
duo, duae, duo, adj., two ( <i>dual</i> )	quārtus, -a, -um, adj., fourth ( <i>quarto</i> )
memoria, -ae, f., memory ( <i>memorable</i> )	quattuor, adj., indecl., four
mille, adj. or noun, thousand ( <i>million</i> )	sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left ( <i>sinister</i> )
mille passuum, mile (a thousand of paces)	tertius, -a, -um, adj., third ( <i>tertiary</i> )
octō, adj., indecl., eight ( <i>October</i> )	timor, timōris, m., fear ( <i>timorous</i> )
	trēs, tria, adj., three ( <i>trio</i> )
	ūnus, -a, -um, adj., one ( <i>unify</i> )

## EXERCISES

383. 1. In itinere duo flūmiña reperientur decem pedēs alta.  
 2. Memoria hārum rērum exercitum incitāverat. 3. Tria milia passuum iter fēcerant et prima aciēs instruēbatur. 4. Caesar imperāvit ut in dextrō cornū tertia, in sinistrō quārta legiō conlocārētur. 5. Trium frātrum Mārcus erat fortissimus. 6. Propter studium victōriæ haec ūna legiō Gallōs sustinuit. 7. Pilum Rōmānum fuit sex pedēs longum. 8. Posterō diē octō milia passuum ex illō lōcō discessērunt. 9. Quattuor explōrātōrēs, qui praemissī erant, propter timōrem hostium fūgērunt.

384. 1. Hope of a reward impelled the children of Marcus.  
 2. On that hill were drawn up ten thousand foot soldiers and two thousand horsemen. 3. The baggage of the army had been left a mile from the shore. 4. The general will station the second legion in front of the camp. 5. At the arrival of two legions the enemy departed from the left flank. 6. Fear of Cāesar and of the Romans will hinder one clan. 7. One of the men was unfriendly to me.

## LESSON LVI

### ADJECTIVES HAVING THE GENITIVE IN *-īus*

**385.** **Adjectives having the Genitive in *-īus*.** The adjectives of the following vocabulary end in *-īus* in the genitive singular and in *-i* in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of *alter* ends in *-īus*).

#### 386.

#### VOCABULARY

alius, alia, aliud, other, another (alias)	sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole, only (solitude)
alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two) (alterate)	tōtus, -a, -um, whole, all (total)
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two) (neutrality)	ūllus, -a, -um, any (at all)
nūllus, -a, -um, no, no one, none (nullify)	ūnus, -a, -um, one (unite)
	uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)
	uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both

- a. Learn the declension of *alius* (646). Decline the other words.
- b. These adjectives are usually emphatic, and so stand before their nouns. They are often used as pronouns.

**387. The Idiomatic Uses of *Alius* and of *Alter*.** *Alius* and *alter*, when repeated in the same sentence, have the following meanings:

alter . . . alter, one . . . the other (of two only)  
alius . . . alius, one . . . another (of any number)  
alii . . . alii, some . . . others

1. Alterum oppidum in Italiā, alterum in Galliā est, one town is in Italy, the other in Gaul (only two towns are thought of).
2. Aliud oppidum magnum, aliud parvum est, one town is large, another small (here the thought is not limited to two towns).
3. Alii gladiis, alii pilis pugnant, some are fighting with swords, others with javelins.

**EXERCISES**

- 388.** 1. In alterō flūminis litore urbs, in alterō fuit mōns.  
 2. Duōrum hominum alter imperātor, alter tribūnus erat. 3. Tertiae legiōnis sōlius virtūte tōtus exercitus dēfendēbatur. 4. Altera legiō in dextrō, altera in sinistrō cornū ā Caesare conlocāta est.  
 5. Neutri obsidi cibum dabō. 6. Uter puer est tuus filius? 7. Eā aestāte erant in marī nūllae nāvēs. 8. Cūr utrumque incitās?

- 389.** 1. Cāesar had praised the valor of the whole legion.  
 2. Which of the two young men showed the greater courage?  
 3. Cāesar will march without any delay with the second legion alone. 4. Some were pitching camp, others were drawing up a line of battle. 5. In no place did we find very many trees.

**390.****VOCABULARY**

celeritās, <i>celeritatis</i> , <i>f.</i> , speed	lacrima, <i>-ae, f.</i> , tear ( <i>lachrymose</i> )
( <i>celerity</i> )	nec, <i>neque</i> , <i>conj.</i> , and not, nor
dolor, <i>dolōris</i> , <i>m.</i> , grief, pain	simul, <i>adv.</i> , at the same time ( <i>dolorous</i> )
fremitus, <i>-ūs</i> , <i>m.</i> , noise	( <i>simultaneous</i> )

**MONSTRUM APPROPINQUAT (CONTINUED FROM 370)**

- 391.** Tum rēx diem dixit et omnia parāvit. Ubi is diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad litus ducta est, et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem adligāta est. Omnēs propter fātum eius dolēbant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. Subitō autem, dum mōnstrum exspectant, Perseus ad litus pervenit; et, ubi lacrimās vedit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illi rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis auditur; simul mōnstrum saevissimum procul vidētur. Eius cōspectus timōrem maximum prae-buit. Magnā celeritāte ad litus mōnstrum properāvit, iamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

## LESSON LVII

### THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS COMPLEMENT

**392. The Infinitive.** The infinitives of *amō* are as follows:

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i> <i>amāre, to love</i>	<i>amāri, to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <i>amāvisse, to have loved</i>	<i>amātus esse, to have been loved</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>amātūrus esse, to be about to love, to be going to love</i>	<i>(amātum īrī, to be about to be loved)</i>

a. Observe that the present infinitive passive is formed from the active by changing final *-e* to *-i*. But in the third conjugation final *-ere* is changed to *-ī*.

b. The perfect infinitive active is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem.

c. The perfect infinitive passive is formed by using the perfect participle with *esse*, the present infinitive of *sum*.

d. The future infinitive active is formed by using the future active participle, *amātūrus*, with *esse*. The future active participle is made by changing final *-tus* or *-sus* of the perfect passive participle to *-tūrus* or *-sūrus*. Form the future active participles of *pōnō*, *instruō*, *videō*, *mittō*, and *gerō*.

e. Learn the infinitives and meanings of the model verbs and of *sum* (658–663). The future infinitive passive may be omitted. It is rare.

**393. The Infinitive as Subject.** Since the infinitive is a noun, it may be used as the subject or the object of a verb. Since it is a *verbal* noun, it may have a subject or an object of its own, and be modified by adverbs, adverb phrases, or adverb clauses.

1. *Laudāri est grātum, to be praised is pleasing.*

2. *Iter per finēs hostium facere erit difficile, to march through the territory of the enemy will be difficult.*

a. Observe that **laudāri** is the subject of **est**, and **iter per finēs hostium facere** of **erit**, while **iter** is the object of **facere**. Of what gender are **grātum** and **diffīcile**? What, then, is the gender of the infinitive?

### 394. The Complementary Infinitive.

1. **Vincere potest**, *he is able to conquer.*
2. **Boni esse dēbēmus**, *we ought to be good.*

a. Observe that **vincere** and **esse** complete the meaning of **potest** and **dēbēmus**. An infinitive so used is called a *Complementary Infinitive*, and it is common in Latin, as in English, with verbs meaning *be able, decide, ought, wish, begin, etc.* You have already met this usage of the infinitive in several of the selections for reading.

b. The predicate adjective used with a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

### 395.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>coepī, coepisse</b> ( <i>lacks the present system</i> ), began	<b>decimus, -a, -um</b> , tenth ( <i>decimate</i> )
	<b>potest</b> , is able, can
<b>dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus</b> , ought, be obliged to ( <i>debit</i> )	<b>possunt</b> , are able, can ( <i>possible</i> )

#### EXERCISES

396. 1. **Venire, dare, discēdere potest.** 2. **Impediri, pōni, conlocāri possunt.** 3. **Praemia recipere saepe est grātum.** 4. **Caesar reliquōs agrōs et oppida illius cīvitatis vāstārē coepit.** 5. **Tua verba audire est diffīcillimum.** 6. **Germāni Rōmānōs commēatibus interclūdere nōn possunt.** 7. **Statim multitudō pācem petere coepit.** 8. **Sē dēfendere dēbent.** 9. **Quis tōtius exercitūs tam fortis fuit ut impetum hostium sustinēret?** 10. **Hieme diēs quinque hōris breviōrēs quam aestāte sunt.**

397. 1. It will be easy to fortify the camp with a high wall. 2. You ought to offer help. 3. He is not able to arouse the soldiers of the tenth legion. 4. To carry on a war is not often best. 5. We ought to be brave and good. 6. Some have begun to fight, others to flee.

## LESSON LVIII

### THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT · THE ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

#### 398. The Infinitive as Object.

**Mē venire iussit, he ordered me to come.**

a. Observe that in the English sentence the object of *ordered* is *me to come*; and that *me* is in the objective case and subject of the infinitive *to come*. The Latin sentence is like the English; **mē** is in the accusative case. Verbs meaning *order* and *wish* are the commonest verbs having an infinitive as their object; but **imperō**, *order*, takes a substantive clause of purpose (356). The objective infinitive is also used in indirect statements (400-402).

#### 399. Rule for the Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.

**400. Indirect Statements.** A direct statement gives the exact words used by a speaker or writer: as, *He says* (or *said*), "*Soldiers are coming*." In an indirect statement the words of a speaker or writer are made to depend on a verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., and in English may or may not be the same as they were in the original statement or thought: as, *He says that soldiers are coming*, *he said that soldiers were coming*. Observe the same sentences in Latin:

1. **Militēs veniunt, soldiers are coming.**
2. **Dicit militēs venire, he says that soldiers are coming.**
3. **Dixit militēs venire, he said that soldiers were coming.**

a. Observe that in turning a direct statement into an indirect statement in Latin the nominative is changed to the accusative (399) and the indicative to the infinitive.

**401. Rule for Indirect Statements.** *Indirect statements, with verb in the infinitive and subject in the accusative, are found in dependence on verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like.*

**402. The Use of the Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statements.** The *present* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement is going on at the *same* time as the action indicated by the verb of *saying, thinking*, etc.: as,

1. **Dicit militēs venire**, he says that soldiers are coming.
2. **Dixit militēs venire**, he said that soldiers were coming.
3. **Dicet militēs venire**, he will say that soldiers are coming.

The *perfect* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement occurred *before* that of the verb of *saying, thinking*, etc.: as,

1. **Dicit militēs vēnisse**, he says that soldiers came (or have come).
2. **Dixit militēs vēnisse**, he said that soldiers came (or had come).
3. **Dicet militēs vēnisse**, he will say that soldiers came (or have come).

The *future* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement occurs *after* that of the verb of *saying, thinking*, etc.: as,

1. **Dicit militēs ventūrōs esse**, he says that soldiers will come.
2. **Dixit militēs ventūrōs esse**, he said that soldiers would come.
3. **Dicet militēs ventūrōs esse**, he will say that soldiers will come.

### 403.

### VOCABULARY

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognōscere, learn, know, understand  
(recognize)

cupiō, cupere, cupivī (cupii), cupiō, desire, wish (cupidity)

iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus, bid, order, command (*jussive*)  
respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus, answer, reply (*respond*)

**EXERCISES**

**404.** 1. Caesar per duōs explōrātōrēs cognōvit hostēs sex milia passuum iter fēcisse. 2. Socī respondent sē sine morā auxilium ad Caesarem missūrōs esse. 3. Imperātor dixit sē suīs praemia ampla datūrum esse. 4. Omnēs cupiunt esse liberi. 5. Omnēs cupiunt Italiam esse liberam. 6. Omnēs vident oppidum fortiter dēfendi. 7. Statim tertiam aciem īstruī Caesar iussit. 8. Sciēbat Gallōs venire ut impetum facerent.

**405.** 1. That lieutenant will order his men to build towers. 2. I know that two legions have been sent ahead. 3. From the captives he learned that the enemy lacked food. 4. He ordered (*iubēt*) them to spend the winter in that state. 5. The traders replied that there was no grain in the territory of the Germans.



A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE

THE ROMAN FORUM TO-DAY



## LESSON LIX

### READING LESSON

#### CAESAR IN CONCILIO DICIT

406. Post hoc proelium Caesar militibus in conciliō ita dixit: Eōs fortiter pugnāvisse; itaque hostis omnibus in partibus victōs esse et in montīs et palūdēs fugere; praedam eīs sē datūrum esse; sē scire eōs longō bellō esse dēfessōs et statim eōs in Italiā missūrum esse; sē velle<sup>1</sup> in Galliā manēre per hiemem, sed proximā aestāte suōs in Germānōs ductūrum esse; multōs captivōs Rōmam missōs esse, et populum Rōmānum victoriā eōrum dēlectāri.

#### 407.

#### VOCABULARY

**paene**, *adv.*, nearly, almost (*peninsula*)

**regiō**, *regiōnis*, *f.*, place (*region*)

**undique**, *adv.*, from all sides, everywhere

**dēpōnō**, *dēpōnere*, *dēposui*, *dēpositus*, put down, lay aside (*deposit*)

**ostendō**, *ostendere*, *osten-*  
*tus*, show, display (*ostensible*)

**reddō**, *reddere*, *reddidi*, *redditus*, give back, return (*render*)

**sentiō**, *sentire*, *sēnsi*, *sēnsus*, feel, know, perceive (*sentiment*)

#### PERSEUS CEPHEO ANDROMEDAM REDDIT

(CONTINUED FROM 391)

408. At Perseus ubi haec vidit, gladium suum ēdūxit, et postquam tālāria induit, per āera volāvit. Tum dēsuper in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit, et gladiō suō collum eius graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdīdit et sine morā tōtum corpus in aquam mersit. Perseus dum circum litus volat, redditum eius exspectābat. Mare

<sup>1</sup> **velle**, infin. of **volō**, *wish*.

autem interim undique sanguine inficitur. Post breve tempus bēlua rūrsus caput ostendit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē in undās mersit, neque posteā vīsa est.

Perseus postquam ad litus dēscendit, prīnum tālaria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīcta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, et ubi Perseus pervēnit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patri reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō adfectus est. Itaque Andromedam Perseō in mātrimōnium dedit. Paucōs annōs Perseus cum uxōre in eā regiōne habitābat, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnīs Aethiopēs.



IMPERATOR ET CAPTIVI

## LESSON LX

### THE DEMONSTRATIVES *IDEM*, *IPSE*, *ISTE* · THE IRREGULAR VERB *POSSUM*

**409.** The Demonstratives *Idem*, *Ipse*, and *Iste*. Review the declension of *is*, *hic*, and *ille* (654), and learn the declension of *idem*, *same*, *ipse*, *-self*, and *iste*, *this of yours, that of yours* (654).

a. Observe that *idem* is declined like *is* with *-dem* added, except that in the accusative singular and the genitive plural *m* is changed to *n*, and in the nominative and accusative singular *is* is changed to *i*, *id* to *i*.

b. Decline together *idem diēs*, *rēs ipsa*, and *istud cōsilium*.

**410.** The Distinction between *Idem*, *Ipse*, and *Iste*.

a. *Idem* and *iste* may be used both as demonstrative adjectives and as demonstrative pronouns.

b. *Iste* is used of that which has some relation to the second person, and is translated *this of yours, that of yours, your*: as, *istam diligentiam laudō, I praise that diligence of yours (your diligence)*.

c. *Ipse* means *-self (himself, herself, itself, themselves)*. It is an intensive word, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees as an adjective: as, *amicus ipse ad mē vēnit, my friend himself came to me*. It must be distinguished from *sē, -self*, which is reflexive, not emphatic (266). Sometimes *ipse* may be translated *even* or *very*: as, *in flūmine ipsō pugnant, they are fighting in the very river*.

**411.** The Irregular Verb *Possum*. The irregular verb *possum*, *I can*, is a compound of *potis*, *able*, and *sum*, *I am*; *pot-sum* changed to *possum*. Wherever, in the inflection of this verb, *t* comes before *s*, it is changed to *s*, and wherever it comes before *f*, *f* is dropped. Learn the principal parts and the complete inflection (664).

## 412.

## VOCABULARY

**difficultās, difficultatis, f.**, difficulty

**idem, eadem, idem, same** (*identity*)  
**idem . . . quī, same . . . as**

**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive, -self  
iste, ista, istud, this of yours,  
that of yours**

**nihil, n., indecl., nothing** (*annihilate*)

**ōratiō, ōratiōnis, f., speech, plea  
(oration)**

**rūrsus, adv., again**

**nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvi, nūn-  
tiātus, report, announce** (*an-  
nouncer*)

**possum, posse, potui, —, be  
able, can** (*potent*)

**putō, putāre, putāvi, putātus,  
think, believe, reckon** (*compute*)

**spērō, spērāre, spērāvi, spērātus,  
hope** (*prosperous*)

## EXERCISES

**413.** 1. Potest, poterat, poterit. 2. Potuimus, potuerant, poterant. 3. Scisne cūr ista verba audīri nōn possint? 4. Eaēdē erant difficultātēs belli quās vōbis nūntiāre potuī. 5. Labiēnus ipse scīvit causās belli plūrimās esse. 6. Putō mē hodiē nihil ēmptūrum esse. 7. Nōn iam pōstulant ut populus Rōmānus nāvēs praebeat. 8. Centuriō, quī cum octō explōrātōribus missus erat ut viam cognōsceret, nūntiāvit sē viam cognōscere nōn potuisse. 9. Omnēs spērābant Caesarem eā aestāte Gallōs victūrum esse. 10. Virī ipsi dicunt tēla iacī nōn posse.

**414.** 1. They have been able, he will be able, I could. 2. He had been able, they will have been able, we could. 3. The very children no longer desired peace. 4. They say that our allies are in the same danger to-day. 5. I think that I can stay two days with that friend of yours. 6. The traders reported that many bands of horsemen had been sent into the mountains. 7. I think that you can fight. 8. You thought that I could not come.

## EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS LIII-LX

**415.** Give the English meanings of the following words:

alius	difficultās	.nec	putō	sōlus
alter	dolor	•neque	quārtus	spērō
cēdō	duo	neuter	quattuor	tertius
celeritās	ēdūcō	nihil	quot	timor
coepī	fremitus	nūllus	•reddō	tōtus
cognōscō	idem	•num	regiō	trādō
conlocō	ipse	nūntiō	respondeō	trēs
cōnstituō	iste	octō	rogō	ūllus
cōnsulō	iubeō	ōrātiō	rūrsus	unde
cupiō	iuvō	ostendō	sciō	undique
dēbeō	lacrima	pāene	sentiō	ūnus
decimus	memoria	passus	simul	uter
dēpōnō	mille	possum	sinister	uterque
dexter	mille passum			

**416.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

two	answer, reply	memory	give way, retire
one	nearly, almost	the other	think, believe, reckon
left	and not, nor	know	put down, lay aside
tear	give back, return	began	from all sides, everywhere
speed	other, another	three	no, no one, none
eight	how many	•whence	lead out, lead forth
again	be able, can	•help, aid	at the same time
four	show, display	hope	bid, order, command
mile	which (of two)	difficulty	this of yours, that of yours
ask	speech, plea	place	establish, determine
third	place, station	noise	alone, sole, only
neither	desire, wish	thousand	learn, know, understand
pace	report, announce	right	ought, be obliged to
nothing	whole, all	-self	give over, surrender

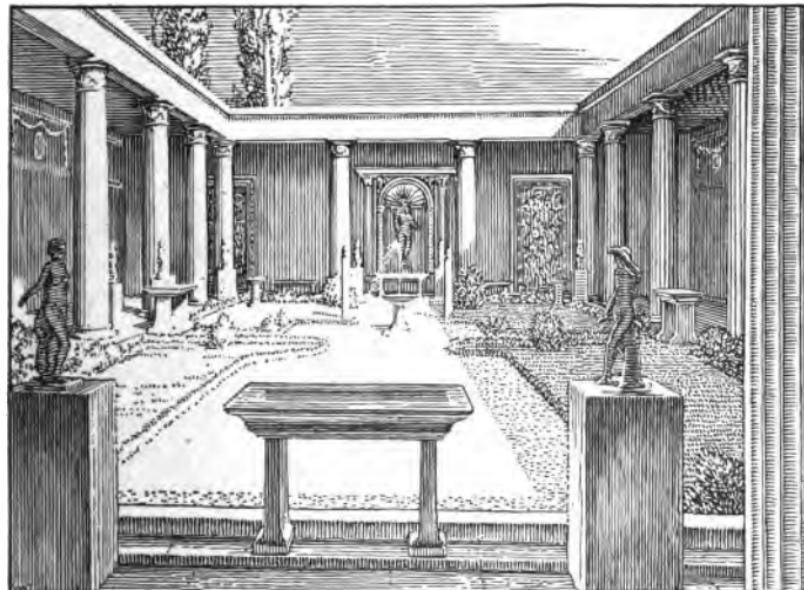
same	each, both	whether	feel, know, perceive
fourth	any (at all)	fear	plan, deliberate, consult
tenth	grief, pain		

**417.** Decline each noun, adjective, and pronoun in 415. Conjugate each verb in all tenses of the subjunctive mood. Make synopses. Give the infinitives of each verb.

**418.** Following the suggestions of 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 415. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**419.** Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. Indirect questions       | 5. Infinitive as object                    |
| 2. Objective genitive       | 6. Indirect statements                     |
| 3. Infinitive as subject    | 7. Accusative as subject of the infinitive |
| 4. Infinitive as complement |  |



INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON LXI

### THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

**420. The Indefinite Pronouns.** The indefinite pronouns (*ii, g*) are compounds of **quis** and of **qui**. The following indefinite pronouns will be used in this book :

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, aliquod, *some, some one, any, any one*  
quidam, quaedam, quiddam, quoddam, *a certain one, a certain*  
*quisquam, —, quidquam (no plural), any one (at all)*  
quisque, quaeque, quidque, quodque, *each, each one, every, every one*

- a. Learn the meanings and the declension of these pronouns (657).
- b. The meanings of the neuters (*something, anything, etc.*) are easily inferred.
- c. Observe how **aliqua**, which is both the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative and accusative plural of **aliquis**, differs from the corresponding forms of **quis**.
- d. Observe that **quidam** (**qui** + **dam**) is declined like **qui**, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** is changed to **n**; also that the neuter has **quiddam** and **quoddam** in the nominative and accusative singular.
- e. In the neuter of all indefinites the **quid** forms are used as pronouns, and the **quod** forms as adjectives.

### EXERCISES

- 421.** 1. Duo nova flūmina ā quibusdam viris audācībus reperta sunt. 2. Nōn iam quemquam ante domum vidēre possum. 3. Ut cīvēs timōre liberāret, arma statim trādī iussit. 4. Quidam captīvus idem rūrsus nūntiāvit. 5. Quisque aliquid respondēre potuerit. 6. Aliquae fēminae nōn sōlum perturbātæ erant, sed etiam fūgerant. 7. Lēgātus quemque ex finib⁹ frūmentum

portāre iubēbit. 8. Quaedam legiō spē victōriæ Delphōs properabat. 9. Īnsulae similis est ista terra.

**422.** 1. Each says that the Gauls are approaching. 2. He does not demand anything at all. 3. That girl has something in her right hand. 4. A part of each summer we live among the mountains and hills. 5. To-day a story was told to us by somebody. 6. At the same time certain (men) came to Cæsar to demand help. 7. I know what each is able to do.

### THE NATIONS OF GAUL

**423.** Gallia est omnis divisa (*divided*) in partis trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam eī qui Galli appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, quod prōvinciae Rōmānae propinqui nōn sunt neque mercātōrēs ad eōs saepe perveniunt; proximique sunt Germānis qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā (*for this reason*, 186) Helvētii quoque fortiorēs quam reliquī Galli sunt. Cotidiānis ferē proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum (*when*) aut (*either*) suis finib⁹ eōs prohibent aut (*or*) ipsī in eōrum finib⁹ bellum gerunt. Ea pars quam Galli obtinent initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā (*Garonne*) flūmine, ōceanō, finib⁹ Belgārum.



TABLE, VASE, AND LAMP STANDS

## LESSON LXII

### THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS · THE DATIVES OF PURPOSE AND REFERENCE

#### 424. The Dative with Compounds.

1. *Quis equitibus praefuit?* *who commanded the horsemen?*
  2. *Huic legiōni lēgātūm praefēcit,* *he put a lieutenant in charge of this legion.*
- a. Observe that **praefuit**, which is a compound of **sum**, is intransitive. It does not admit a direct object, but does admit the indirect object **equitibus**. There are a number of Latin verbs which in their simple form take neither a direct nor an indirect object; when these verbs are compounded with a preposition, they have a meaning which may take an indirect object. Some compound verbs take both a direct and an indirect object: as, **praefēcit** in sentence 2.

**425. Rule for the Dative with Compounds.** *Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super, take a dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*

#### 426. The Datives of Purpose and Reference.

1. *Militēs ibi erant praeſidiō, soldiers were there as (for) a defense.*
2. *Militēs auxiliō eīs mittuntur, soldiers are sent as (for) a help to them.*

a. Observe that the datives **praeſidiō** and **auxiliō** are used to express the purpose for which something serves. This usage is called the *Dative of Purpose*. Often the dative of purpose is accompanied by another dative, called the *Dative of Reference*, denoting the person or thing served: as, **eīs** in sentence 2. This combination is known as the *Double Dative*.

**427. Rule for the Dative of Purpose.** *The dative is used to denote the purpose for which a thing serves.*

**428. Rule for the Dative of Reference.** *The dative is used to denote the person (or, rarely, the thing) affected by the action or situation expressed by the verb.*

## 429.

## VOCABULARY

mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, *f.*, fortification, defense (*ammunition*)

praesidium, praesi'di, *n.*, defense, protection, guard

subsidiū, subsi'di, *n.*, help, aid  
ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, benefit, advantage (*useful*)

dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be lacking, be wanting, fail

occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occur-sūrus, run toward, meet (*occur*)

praeficiō, praeficere, praefēci, praefectus, place in command of (*prefect*)

praestō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitus, surpass, be superior to  
praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefutūrus, be at the head of, command

supersum, superesse, superfui, superfutūrus, be left over, survive

## EXERCISES

**430.** 1. Unum oppidum sociōrum ab hostibus diū oppugnātum erat, et mūnitiōnēs cotidiē yāstābantur. 2. Quod cibus et arma cīvibus deesse coepērunt, socii rogāvērunt ut Caesar cōpiās auxiliō mitteret. 3. Itaque Caesar Labiēnum ūni legiōni praefēcit et eum subsidiō cīvibus misit. 4. In itinere Labiēnus hostibus occurrit, quī omnibus ex partibus vēnerant ut oppidum caperent. 5. Pila impedimentō nostrīs, sed magnō ūsūi gladii erant. 6. Nostri hostibus praestitērunt et eōs superāvērunt. 7. Labiēnus dixit sē cīvibus praesidiō futūrum esse. 8. Scisne quis ei oppidō praefuerit?

**431.** 1. Courage did not often fail Cæsar. 2. He commanded brave men. 3. He was a protection to his country. 4. He did not survive his last (*proximus*) wars many years. 5. He was superior to the chiefs of the Gauls and the Germans. 6. He placed lieutenants in charge over the nations which had been conquered. 7. The sea is many feet deeper than this lake.

## LESSON LXIII

### THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS · THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLO*, *NOLO*, *MALO*

#### 432. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.

1. *Legiōni imperat*, *he commands a legion.*
2. *Amicō meō persuādet*, *he persuades my friend.*

a. Observe that *legiōni* and *amicō* are in the dative case, while the English equivalents are in the objective case. It is obvious, therefore, that the Latin verbs *imperō* and *persuādeō* are intransitive, and that they admit an indirect object. *Verbs of Attitude in Latin*

433. *Rule for the Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.* Most verbs meaning believe, favor, help, please, trust, and their opposites, also command, obey, pardon, persuade, resist, serve, spare, and the like, take a dative of the indirect object.

a. Such verbs used in this book are *crēdō*, *believe*; *faveō*, *favor*; *imperō*, *command*; *noceō*, *harm*; *persuādeō*, *persuade*; *placeō*, *please*; *resistō*, *resist*; and *studeō*, *desire, be eager for*.

b. Observe that *imperō* has an indirect object, while *iubeō* takes a direct object.

434. *The Irregular Verbs Volō, Nōlō, and Malō.* Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of *volō*, *wish*, *nōlō* (*nē* + *volō*), *be unwilling*, and *malō* (*magis volō*), *be more willing, prefer*, in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive (665).

#### 435.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>mulier, mulieris, f.</i> , woman	<i>crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus</i> ,
<i>neque . . . neque</i> , neither . . . nor	<i>believe, trust (creditor)</i>
<i>occāsus, -ūs, m.</i> , setting ( <i>occasion</i> )	<i>faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, favor</i>
<i>sōl, sōlis, m.</i> , sun ( <i>solstice</i> )	( <i>favor</i> )

**mālō, mālle, mālui,** —, be more willing, prefer

**noceō, nocēre, nocui, nocitūrus,** harm, injure (*obnoxious*)

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** —, be unwilling

**persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsi,** persuade (*persuasive*)

**placeō, placēre, placui, placitūrus,** please, be pleasing to (*placidly*)

**resistō, resistere, restiti,** —, resist, oppose (*resistance*)

**studeō, studēre, studui,** —, be eager for, desire (*student*)

**volō, velle, volui,** —, be willing, wish (*volition*)

*m*

EXERCISES

436. 1. Vultis, nōlumus, māvis. 2. Mercātōribus nōn crēdit. 3. Nōlle, māluisse. 4. Vōbis persuādere volunt. 5. Vult mihi favēre. 6. Neque nōlunt tibi nocēre. 7. Tibi auxiliō esse mālumus. 8. Cūr nōn vīs mātri tuae esse praesidiō? 9. Putāmus eum voluisse equitātuī praeesse. 10. Sōlis occāsū militēs castra hostium capient. 11. Paucae enim ex his nātiōnibus bellō student. 12. Militib⁹ imperāvit ut fortiter Gallis resisterent. 13. Neque mulierēs neque liberī timēbant.

437. 1. They were wishing, I shall be unwilling, she will prefer. 2. They were not willing to help our men. 3. They were not able to please your friends. 4. And they did not persuade the general. 5. He will command them not to harm the women. 6. Neither the Gauls nor the Germans desired war at that time.



WALL DECORATION OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON LXIV

### READING LESSON

#### BELLING THE CAT

**438.** Quidam mūrēs aliquandō concilium habēbant, nam fēlem maximē timēbant. Cōnsilia quae prōposita sunt omnibus nōn placēbant. Tandem ūnus ex mūribus ita dixit : “ Tintinnābulum caudae fēlis adnectere dēbēmus. Sic enim sonitū eius monēbimur et fugere poterimus. Quis vestrum hoc facere vult ? ” Sed nūlli ex sociis persuādēre potuit ut tintinnābulum fēli adnecteret, et ipse nōluit. Ea fābula docet plūrimōs in suādendō<sup>1</sup> esse audācēs sed in ipsō periculō timidōs.

#### NASICA AND ENNIUS

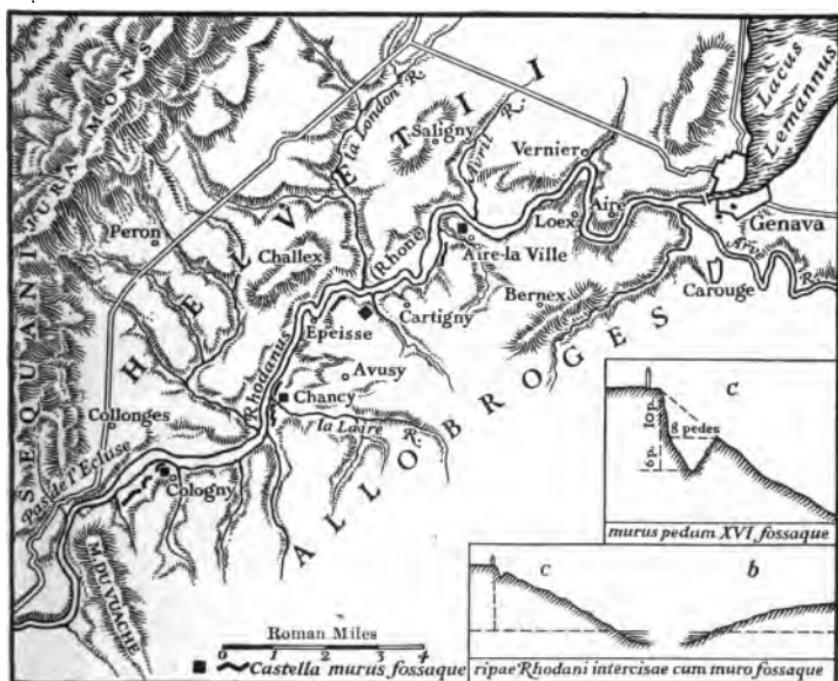
**439.** Nāsica aliquandō ad poētam<sup>2</sup> Ennium vēnit et dē eō quaesivit. Ancilla respondit Ennium domī<sup>3</sup> nōn esse. Nāsica autem sēnsit illam dominī iussū hoc dixisse et Ennium domī<sup>3</sup> esse. Paucis post diēbus<sup>4</sup> Ennius ad Nāsicam vēnit. Ei exclāmat Nāsica sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius dixit, “ Quid ? Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam ? ” Hic<sup>5</sup> Nāsica : “ Homō es impudēns. Ego ancillae tuae crēdidi ; tū mihi ipsī nōn crēdis ? ”

#### ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETIANS

**440.** Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus erat Orgetorix. Is rēgnī cupiditātē inductus est et toniūrātiōnem nōbilitatis fēcit. Tum civitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis properārent. Facilius eis persuāsit quod undique loci nātūrā

<sup>1</sup> suādendō, offering advice. <sup>2</sup> ad poētam, to the house of the poet. <sup>3</sup> domī, at home. <sup>4</sup> paucis post diēbus, a few days later. <sup>5</sup> hīc, adv., hereupon.

Helvētii continentur: ūnā ex parte (*on one side*) flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētiōrum ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertīā (ex parte) lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dīvidit. Propter multitudinem hominum et glōriam belli angustōs sē finēs habēre putābant, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL (ducenta quadrāgintā), in lātitudinem CLXXX (centum octōgintā) patēbant.



MAP OF HELVETIA

act. *Pass*  
 pres. -*ntt (conmō)*  
 perf. -*ndus (arā)*  
 fut. *urus* -*ndus (arā)*

**LESSON LXV**

## PARTICIPLES

**441. Participles.** Learn the participles of the model verbs (658–662), and their meanings.

a. Observe that the present active and the future passive participles are formed from the present stem by the addition of **-ns** and **-ndus**, with certain changes in quantity; and the future active and the perfect passive from the participial stem by the addition of **-ūrus** and **-us**. But observe that in verbs of the fourth conjugation and of the third conjugation ending in **-iō** the present active participle has **-iēns** and the future passive participle has **-iendus**. Form the participles of **gerō**, **videō**, **iaciō**, **vāstō**, and **mūniō**.

**442. The Declension of Participles.** Participles in **-ns** are declined like **amāns** (645). The ablative singular ending is **-e**; but the ending is **-i** when the word is used as an adjective. The other participles are declined like **bonus** (643). Decline the participles of **gerō**.

**443. The Agreement of Participles.** Since participles are verbal adjectives (xxxiv), they agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case.

**444. The Tenses of Participles.** The present active participle is used of an action going on at the same time as the action of the main verb: as, **tē labōrantem videō**, *I see you working*; **tē labōrantem vidi**, *I saw you working*.

The perfect passive participle is used of an action that is completed at the time of the action of the main verb: as, **miles vulnērātus domum vēnit**, *the soldier, having been wounded, came home*.

The future active and passive participles are used of actions which are to occur after the time of the action of the main

verb. In this book the future active participle is used only in the formation of the future active infinitive (392, d). The uses of the future passive participle will be explained later (471-473).

#### 445. The Translation of Participles.

1. **Tē in urbe manentem vidi**, *I saw you when you were staying in the city.*
2. **Urbs diū oppugnāta nōn capta est**, *the city, though besieged for a long time, was not taken.*
3. **Caesar eā rē commōtus in Galliam properāvit**, *Cæsar, because he was alarmed by this circumstance, hastened into Gaul.*
4. **Dux victus sē recipiet**, *the general, if defeated, will retreat.*
5. **Dōna missa recēpit**, *he received the gifts which had been sent.*
6. **Caesar principem captum Rōmam misit**, *Cæsar captured a chieftain and sent him to Rome.*

a. Observe that in the first five sentences the participle is translated by clauses of *time*, *concession*, *cause*, and *condition*, and by a *relative clause*. In 6 the participle is translated by a coördinate verb. Note the words which introduce the different clauses. When you meet a participle, consider which of these six ways best brings out the thought of the sentence and translate accordingly. Do not translate a participle literally.

#### 446.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>hiberna</b> , -ōrum, <i>n. plur.</i> , winter	<b>moveō</b> , <i>movēre</i> , <i>mōvi</i> , <i>mōtus</i> , move quarters ( <i>hibernate</i> )	<b>(motion)</b>
<b>commoveō</b> , <i>commovēre</i> , <i>commōvi</i> ,	<b>redūcō</b> , <i>redūcere</i> , <i>redūxi</i> , <i>reductus</i> ,	
<b>commōtus</b> , <i>disturb</i> , <i>move</i> , <i>arouse</i> ( <i>commotion</i> )		<b>lead back</b> ( <i>reduce</i> )

#### EXERCISES

1. **Alii militēs fugientēs capti sunt.** 2. **His rēbus impediti eō diē impetum nōn fēcērunt.** 3. **Alter centuriō primā in aciē pugnāns vulnerātus est.** 4. **Ad nostrōs militēs castra oppugnantī auxilium missum erat.** 5. **Quaedam mulierēs in oppidō relictae sē dēfendere cōstituērunt.** 6. **Pars hostium**

adventū Caesaris commōta sōlis occāsū discessit. 7. In hibernis reductōs militēs relinquēbat. 8. Multitūdō servōrum territa ex urbe' fugiēbat. 9. Posterō diē castra mōvērunt.

**448.** 1. A certain man, while resisting, was wounded by an enemy. 2. Although wounded, they fought so bravely that they could not be captured. 3. Since he was disturbed by the difficulties of the march, he decided to lead back his legions. 4. Those horsemen who were sent ahead resisted the Gauls long and bravely. 5. If asked concerning your plans, I shall say nothing. 6. The leaders will be captured and sent to Italy.



GALLI CAPTI IN CASTRA REDUCUNTUR

## LESSON LXVI

### READING LESSON

#### DICTA ANTIQUORUM

449. 1. Lacaena filiō in proelium properanti dixit, "Aut in scūtō aut cum scūtō."

2. Leōnidās militi nūntianti, "Hostēs nōbis propinquī sunt," respondit, "Etiam nōs hostibus propinquī sumus."

3. Thalēs interrogātus, "Quid hominibus commūne est?" respondit, "Spēs; hanc enim etiam illī habent qui nihil aliud habent."

4. Āgis mūrōs firmōs altōsque Corinthi spectāns rogāvit, "Quārum mulierum haec urbs est?"

5. Aristotelem quidam rogāvit, "Quid est amicitia?" Ille respondit, "Ūnus animus in duōbus corporibus."

6. Cicerō dixit, "Nōn potest exercitū is continēre imperātor qui sē ipse nōn continet."

#### 450.

#### VOCABULARY

rēgnum, -ī, n., kingdom (*inter-regnum*)

addūcō, addūcere, addūxi, adduc-tus, lead to, influence (*adduce*)

obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obten-

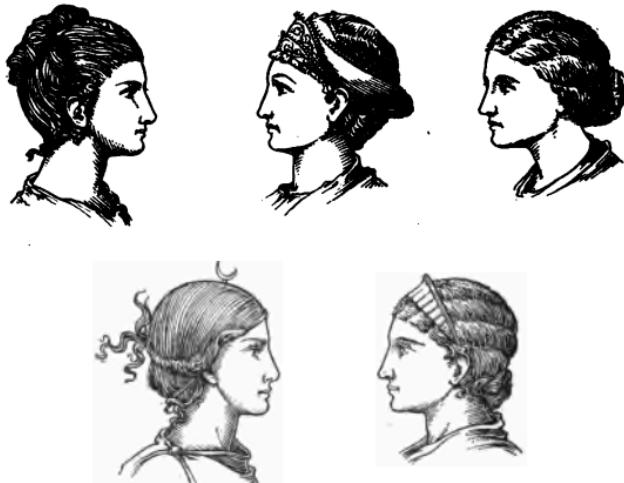
tus, possess, occupy, hold (*obtain*)

suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, suscep-tus, take up, undertake (*susceptible*)

#### ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETIANS (CONTINUED FROM 440)

451. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti Helvētii cōnstituērunt carrōrum maximum numerum emere, cōpiam frūmentī parāre, pācēm et amīcitiam cum proximīs cī-vitātibus cōfirmāre. Orgetorix interim lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs

suscēpit. In eō itinere persuāsit Casticō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēnum in Sēquani multōs anfōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret. Cuidam aliī principi persuāsit ut idem faceret. Ōrātiōne Orgetorīgis adducti hī principēs inter sē obsidēs dant, et tōtam Galliam sēsē occupāre posse spērant. Helvētiī autem hoc cōnsilium nōn probāvērunt. Itaque multitūdinem hominum ex agris coēgērunt ut cōnsilia Orgetorīgis prohibērent. Sed eō tempore Orgetorīx subitō mortuus est (*died*).



ROMAN STYLES OF HAIRDRESSING

## LESSON LXVII

### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

#### 452. The Ablative Absolute.

1. **Cōnsul, castris mūnitis, Rōmam vēnit,** *with the camp fortified, the consul came to Rome.*
2. **Caesare dūcente, semper vincimus,** *with Cæsar leading, we always conquer.*
3. **Caesare duce, vincēmus,** *with Cæsar as leader, we shall conquer.*

a. Observe that the ablatives in these sentences are so loosely connected with the rest of the sentence that they are grammatically independent. Because of its loose connection with the sentence this usage of the ablative is known as the *Ablative Absolute* (*ab + solvō*).

#### 453. How to translate the Ablative Absolute. The ablative absolute is usually translated, not as above, but by a clause : thus,

1. *When (because, although, if) the camp had been fortified, the consul came to Rome.*
2. *When (because, although, if) Cæsar is leading, we always conquer.*
3. *When (because, although, if) Cæsar is leader, we shall conquer.*

The method of translation in any particular sentence must be determined by asking which kind of clause best expresses the thought of the sentence as a whole.

#### 454. The Formation of the Ablative Absolute. The ablative absolute may be formed by a noun or pronoun with a participle (as in 452, 1 and 2); or by a noun or pronoun with another noun or an adjective (as in 452, 3). The present active and perfect passive participles are used in this construction. Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, a participle is not expressed when the ablative absolute is formed as it is in 452, 3 : **Caesare duce, Cæsar (being) leader.**

- a. An ablative absolute containing a perfect passive participle expresses an action that occurred before the action expressed by the main verb of the sentence; one containing a present participle expresses an action occurring at the same time as that of the main verb.
- b. The Latin perfect participle is not found in the active voice. Accordingly such a sentence as *Cæsar, having defeated the Gauls, returned to Rome* has to be recast into the form *Cæsar, the Gauls having been defeated, returned to Rome, Caesar, Gallis victis, Röمام rediit.*
- c. The noun of the ablative absolute is always a different person or thing from the subject or object of the sentence.

**455. Rule for the Ablative Absolute.** *The ablative of a noun or pronoun, with a participle, a noun, or an adjective in agreement, is used to express time, cause, concession, condition, or other relations.*

### 456.

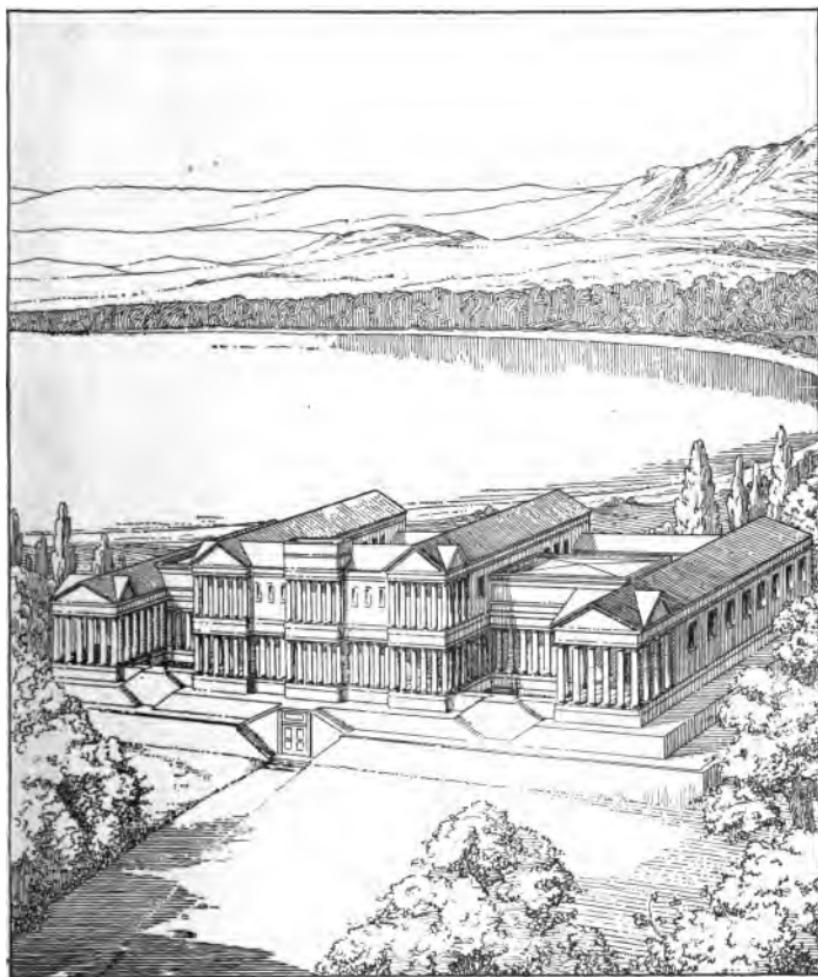
### VOCABULARY

dēditiō, dēditiōnis, f., surrender	medius, -a, -um, middle of
ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, f., sally, sortie	(medium)
(eruption)	ripa, -ae, f., bank (riparian)

### EXERCISES

- 457.** 1. Hostibus victis, per mediam prōvinciam iter facere cōstituit. 2. Cæsare cōnsule, cum Gallis longum erat bellum. 3. Oppidō quōdam expugnātō, castra in ripis ipsis huius flūminis posuērunt. 4. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Cæsarem misērunt. 5. His rēbus repertis, omnēs bellō studēbant. 6. Hoc oppidum, paucis dēfendentibus, Rōmāni capere nōn potuērunt. 7. Captivis in dēditiōnem acceptis, dux subsidiō castris trēs cohortēs reliquit. 8. Hī captivi eidem fortissimē pugnantēs capti erant. 9. Quis praefuit equitibus qui imperātōri auxiliō missi sunt? 10. Urbe mūnitā, cīvēs nōn iam terrēbāntur.

458. 1. When he had heard these words, he was much disturbed. 2. When the city had been taken, the soldiers set the prisoners free. 3. The enemy resisted our men all day. 4. If Labienus is leader, our army will be able to injure the enemy. 5. Labienus, having captured the mountain, was waiting for our men. 6. Although a sortie was made, they were not able to approach our first line.



A COUNTRY VILLA

## LESSON LXVIII

### THE GERUND · THE IRREGULAR VERB *EO*

**459. The Gerund.** The gerund (xxxii, c) is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. It is formed by adding -ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō to the present stem, with certain changes in quantity and spelling. Learn the gerunds of the model verbs (658–662).

**460. What the Gerund is.** The gerund is like the English verbal noun in *-ing*, as, *loving*; but it lacks a nominative case. For the nominative the infinitive is used.

<i>Nom.</i>	amāre, <i>to love, loving</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	amandī, <i>of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	amandō, <i>for loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	amandum, <i>loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	amandō, <i>by loving</i>

**461. The Uses of the Gerund.** The gerund is used in the various constructions of nouns. Since it is a *verbal* noun, it may have a direct or an indirect object: as, *vincendō hostēs*, *by overcoming the enemy*; *resistendō hostibus*, *by resisting the enemy*. Also observe the following:

1. **Ad pugnandum vēnērunt**, *they came for fighting, for the purpose of fighting, to fight.*
2. **Pugnandi causā vēnērunt**, *they came for the sake of fighting, to fight.*

a. Observe that the accusative of the gerund with **ad**, or the genitive of the gerund with **causā**, is used to express purpose. **Causā** when so used follows its genitive. This method of expressing purpose is used in brief statements.

**462. The Irregular Verb *Eō*.** Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the irregular verb *eō* (667).

a. Observe where *i* (the root of *eō*) is changed to *e* in the present indicative and subjunctive, in the present participle, and in the gerund. In the perfect system *-v-* is regularly dropped. For the declension of the present participle see 645.

### 463.

### VOCABULARY

*causā*, *abl. of causa*, for the sake  
of, to

*nōmen*, *nōminis*, *n.*, name (*nōmi-*  
*nate*)

*spatium*, *spati*, *n.*, room, space,  
time, opportunity (*spacious*)

*vällum*, *-i*, *n.*, rampart, earth-  
works (*interval*)

*accēdō*, *accēdere*, *accessi*, *accessū-*  
*rus*, come near, approach (*ac-*  
*cession*)

*coniciō*, *conicere*, *coniēci*, *coniectus*,  
throw, hurl (*conjecture*)

*eō*, *īre*, *īi* (*īvi*), *itūrus*, go (*initial*)  
*ōrō*, *ōrāre*, *ōrāvī*, *ōrātus*, speak,  
plead, beg (*orator*)

### EXERCISES

**464.** 1. It, *īmus*, *ībant*. 2. *Īre*, *īsse*, *ībunt*. 3. Eunt, *ierant*, *īit*.  
4. Difficultātem *nāvigandi* *nūntiāvit*. 5. Haec est causa mit-  
tendi. 6. Litterās mittendi causā vēnit. 7. Diligentia in agendō  
ducī placet. 8. Spatium pugnandi nōn datum est. 9. Caesar  
finem *ōrandi* fēcit. 10. Spatium pila in hostis coniendi breve  
fuit. 11. Accessērunt ad dicendum. 12. Vōbiscum ibit ut  
*nōmina eōrum* roget. 13. Voluit cognōscere quō īssent. 14. La-  
biēnus imperāvit ut castra vällō mūnirentur.

**465.** 1. You are going, they were going, he had gone. 2. We  
shall go, you will have gone. 3. Whither have they gone?  
4. He persuades them to go. 5. He ordered them to go.  
6. They came near for the sake of seeking peace. 7. Time  
was not given for pleading. 8. They went toward the sea for  
the purpose of sailing. 9. That day they went three miles, and  
at sunset pitched camp.

## NINTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS LXI-LXVIII

**466.** Give the English meanings of the following words :

accēdō	ēruptiō	noceō	praesidium	sōl
addūcō	faveō	nōlō	praestō	spatium
aliquis	hiberna	nōmen	praesum	studeō
causā	mālō	obtineō	quidam	subsidiū
commoveō	medius	occāsus	quisquam	supersum
coniciō	moveō	occurrō	quisque	suscipiō
crēdō	mulier	ōrō	redūcō	ūsus
dēditiō	mūnitiō	persuādeō	rēgnum	vallum
dēsum	neque . . .	placeō	resistō	volō
eō	neque	praeficiō	ripa	

**467.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

neither . . . nor	kingdom	use, benefit, advantage
be unwilling	bank	each, each one, every, every one
be left over, survive	throw, hurl	possess, occupy, hold
be willing, wish	favor	disturb, move, arouse
resist, oppose	sun	surpass, be superior to
believe, trust	surrender	rampart, earthworks
place in command	move	be at the head of, command
for the sake of, to	harm, injure	some, some one, any, any one
be eager for, desire	help, aid	be more willing, prefer
speak, plead, beg	middle of	defense, protection, guard
sally, sortie	name	be lacking, be wanting, fail
lead to, influence	woman	come near, approach
winter quarters	persuade	please, be pleasing to
take up, undertake	lead back	room, space, time, opportunity
run towards, meet	setting	a certain one, a certain
any one (at all)	go	fortification, defense

**468.** Decline the nouns in 466. Decline the indefinite pronouns. Give the principal parts of each verb. Give the participles of each verb. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural. Conjugate **vōlō**, **nōlō**, and **eō** throughout.

**469.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 466. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**470.** Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Dative with compounds                  | 5. Participles as the equivalent<br>of certain clauses |
| 2. Dative of purpose                      | 6. Ablative absolute                                   |
| 3. Dative of reference                    | 7. Gerund  |
| 4. Dative with special intransitive verbs |  |



WALL DECORATION OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON LXIX

### THE GERUNDIVE · THE IRREGULAR VERB FERO

**471. The Gerundive.** The future passive participle (441, 444) is more commonly called the *Gerundive*. It is a verbal adjective, and must be distinguished from the gerund, which is a verbal noun. The gerund, being a noun, may be used alone or with an object; but the gerundive, being an adjective, must agree with a noun.

#### 472. The Gerundive used in Place of the Gerund.

1. **Pācem petendi causā vēnērunt**, *they came for the purpose of seeking peace.*
2. **Pācis petendae causā vēnērunt**, *they came for the purpose of seeking peace.*

a. Observe that the Latin sentences have the same meaning, and that 1 contains a gerund, **petendi**, with an object, **pācem**; while 2 contains a gerundive, **petendae**, in agreement with **pācis**. Instead of a gerund with an object, the Romans much preferred the gerundive construction, except occasionally in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

**473. The Gerundive used in the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.** The gerundive is also used with forms of **sum** as a predicate adjective. This is known as the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation*. For a synopsis see 670.

1. **Miles laudandus est**, *the soldier is to be praised, must be praised, ought to be praised.*
2. **Cornēlia laudanda erat**, *Cornelia was to be praised, ought to have been praised, needed to be praised.*

a. Observe that these sentences express necessity. Observe, too, the methods of translation.

**474. The Irregular Verb *Ferō*.** Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of the irregular verb *ferō* (666).

**475.****VOCABULARY**

**libertās, libertatis, f.**, freedom  
(*liberty*)

**signum, -i, n.**, sign, signal (*signify*)

**vis, vis, f.**, force, strength, power,  
might (642) (*violence*)

**augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, in-**  
crease, enlarge (*auction*)

**conveniō, convenire, convēni, con-**  
ventūrus, come together, as-  
semble (*convene*)

**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus;** bear, bring;  
report, say (*transfer*)

**EXERCISES**

**476.** 1. Fert, ferimus, ferent. 2. Ferre, feret, tulisse. 3. Rūr-sus veniunt ut auxilium ferant. 4. Tulerant, lātus esse. 5. In petendā pāce. 6. Libertatis petendae causā. 7. Viribus augen-dis. 8. Pontis faciendi. 9. Legiō ad bellum gerendum sē parat. 10. Multī convēnērunt urbis novae videndae causā. 11. Signum dandum erat. 12. Signō datō, militēs impetum summā celeri-tātē fēcērunt. 13. Omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant. 14. Putā-mus bellum parandum esse. 15. Ad pila conienda tempus dēfuit. 16. Arma in hiberna ferenda sunt.

**477.** 1. You are bearing, they bear, he had borne. 2. You have borne, they were bearing, by bearing. 3. Help was being brought. 4. They said that they should bring the shields. 5. Of seeing the town. 6. For the sake of drawing up a line of battle. 7. By carrying on war. 8. In laying waste the fields. 9. The strength of the allies is being increased daily. 10. The force of the enemy must be borne. 11. The cohort must be led back with speed. 12. A lieutenant ought to have been put in command of these troops.

## LESSON LXX

### READING LESSON

**478.**

### VOCABULARY

mors, mortis, f., death ( <i>mortality</i> )	incipiō, incipere, incēpi, inceptus, begin ( <i>incipient</i> )
privātus, -a, -e, private, personal ( <i>private</i> )	pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus, sub- due, pacify
vadum, -i, n., ford, shoal	permittō, permettere, permisi, per- missus, allow, suffer, give up ( <i>permission</i> )
vel . . . vel, conj., either . . . or	pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui, —, extend, pertain to ( <i>pertinent</i> )
exeō, exire, exii, exitūrus, go out, go forth ( <i>exit</i> )	trānseō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsi- tus, go across, cross ( <i>transit</i> )
incendō, incendere, incendi, incē- sus, burn, kindle, excite ( <i>in- cendiary</i> )	

### THE HELVETIANS LEAVE THEIR TERRITORY

**479.** Post Orgetorigis mortem tamen Helvētii id quod cō-  
stituerant facere incēpērunt, ut ē finibus suis exirent. Ubi iam  
sē ad eam rem parātōs esse putāvērunt, oppida sua omnia et  
vīcōs et privāta aedificia incendērunt. Frūmentum et cibum  
sibi quemque domō ferre iussērunt. Persuāsērunt quibusdam  
cīvitātibus finitimis ut oppidis suis vīcisque incēnsis cum eīs  
exirent.

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire po-  
terant: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem  
Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum; mōns autem altissimus impendē-  
bat, ut facile pauci prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam  
Rōmānam, multō facilius, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et  
Allobrogum, qui nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn-  
nullis locīs vadō trānsitur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs esse vel vi coāctūrōs esse spērābant ut per suōs finēs eōs ire permitterent. Omnibus rēbus parātis diem conveniēndi dicunt.

Caesar per nūntiōs audīvit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere coepisse. Statiim properāvit Rōmā et quam maximis potuit itineribus<sup>1</sup> in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervēnit. Prōvinciae tōti quam maximum potuit mīlitum numerum imperāvit (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem qui erat ad Genāvam iussit rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī cognōvērunt, lēgātōs ad eum misērunt.

<sup>1</sup> **quam maximis** (potuit) **itineribus**, by as long journeys as possible. Sometimes Cæsar traveled a hundred miles a day.



DINING COUCHES

## LESSON LXXI

### THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION · DEONENT VERBS

#### 480. The Ablative of Specification.

*Gallōs virtūte superant, they surpass the Gauls in courage.*

a. Observe that the ablative *virtūte* tells in what respect the Gauls are surpassed. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Specification*.

**481. Rule for the Ablative of Specification.** *The ablative without a preposition is used to denote in what respect something is true.*

**482. Deponent Verbs.** Deponent verbs are verbs which have passive forms with active meanings. They occur in each of the regular conjugations, and are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive: first conjugation, -āri; second, -ēri; third, -i; fourth, -iri. Learn the principal parts, the meanings, and the conjugation of the deponent verbs in 669.

**483. The Active Forms and the Participles of Deponent Verbs.** A deponent verb has the following active forms:

*Fut. Infn.* hortātūrus esse      *Gerund*      hortandi, etc.

It has the participles of both voices :

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāns, <i>urging</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	hortātus, <i>having urged</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātūrus, <i>about to urge</i>	<i>Gerundive</i>	hortandus, <i>to be urged</i>

a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is active in meaning; the gerundive is passive. As the perfect participle is active in meaning, an ablative absolute (454, b) is seldom necessary with this participle; instead, the construction is the same as in English: as,

*Hortātus militēs signum dedit, having encouraged the soldiers  
he gave the signal, or, when he had encouraged, etc.*

## 484.

## VOCABULARY

cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, try, attempt ( <i>conative</i> )	proficiscor, proficiēsci, profectus sum, set out, march
exprior, experīrī, expertus sum, test, make trial of ( <i>experience</i> )	prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, go forward, advance ( <i>progress</i> )
hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge, entreat ( <i>exhortation</i> )	sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow ( <i>sequence</i> )
pollicor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, promise, offer	vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear, respect ( <i>reverence</i> )

## EXERCISES

485. 1. Experiēbāmini, cōnāmur, hortāberis. 2. Pollicēbantur, experiuntur, veriti erāmus. 3. Ut sequātur, verēns, sequendō. 4. Proficiscētetur, sequendi causā, secūtūrus esse. 5. Veriti sunt, secūtūrus, prōgredientur. 6. Cōnāturus, expertus esse, ad prōgrediendum. 7. Verēmini mortem. 8. Caesar hortātus est militēs ut ducēs sequerentur. 9. Illō diē exercitus proficiscēbātur. 10. Ipse cum celeritāte eōs sequētur. 11. His persuāserant ut eandem fortūnam belli experirentur. 12. Nātionēs Germāniae subsidium pollicitae erant. 13. Per finēs nostrōs ire cōnantur. 14. Puer patri virtūte similis erat.

486. 1. He was urging, they urge, they will follow. 2. She has followed, he fears, to attempt. 3. They had followed many miles. 4. You will set out, they will advance, going to follow. 5. Having followed, to have advanced. 6. Cæsar ordered the same two legions to set out. 7. They do not follow the tribune. 8. They will set out at daybreak in order to follow the enemy. 9. Although they promised grain, they were unable to bring it because of a lack of carts. 10. The poor soldiers are tired in body, but they surpass the enemy in speed.

## LESSON LXXII

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH CUM · THE IRREGULAR VERB FIŌ

**487.** **Temporal Clauses with Cum.** The Latin conjunction *cum*, -when, while, introduces temporal clauses (xx, e).

1. **Cum Caesar in Italiā erat, bellum in Galliā ortum est,** *when (while) Cæsar was in Italy, a war began in Gaul.*
2. **Caesar, cum id nūntiātum esset, in Galliam contendit,** *Cæsar, when this had been reported, hastened into Gaul.*
3. **Cum nūntius pervaenērit, Caesar prōgrediētur,** *when the messenger arrives, Cæsar will advance.*

a. Observe that the temporal clause in sentence 1 *fixes the time* at which the war began, and that its verb is in the indicative. Observe that the clause in sentence 2 *describes the circumstances* under which Cæsar was impelled to hasten into Gaul, and that its verb is in the subjunctive. Observe that the temporal clause in sentence 3 *refers to future time*, and that its verb is in the indicative.

**488. Rule for Temporal Clauses with Cum.** *Temporal clauses referring to past time, when introduced by cum, have their verb in the indicative if they fix the time of an action, but in the subjunctive if they describe the circumstances of an action. The indicative is used in temporal clauses introduced by cum referring to present or to future time.*

**489. The Irregular Verb FIŌ.** The verb *faciō*, which you have frequently used in the active voice, forms its present system in the passive from the irregular verb *fiō*. Learn the principal parts of *fiō* and its conjugation (668). Review the complete inflection of *faciō*. The passive voice of the compounds of *faciō* is inflected regularly.

490.

## VOCABULARY

<i>certus, -a, -um</i> , certain, sure	<i>paulō, adv.</i> , a little
<i>cum, conj.</i> , when, while	<i>fiō, fieri, factus sum</i> , be made,
<i>frūmentarius, -a, -um</i> , of grain; <i>rēs frūmentaria</i> , grain supply, provisions	be done, happen, <i>beāti</i>
<i>nē . . . quidem</i> , not even ( <i>the word or words between nē and quidem are emphasized</i> )	<i>certiōrem facere</i> (to make more sure), to inform
	<i>certior fieri</i> (to be made more sure), to be informed

## EXERCISES

491. 1. Fit, fiunt. 2. Fieri, factus esse. 3. Fiet, fiēbant, fiō. 4. Fiētis, fiēmus. 5. Eum certiōrem fēcimus. 6. Certior fit dē his rēbus. 7. Galli, cum oppidum cēpissent, omnēs captivōs interfēcērunt. 8. Cum dē inopiā reī frūmentariae certior factus esset, in ulteriōrem partem prōvinciae paulō ante medium noctem profectus est. 9. Nē amici quidem dē adventū tuō certiōrēs fient. 10. Cum proeli finem nox fēcisset, quīdam ad Caesarem vēnit. 11. Cum equitātum hostium vīdērunt, nostrī in eōs impetum fēcērunt.



A ROMAN STOVE

492. 1. You are becoming, they become. 2. It happens, to be made, it will be made. 3. When you come, you will learn this. 4. They have been informed. 5. I shall inform them. 6. When he was not able to persuade them, he went to the general. 7. Not even the general had been informed about this. 8. When the lieutenant had exhorted the soldiers, he gave the signal for battle.

## LESSON LXXIII

### READING LESSON

493.

### VOCABULARY

altitūdō, altitūdinis, <i>f.</i> , height ( <i>altitude</i> )	existimō, existimāre, existimāvi, existimātus, think, judge, consider ( <i>estimate</i> )
castellum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , fort, redoubt ( <i>castle</i> )	pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, beat, drive, defeat ( <i>repel</i> )
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, <i>f.</i> , cus- tom	perficiō, perficere, perfēci, perfec- tus, accomplish, finish ( <i>perfected</i> )
facultās, facultatis, <i>f.</i> , power, op- portunity ( <i>faculty</i> )	temperō, temperāre, temperāvi, temperātus, control, refrain, abstain from ( <i>temperance</i> )
fossa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , ditch, trench ( <i>fosse</i> )	

### CÆSAR REFUSES THE HELVETIANS PERMISSION TO GO THROUGH THE ROMAN PROVINCE

494. Cum lēgātī Helvētiōrum rogāvissent ut per prōvinciam ire permitterentur, Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat cōsulem Rōmānum interfectum (*esse*)<sup>1</sup> ab Helvētiis et exercitum eius pulsum (*esse*) et sub iugum missum (*esse*), concēdendum (*esse*) nōn putābat; neque Helvētiōs, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendi, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium militum cōgendōrum, quōs imperāverat, esset, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad conloquium dictūrum.

Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum fluit, ad montem Iūram, qui finis Sēquanōrum ab

<sup>1</sup> Frequently *esse* is omitted in Latin infinitive forms. From which infinitives in this lesson is it omitted?

Helvētiis dīvidit, milia passuum xviiiī mūrum in altitūdinem pedum xvi fossamque perdūxit. Eō opere perfectō praeſidia conlocāvit, castella mūnīvit, ut facilius eōs prohibēre posset.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnſtituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt, dixit sē propter cōnsuētūdinem populi Rōmānī iter nūlli per prōvinciam dare posse; et eōs prohibitūrum ostendit.



ROMAN ARMY CROSSING A BRIDGE OF BOATS

## LESSON LXXIV

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT INTRODUCED BY QUOD THE INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

#### 495. Substantive Clauses of Fact with *Quod*.

*Quod eum laudās, mihi grātum est, the fact that you praise him is pleasing to me.*

a. Observe that the clause *quod eum laudās* is the subject of *est*. Such clauses, which should be translated by *that* or *the fact that*, are called *Quod Clauses of Fact*, and have their verb in the indicative. They are found as the subject of a verb or in apposition with some word.

**496. Rule for Substantive Clauses of Fact.** *The indicative is used with quod in a substantive clause to state something which is regarded as a fact.*

#### 497. Adverbial Clauses with the Verb in the Indicative.

1. *Ibunt quā iter facillimum est, they will go where the way is easiest.*
2. *Quaedam nātiōnēs Galliae, ut diximus, fortissimae erant, certain nations of Gaul, as we said, were very brave.*

a. Observe that the clauses introduced by *quā* and *ut* are adverbial in nature, and that their verbs are in the indicative. *Quā* and *ut*, so used, are adverbs.

#### 498.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>condiciō, condiciōnis, f., terms, condition (condition)</i>	<i>cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coāctus, gather together, force, compel (with acc. and infin., or a substantive clause of purpose) (cogent)</i>
<i>lātitūdō, lātitūdinis, f., breadth, width (latitude)</i>	<i>ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out, go forth (egress)</i>
<i>lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, f., mission, embassy (legation)</i>	<i>pateō, patēre, patuī, —, lie open, extend, spread (patent)</i>
<i>numerus, -i, m., number (numerical)</i>	

**EXERCISES**

**499.** 1. Inopia commeātūs hostēs ēgredi coēgit. 2. Quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per montēs erat, cum legiōnibus īre contendit. 3. Quod maiōrēs manūs hostium coāctae sunt, ducem nōn perturbāvit. 4. Una rēs Caesarem impedivit, quod lātitūdinem flūminis nōn cognōverat. 5. Eōrum agrī in lātitūdinem centum et sex milia passuum patēbant. 6. Quod Galli vīcōs nostrōs vāstābant, Caesari persuāsit ut p̄incipēs eōrum in conloquium convocāret. 7. In Italiam contendit ut magnum numerum equitum et peditum cōgeret. 8. Quod condicōnēs pācis petunt, nūntiandum est. 9. Omnia paranda sunt ad ēgrediendum. 10. Ad cognōscendās condicōnēs dēditiōnis, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, lēgatiōnēs ab proximīs nātiōnibus missae erant.

**500.** 1. Bands of horsemen must be gathered together. 2. The fact that a great number of men are now going forth from the villages to make war disturbs us. 3. In the conference he said that the terms of surrender would be pleasing to him. 4. A great number of scouts went forth from the camp where the width of the river was least. 5. Do you know how many miles the lake extends? 6. The fact that the enemy were greatly confused was of help to us in attacking the town.



ROMAN LAMPS

## LESSON LXXV

### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS

#### 501. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements.

1. **Dicunt Germānōs, qui trāns Rhēnum incolant, ex finibus ēgredi,** *they say that the Germans, who live across the Rhine, are going forth from their territories.*
2. **Dixērunt Germānōs, qui trāns Rhēnum incolerent, ex finibus ēgredi,** *they said that the Germans, who lived across the Rhine, were going forth from their territories.*

a. Observe that in each sentence there is an indirect statement containing a subordinate clause. The direct statement of both sentences is the same, **Germāni, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex finibus ēgrediuntur.** Observe that the subordinate verbs are in the subjunctive in an indirect statement, and that the tense is changed according to the rule for the sequence of tenses (348-351).

#### 502. Rule for Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements. *The verbs of the subordinate clauses of an indirect statement are in the subjunctive. The tense of the subjunctive is decided by the rule for the sequence of tenses after the verb of saying, knowing, etc.*

a. Subordinate verbs that were in the subjunctive before they were indirectly quoted of course remain in the subjunctive.

#### 503.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>barbarus, -i, m., barbarian</b> ( <i>bar-barous</i> )	<b>cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvi, cōnsuētus</b> , become accustomed
<b>celeriter, adv., swiftly</b> ( <i>celerity</i> )	<b>moror, morāri, morātus sum</b> , hinder, delay ( <i>moratorium</i> )
<b>initium, ini'ti, n., beginning</b> ( <i>initial</i> )	<b>revertō, revertere, reverti, reversus</b> ( <i>or, in the present system, re-vortor, deponent</i> ), turn back, return ( <i>revert</i> )
<b>satis, adv. and n. noun, enough, sufficiently</b> ( <i>satisfy</i> )	

## EXERCISES

504. 1. Caesar pollicētur sē celeriter reversūrum esse quod barbarī initium belli faciant. 2. Caesar pollicitus est sē celeriter reversūrum esse quod barbarī initium belli facerent. 3. Explōrātōrēs nūntiāvērunt hostēs vicōs quōs oppugnāvissent nōn cēpisse. 4. Per captivōs cognōscit hostēs, quod agri et vici omnēs vāstāti sint, nūllum frūmentum habēre. 5. Putō cōnsilia quae mihi dare cōsuēveris bona fuisse. 6. Aliquis dicit dolōrem hostium tantum ēsse ut in castris Rōmānis audiātur. 7. Barbarī putāvērunt Caesarem, qui in Galliam citeriōrem quōque annō reverti cōsuēvisset, diūtius nōn morātūrum ēsse. 8. Habēsne satis nāvium ad nāvigandum?

505. 1. They say that the legions which are spending the winter across the river will return. 2. A scout announced that Labienus, who had captured the town, was awaiting the coming of Cæsar. 3. I think that the enemy will go forth from our territories because they have not enough food. 4. We know that many nations which contended with the Romans have been conquered. 5. The barbarians, when they had delayed three days in front of the camp, sent an embassy to our general.



ROMAN PITCHERS

## TENTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS LXIX-LXXV

**506.** Give the English meanings of the following words:

altitūdō	conveniō	hortor	pācō	rēs frūmentāria
augeō	cum	incendō	pateō	revertō
barbarus	ēgressor	incipiō	paulō	satis
castellum	exeō	initium	pellō	sequor
celeriter	existimō	lātitūdō	perficiō	signum
certus	experior	lēgātiō	permittō	temperō
cōgō	facultās	libertās	pertineō	trānseō
condiciō	ferō	mōror	polliceor	vadum
cōnor	fīō	mōrs	privātus	vel . . . vel
cōnsuēscō	fossa	nē . . . quidem	proficīscor	vereor
cōnsuētūdō	frūmentārius	numerus	prōgredior	vis

**507.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

test, make trial of	promise, offer	barbarian
allow, suffer, give up	terms, condition	not even
come together, assemble	urge, entreat	try, attempt
enough, sufficiently	either . . . or	death
accomplish, finish	ditch, trench	sign, signal
bear, bring ; report, say	go across, cross	a little
mission, embassy	certain, sure	height
become accustomed	fort, redoubt	begin
turn back, return	breadth, width	follow
extend, pertain to	private, personal	swiftly
lie open, extend, spread	set out, march	number
control, refrain, abstain from	increase, enlarge	hinder, delay
power, opportunity	fear, respect	beginning
be made, be done, happen	burn, kindle, excite	ford, shoal
force, strength, power, might	go forward, advance	go out, go forth
gather together, force, compel	think, judge, consider	of grain
beat, drive, defeat	subdue, pacify	freedom
grain supply, provisions	when, while	custom

**508.** Decline each noun in 506. Conjugate each deponent verb throughout. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural. Give the infinitives and the participles of each verb. Conjugate *ferō* and *fio* throughout.

**509.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 506. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**510.** Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. Gerundive with *ad* and with *causā*
2. Passive periphrastic conjugation
3. Ablative of specification
4. Temporal clauses with *cum*
5. Substantive clauses of fact with *quod*
6. Adverbial clauses with the verb in the indicative
7. Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse

**511.** Give Latin words suggested by the following English words :

popular	magnanimous	petition	prefect	total
temporal	audible	posterity	depredation	fidelity
real	local	intellect	malefactor	itinerary
neutral	habitable	novelty	humility	science
vulnerable	lucid	extremity	longitude	premium
ultimate	subterranean	solitude	identity	fortitude
post mortem	numerous	exhortation	altitude	egress
versatile	cognizant	tenant	deity	ignite
subsidiary	innocent	instruction	factory	satisfy
nocturnal	permanent	magnitude	postulate	assimilate
impetuous	alternate	gladiator	contention	minimize
final	urban	avocation	mission	nullify
insular	cogent	multitude	position	intervene
military	marine	pedestrian	audacity	contradict
hostile	naval	constitution	vicinity	expatriate

## SUMMARY

## THE USES OF NOUNS AND VERBS

**512.** From your study of the book to this point you are supposed to be familiar with the uses of nouns and verbs summarized below.

## USES OF NOUNS

*Nominative*

- Subject, 27, 28  
Predicate noun, 86, 87

*Genitive*

- Possessive, 43, 44  
Material, p. 79, note 1  
Partitive, 308, 309  
Objective, 380, 381

*Dative*

- Indirect object, 56, 57  
With adjectives, 110, 111  
With compound verbs, 424, 425  
Purpose, 426, 427  
Reference, 426, 428  
With special verbs, 432, 433

*Accusative*

- Direct object, 32, 33  
Place to which, 179, 180, 230

- With prepositions, 193  
Extent of time and space, 332,  
333  
Subject of infinitive, 399

*Ablative*

- Place where, 58, 59  
Means, 121, 122  
Manner, 128, 129  
Accompaniment, 142, 143  
Place from which, 177, 178, 230  
Cause, 184, 185  
With prepositions, 194  
Time, 218, 219  
Agent, 242, 243  
Separation, 281, 282  
Degree of difference, 320, 321  
Absolute, 452-455  
Specification, 480, 481

## 513.

## USES OF VERBS

*Indicative*

Main verb: Declaratory sentence

Main verb: Question

Subordinate verb: Causal clause with **quod**, 50, 51

Subordinate verb: Temporal clause with **cum**, 487, 488

Subordinate verb: Relative clause

Subordinate verb: Substantive clause of fact with **quod**, 495, 496

Subordinate verb: Adverbial clause with **qua** and **ut**, 497

*Subjunctive*

Purpose clause: Adverbial, 343, 344

Purpose clause: Substantive, 355, 356

Result clause: Adverbial, 357, 358

Indirect Question: Substantive, 372, 373

Temporal clause: with **cum**, 487, 488

Subordinate clause in indirect statements, 501, 502

*Infinitive*

Subject of another verb, 393

Complement of another verb, 394

Object of another verb, 398

Verb of an indirect statement, 401

*Participle*

As an adjective, 443

Ablative absolute, 452-455

Equivalent to a clause of time, concession, cause, condition, etc., 444, 445

*Gerund*

As a noun, 460

With **ad** or **causā** to show purpose, 461

*Gerundive*

With **ad** or **causā** to show purpose, 472

With forms of **sum** in the passive periphrastic conjugation, 473

Whenever in your translation of the subsequent Selections for Reading you meet a noun or a verb, at once ask yourself which of these uses the particular noun or verb has. Then translate accordingly.



THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETIANS

## SELECTIONS FOR READING

### CÆSAR: THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETIANS (CONTINUED FROM 494)

*The Helvetians are allowed to proceed through the land of the Sequani*

514. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiecti, vadis Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, trānsire cōnātī sunt, sed mūnitioñe et tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstítērunt. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. His cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum misērunt. Dumnorix apud Sēquānōs plūrimum poterat<sup>1</sup> et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Etiam cupiditāte rēgnī adductus est. Itaque Sēquānis persuāsit ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire permitterent et obsidēs inter sēsē darent: Sēquāni, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibērent; Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trānsirent. 10

*Cæsar opposes this plan of the Helvetians and crosses the Rhone*

515. Caesar certior factus est Helvētiōs cōstituisse per agrum Sēquānorūm et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finib⁹ aberant, quae civitās erat in prōvinciā. Inimicōs populi Rōmāni eam regiōnem incolere nōlēbat. Ob eam causam ei mūnitioñi quam 15 fēcerat Labiēnum lēgātum praeſēcit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus<sup>2</sup> contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscriptsit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernis ēdūxit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quīnque legiōnib⁹ ire contendit. Ibi quaedam civitātēs, locis 20

<sup>1</sup> plūrimum poterat, had a great deal of influence. <sup>2</sup> magnis itineribus, by long journeys. See p. 185, note 1.

superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnātae sunt. Complūribus his proeliis victis,<sup>1</sup> ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae<sup>2</sup> extrēnum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, 5 ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūxit. Hi sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmi.

*The Haedui and other tribes ask for Cæsar's help against the Helvetians*

516. Helvētii interim per finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās dūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervenerant eōrumque agrōs vāstābant. Haedui sē suaque<sup>3</sup> ab eis dēfendere nōn poterant. 10 Itaque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ut auxilium rogārent. Ei dixērunt paene in cōspectū exercitū nostri agrōs vāstāri, liberōs in servitūtem abdūci, oppida expugnāri nōn dēbuisse.<sup>4</sup> Eōdem tempore Ambarri Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt sēsē, vāstātis agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. 15 Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vīcōs habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar diūtius nōn exspectandum esse<sup>5</sup> cōstituit.

*Cæsar destroys one division of the Helvetians*

517. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum fluit. Id Helvētii trānsibant. Ubi per 20 explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam fere partem citrā flūmen Ararim relictam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs adgressus magnam 25 partem interfēcit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Translate complūribus with proeliis and his with victis. <sup>2</sup> The Roman province on the Italian side of the Alps. <sup>3</sup> suaque, and their possessions.

<sup>4</sup> vāstāri . . . nōn dēbuisse, ought not to have been etc. <sup>5</sup> nōn exspectandum esse, that he must not wait. The verb, however, is used impersonally.

*The Helvetians send an embassy to Caesar*

**518.** Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Arari<sup>1</sup> fēcit atque ita exercitum trādūxit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum illum ūnō diē flūmen trānsisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mīserunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō pīncēps fuit. In conloquiō Caesar im- 5 perāvit ut obsidēs populō Rōmānō darentur. Dīvicō respondit Helvētiōs obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuēuisse. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit..

*Cæsar follows the Helvetians*

**519.** Posterō diē castra ex eō locō mōvērunt. Idem fēcit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, 10 quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduis atque eōrum sociis coēgerat, praemīsit, ut vidērent quās in partēs hostēs iter facerent. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen<sup>2</sup> secūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commisērunt; et pauci dē nostris interfecti sunt. Quō proeliō dēlectātī Helvētiī, quod paucis 15 equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum vicerant, audācius in nostrōs impetum facere coēpērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, et ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum pīrīmū<sup>3</sup> quīnque mīlia passuum interessent. 20

*Cæsar prepares to attack the Helvetians*

**520.** Tandem ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs mīlia passuum ab ipsiū castrīs octō abesse. Dē tertīā vigiliā Labiēnum lēgātūm cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibūs qui iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iussit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs 25 contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mīsit. Cōnsidius cum explōrātōribus praemissus est.

<sup>1</sup> in Arari, over the Arar.    <sup>2</sup> novissimum agmen, the rear.    <sup>3</sup> pīrīmū (agmen), vanguard.

*Considius becomes panic-stricken*

521. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris mille passuum abesset, neque (ut posteā ex captivis intelligēxit) aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō<sup>1</sup> ad eum properāvit. Dixit mon-  
5 tem quem. Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluisset ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armīs cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās ad proximum collem dūxit et aciem instrūxit. Labiēnus inter-  
rim, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat. Multō diē<sup>2</sup> per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Hel-  
10 vētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi nūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōsuēverat intervallō, hostēs secūtus est et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra posuit.

*The battle between Cæsar and the Helvetians*

522. Posterō diē cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem dūxit equitātumque, ut sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō aciem legiōnum quattuor instrūxit. In summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximā aestāte cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia<sup>3</sup> conlocāvit. Helvētiū cum omnibus suis carris secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum 20 contulērunt; ipsī sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. Cae-  
sar hortātus suōs proelium commīsīt. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi hostēs ad montem, qui circiter mille passuum aberat, sē recipere coepērunt. Diū atque āriter pugnāvērunt. Diūtius 25 cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut cooperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī<sup>4</sup> ad impedimenta et

<sup>1</sup> equō admissō, at full gallop. <sup>2</sup> multō diē, late in the day. <sup>3</sup> auxilia, auxiliaries. <sup>4</sup> alterī . . . alterī, one body . . . the other.

carrōs suōs iērunt. Ad multam noctem<sup>1</sup> etiam ad impedimenta contendērunt, quod Helvētiī prō vāllo carrōs conlocāverant et ē locō superiore in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant. Tandem nostri impedimenta et castra cēpērunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filii captus est.

5

*The Helvetians retreat and offer to surrender*

523. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt. In finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt. Nostrī autem propter vulnera militum eōs sequi nōn potuērunt. Caesar litterās nūntiōsque ad Lingonēs misit et imperāvit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. 10 Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi coepit.

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum misērunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs<sup>2</sup> prōiēcissent pācemque petissent atque eōs in eō locō quō tum erant suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruē- 15 runt. Eō cum Caesar pervēnisset, obsidēs et arma postulāvit. Obsidibus armisque trāditīs, eōs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profecti, revertī iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germāni, 20 qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finib⁹ in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

<sup>1</sup> ad multam noctem, until late at night.    <sup>2</sup> ad pedēs, at his feet.



CARRI

## CÆSAR: THE STORY OF THE ADUATUCI

*The Aduatuci prepare to make a desperate resistance to Cæsar*

524. Aduatuci<sup>1</sup> cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō<sup>2</sup> Nerviis veniēbant. Hāc pugnā<sup>3</sup> nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; omnibus oppidis castellisque dēsertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitūm contulērunt. Quod<sup>4</sup> ex omnibus in circuitū partibus<sup>5</sup> altissimās rūpēs habēbat, sed ūnā ex parte aditus relinquēbātur. Quem locum duplīcī altissimō mūrō mūnierant et magna saxa in mūrō conlocābant.

*From their walls they taunt the Romans*

525. Prīmō adventū exercitū nostri<sup>6</sup> crēbrās ēruptiōnēs faciēbant parvisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant. Postea, vāllō crēbrisque castellis ā Rōmānis circummūniti, oppidō<sup>7</sup> sē continēbant. Ubi, vineis āctis<sup>8</sup> aggere exstrūctō, turrim<sup>9</sup> procul cōstitui vidērunt, prīmum inridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus<sup>10</sup> coepērunt, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō<sup>11</sup> instruēbātur. Rogāvērunt quibus manibus aut quibus vīribus tantuli<sup>12</sup> hominēs tantam turrim in mūrō<sup>13</sup> conlocāre possent.

<sup>1</sup> The Aduatuci lived about the river Mosa (Meuse), in what is now Belgium.  
<sup>2</sup> for an aid = to aid. What use of the case?   <sup>3</sup> The reference is to a battle in which the Nervii had been almost annihilated.   <sup>4</sup> this town.   <sup>5</sup> ex . . . partibus, from all parts in a circuit = all around.   <sup>6</sup> prīmō . . . nostri, as soon as our army got there. What literally?   <sup>7</sup> oppidō = in oppidō.   <sup>8</sup> vineis āctis, the vineæ had been brought up. These vineæ were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were building an agger, undermining a wall, or filling up a ditch in front of fortifications. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers.   <sup>9</sup> turrim = turrem.   <sup>10</sup> increpitāre vōcibus, taunt. What literally?   <sup>11</sup> ab tantō spatiō, so far away.   <sup>12</sup> To the taller Belgians the Romans looked like "little chaps."   <sup>13</sup> The Aduatuci, unacquainted with Roman siege operations, supposed the Romans intended to hoist the tower upon their wall.

*But they lose confidence and offer to surrender*

**526.** Ubi turrim movēri<sup>1</sup> et appropinquāre mūris vidērunt, novā speciē commōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī<sup>2</sup> sunt: Aduatucōs nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine auxiliō deōrum bellum gerere, quod tantās māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte movēre possent; itaque sē suaque<sup>5</sup> omnia eōrum potestātī permīssūrōs esse. Īnum<sup>3</sup> petēbant, nē Caesar sē armis privāret. Omnes ferē finitimi erant inimicī, ā quibus sē dēfendere armis trāditis nōn poterant. Mālēbant quamvis fortūnam<sup>4</sup> ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab inimicīs interfici.

*Cæsar says they must disarm, but promises them protection*

**527.** Ad haec Caesar respondit: Magis cōsuētūdine suā<sup>5</sup> 10 quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem sē cōnservātūrum esse; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi<sup>6</sup> armis trāditis; id quod in<sup>7</sup> Nerviis fēcisset factūrum esse, et finitimis imperātūrum esse nē iniūriam eīs inferrent. Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur sē factūrōs esse dixērunt. Armōrum tanta multi- 15 tūdō dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta est ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem<sup>8</sup> acervī eōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter pars tertia, ut posteā cognōvit Caesar, cēlāta<sup>9</sup> atquē in oppidō retenta est.

*A brave dash for freedom, with a tragic ending*

**528.** Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudi militēsque ex oppidō 20 exire iussit. Oppidānī, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs<sup>10</sup> praeſidia dēductūrōs crēdiderant, tertiā vigiliā, quā facilis ad nostrās

<sup>1</sup> was moving. <sup>2</sup> From loquor. <sup>3</sup> one thing, namely, nē . . . privāret.  
<sup>4</sup> quamvis fortūnam, any fate whatsoever. <sup>5</sup> according to his custom. <sup>6</sup> nisi  
 is to be translated with the ablative absolute armis trāditis, unless their arms  
 were given up. <sup>7</sup> in the case of. <sup>8</sup> summam . . . altitūdinem, top. <sup>9</sup> Supply  
 est. <sup>10</sup> nostrōs, our commanders.

mūnitionēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis subitō ex oppidō ēruptionem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut Caesar ante imperāverat, ignibus<sup>1</sup> signō factō, ex proximis castellis eō nostri properāvērunt. Āriter hostēs pugnābant in extrēmā spē salūtis<sup>2</sup> 5 iniquō locō contrā nostrōs, qui ex vallō turribusque tēla iaciēbant. Interfectis ad<sup>3</sup> hominum milibus quattuor, reliquōs in oppidum nostri reiēcērunt. Posterō diē, intrōmissis militib⁹ nostris, sectiōnem eius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēndidit.<sup>4</sup> Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum<sup>5</sup> numerus ad eum relātus est milium 10 quinquāgintā trium.<sup>6</sup>

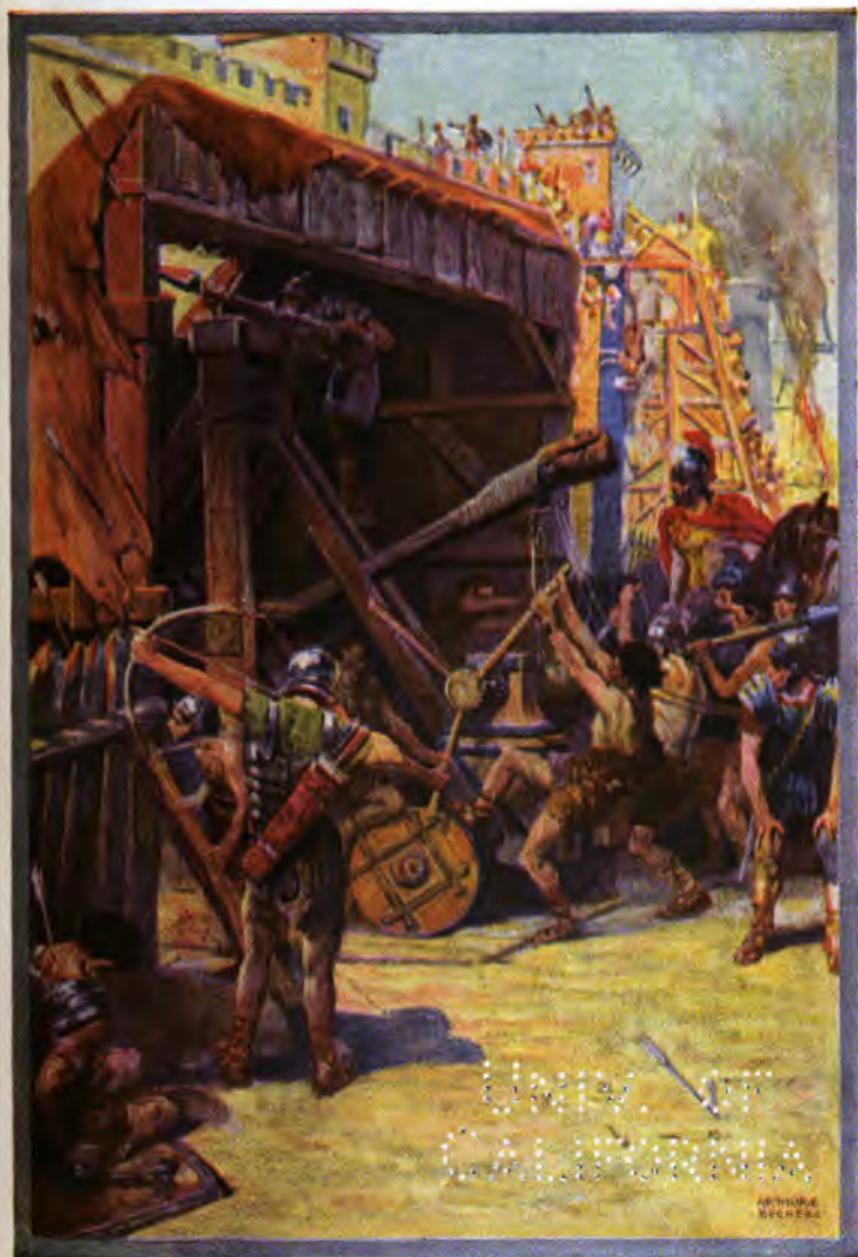
## STORIES OF HERCULES

*The infant Hercules*

**529.** Herculēs, Alcmēnae filius, oīl in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dicitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. Sed Iūnō, rēgina deōrum, Alcmēnam nōn amāvit et Herculem, qui adhuc infāns erat, interficere voluit. Misit igitur duo serpentis<sup>me-</sup> 15 vissimōs, qui mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnerānt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre dormiēbat. Nōn tamen in cūm<sup>sed</sup> scūtō magnō dormiēbant. Serpentēs iam appropinquāvānt et scūtum movēbant. Itaque pueri ē somnō excitāti sunt.

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce auxilium petiō<sup>at</sup> 20 Herculēs ipse parvis manibus serpentēs statim prehendit<sup>et</sup> et colla eōrum magnā vi compressit. Hōc modō serpentēs ā<sup>per</sup> imperfecti sunt. Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmō<sup>et</sup> ditō, marītum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accen<sup>et</sup>

<sup>1</sup> by fires. <sup>2</sup> in . . . salūtis, as their last chance of saving themselves. Literally? <sup>3</sup> about, an adverb. <sup>4</sup> sectiōnem . . . vēndidit, Caesar sold the whole town (the people and their property) as booty. <sup>5</sup> souls. We say so many "head" of cattle. <sup>6</sup> relātus . . . trium, was reported to be 53,000. These 53,000 captives were probably driven to the Province or to Italy and sold in lots to suit purchasers, there to wear out their lives in bondage.



WITH THE ROMANS AT THE FRONT

၁၂၃၀ ၁၂၃၁ ၁၂၃၂

gladium rapuit ad auxilium ferendum ; tum ad puerōs properāvit, sed, ubi ad locum vēnit, rem mīram vīdit, Herculēs enim ridēbat et serpentēs interfectōs dēmōnstrābat.

*Hercules studies music*

530. Herculēs ā puerō (*from boyhood*) corpus diligenter exercēbat ; magnam partem diēi in palaestrā cōnsūmēbat ; di-  
dicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conicere. His exercitatiō-  
nibus vīrēs eius cōfirmātæ sunt. In mūsicā ā Linō centaurō  
ērudiēbātur. Hi centaurī equi erant, sed caput hominis habē-  
bant. Huic arti nōn diligenter Herculēs studēbat. Hāc rē cog-  
nitā, Linus puerum reprehendēbat, quod nōn studiōsus erat. 10  
Tum Herculēs, irā commōtus, citharam subitō rapuit, et omni-  
bus vīribus caput magistri infēlicis percussit.<sup>1</sup> Ille ictū prōstrā-  
tus<sup>2</sup> est, et paulō post ē vitā excessit, neque quisquam posteā  
id officium suscipere voluit.

*Hercules consults the oracle*

531. Herculēs post paucōs annōs cōstituit ad ḍrāculum 15 Delphicum ire, hoc enim ḍrāculum erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis plūrimis dōnīs ornātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, Pȳthia, et cōsilium dabat iīs qui ad ḍrāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apol-  
line docēbātur et voluntātem dei hominibus ēnūtiābat. Her- 20 culēs igitur, qui Apollinem maximē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Pȳthia iussit eum ad urbem Tiryntha ire et Eurysthei rēgis omnia imperāta facere. His auditīs, Herculēs ad illam urbem contendit, et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādidit. Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eurysthei tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs 25 quōs ille imperāverat cōnfēcit, hōc enim ūnō modō tantum sce-  
lus<sup>3</sup> expiārī potuit. Dē his labōribus plūrima ā poētis scripta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētæ nārrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

<sup>1</sup> From percutiō. <sup>2</sup> From prōsternō. <sup>3</sup> The murdering of his own children.

*The golden apples of the Hesperides*

532. Eurystheus labōrem undecimum Herculi imposuit gravōrem quam eōs quōs anteā imperāverat. Imperāvit enim ei ut aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum ferret. Hesperidēs autem nymphae erant quaedam pulcherrimae, quae in terrā longinquā 5 habitābant et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Iūnōne commissa erant. Multi hominēs, aurī cupiditāte inducti, haec pōma auferre iam anteā cōnāti erant. Rēs tamen difficillima erat, nam hortus in quō pōma erant mūrō ingenti undique circumdatus est; prae-tereā dracō quidam, qui centum capita habuit, portam horti 10 diligenter custōdiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculi imperāverat erat difficillimum, nōn sōlum ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed etiam quod Herculēs omnīnō ignōrābat quō in locō hortus situs esset.

*Atlas, who upheld the heavens*

533. Herculēs quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, sed cōnstituit 15 Eurystheō pārēre; et, cum iussa eius accēpisset, proficisci mātūrāvit. Ā multis mercātōribus quaesivit quō in locō Hes- peridēs habitārent; nihil tamen certum reperire potuit. Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit et multa pericula subiit. Tandem, cum in his itineribus tōtum annum cōnsūmpsisset, ad extrēmām 20 partem orbis, quae proxima erat Ōceanō, pervēnit. Hīc stābat vir quidam, nōmine Atlās, qui caelum umerī sustinēbat, nē in terram dēcideret. Herculēs, tantum labōrem magnopere mirātus, paulō post in conloquium cum Atlante vēnit, et, cum causam itineris docuissest, auxilium ab eō petiit.

*Hercules takes the place of Atlas*

25 534. Atlās autem potuit Herculem maximē iuvāre, ille enim erat pater Hesperidum et bene scīvit quō in locō esset hortus. Cum igitur audīvisset quam ob causam Herculēs vēnisset, dixit:

"Ipse ad hortum ibō, et filiābus<sup>1</sup> meis persuādēbō ut pōma suā sponte<sup>2</sup> trādant." Herculēs, cum haec audivisset, magnopere gāvisus est,<sup>3</sup> nōluit enim vim adhibēre; cōnstituit igitur oblātum<sup>4</sup> auxilium accipere. Atlās tamen postulāvit ut, dum ipse abesset (*while he was himself away*), Herculēs caelum umeris sustinē<sup>5</sup> ret. Hoc negōtium Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs difficillima erat, tōtum pondus caeli continuōs complūris diēs sōlus sustinuit.

*The return of Atlas*

535. Atlās interēā abierat<sup>6</sup> et ad hortum Hesperidum, qui pauca milia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē<sup>6</sup> contulerat. 10 Eō cum vēnisset, causam veniendi exposuit et filiās vehementer hortātus est ut pōma trāderent. Illae diū haerēbant, nōlēbant enim hoc facere, quod ab ipsā Iūnōne, ut ante dictum est, hoc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba eis persuāsit ut sibi<sup>7</sup> pārērent, et pōma ad Herculem rettulit. Herculēs 15 interēā, cum plūris diēs exspectāvisset, neque ullam fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēpisset, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tandem quīntō diē Atlantem redeuntem<sup>8</sup> vidi et mox magnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tantō beneficiō ēgit, in Graeciam proficisci mātūrāvit. 20

*Nessus, the Centaur*

536. Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscribere<sup>9</sup> longum est.<sup>10</sup> Tandem aētāte prōvectus<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The ending -ābus is regularly used for the dative and ablative plural of dea and of filia. <sup>2</sup> suā sponte, of their own accord. <sup>3</sup> gāvisus est, from gaudeō, which is deponent in the perfect system. <sup>4</sup> From offerō. <sup>5</sup> From abeō. From what verb does aberat come? <sup>6</sup> quam celerrimē, as quickly as possible. Quam with a superlative usually has the force as . . . as possible (see p. 185, note 1). <sup>7</sup> sibi is an indirect reflexive here, and refers to the subject of persuāsit rather than to that of pārērent. <sup>8</sup> Present participle of redeō.

<sup>9</sup> See 393. <sup>10</sup> longum est, it would be tedious. What is the subject of est? <sup>11</sup> From prōvehō. How translated?

Dēraniram, Oeneī filiam, in mātrimōnium dūxit<sup>1</sup>; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine<sup>2</sup> Eunomum, cāsū interfēcit. Itaque cum uxōre ē finibus eius cīvitātis exire mātrarāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt, 5 quod nūllō ponte iūnctum erat, et, dum quaerunt quō modō flūmen trāicerent, accurrit centaurus quidam, nōmine Nessus, qui auxilium viātōribus obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem in tergum Nessi imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō<sup>3</sup> trānsiit, quā flūmen angustissimum erat. At Nessus, paulum in aquam 10 prōgressus, ad ripam subitō revertit et Dēraniram auferre cōnābātur. Quod cum animadvertisset<sup>4</sup> Herculēs, irā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessi sagittā trānsfixit.

*The poisoned robe*

537. Nessus igitur sagittā Herculis trānsfixus humi (*on the ground*) iacēbat; at, nē occāsiōnem sui ulciscendi dimitteret, 15 ita locūtus est: "Si vis amōrem mariti tui cōservāre, aliquid huius sanguinis, qui ē pectore meō effunditur, sūmēs et repōnēs. Tum si quandō suspicō in mentem tuam vēnerit,<sup>5</sup> vestem mariti hōc sanguine īficiēs." Haec locūtus, Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēranira autem, nihil mali<sup>6</sup> suspicāta, imperāta fēcit. 20 Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem propinquum, suscēpit et, cum rēgem ipsum cum filiis interfēcisset, Iolēn, filiam Eurytī, captīvam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit, nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmunturium appulit et, in terram ēgressus, āram cōstituit, ut Iovī sacrificāret. Dum 25 tamen sacrificium parat, Licham, comitem suum, domum misit

<sup>1</sup> in mātrimōnium dūxit, married: How literally? <sup>2</sup> See 481. <sup>3</sup> From nō; by swimming; see 460. <sup>4</sup> quod cum animadvertisset, when he had noticed this; refers to the whole preceding sentence. Quod referring to a preceding sentence is commonly translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun. <sup>5</sup> vēnerit, shall have come; but it is better translated comes. <sup>6</sup> Partitive genitive with nihil; nothing of evil = no evil.

ut yestem albam referret ; mōs enim erat apud antiquōs vestem albam gerere <sup>1</sup> cum sacrificiā facerent. At Dēranīra, verita <sup>2</sup> Iolēn, vestem, priusquam Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessi infēcit.

*The death of Hercules*

538. Herculēs, nihil mali suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit statim induit; post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia membra sēnsit, et quae causa eius rei esset magnopere mirābatur. Dolōre paene exanimātus vestem dētrahere cōnātus est; illa tamen in corpore haesit neque ullō modō divelli potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogum, quem summā celeritāte extriūxerat, sē imposuit. Quod cum fēcisset, eōs qui circumstābant orāvit ut rogum quam celerrimē accenderent. Omnes diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quidam, ad misericordiam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscurantur, Herculēs dēnsā nūbe vēlātus a Iove in Olympum abreptus est. <sup>15</sup>

STORIES OF ULYSSES

*Polyphemus, the one-eyed giant*

539. Ulixēs comitēsque, postquam tōtam noctem rēmis contenterant, ad terram ignōtam nāvem appulērunt; tum, quod nātūram eius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs, cum duodecim ē sociis in terram ēgressus, locum explorārē cōstituit. Paulum a litore prōgressi, ad antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitāri sēnsērunt, eius enim introitum arte et manibus <sup>3</sup> mūnitum esse animadvertērunt. Mox, etsi intellegēbant sē nōn sine periculō id factūrōs esse, antrum intrāvērunt. Quod cum fēcissent,

<sup>1</sup> gerere, to wear; subject of erat. <sup>2</sup> verita, fearing; the perfect participle of some deponent verbs is often translated like a present participle. <sup>3</sup> arte et manibus, by skill and hands = by skillful hands.

magnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsīs ingentibus conditam. Dum tamen mīrantur quis eam sēdem incoleret, sonitum terribilem audivērunt, et oculis ad portam versīs, mōnstrum horibile vidērunt, quod hūmānam speciem et figūram sed corpus 5 ingēns habuit. Cum autem animadvertisserint gigantem ūnum tantum<sup>1</sup> oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmām iam accēperant.

*The giant's supper*

540. Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quidam, qui īsulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolebant; ibi enim 10 Vulcānus, praeſes fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servi Cy- clōpēs erant, officinam habēbat. Graecī igitur, simul ac mōn- strum vidērunt, terrōre paene exanimātī, in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur. Polyphēmus autem (ita enim gigās appellātus est) pecora sua in spēluncam 15 ēgit; tum, cum saxō ingenti portam obstrūxiſſet, ignem mediō in antrō accendit. Hōc factō, omnia oculō perlūstrābat, et cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte antri cēlāri, magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Qui estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrō- nēs?" Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs esse neque 20 praedandi causā vēniſſe, sed ā Trōiā redeuntēs,<sup>2</sup> vi tempestā- tum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs esse; ḍrāvit etiam ut sē sine iniūriā dimitteret. Tum Polyphēmus quaesīvit ubi nāvis eōrum esſet. Ulixēs autem respondit nāvem in rūpēs coniectam et omnino perfrāctam<sup>3</sup> esse. Polyphēmus, nūllō respōnsō datō, duo ē 25 sociis manū corripuit et membris eōrum divulſis<sup>4</sup> carnem<sup>5</sup> dēvorāre coepit.

<sup>1</sup> **tantum**, *only*.   <sup>2</sup> Modifies **sē** understood from the preceding clause; *that they, while returning*.   <sup>3</sup> From *perfringō*.   <sup>4</sup> From *divellō*.   <sup>5</sup> From *carō*.

*No way of escape*

**541.** Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere possent, sed, omnī spē salūtis dēpositā, mortem praesentem exspectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribili cēnā dēpulsa est, humi (*on the ground*) prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum 5 vidisset Ulixēs, arbitrātus est mōnstrum interficiendum esse. Prīnum cōnstituit explōrāre quā ratiōne ex antrō ēvādere possent. At, cum saxum animadvertisset quō introitus obstrūctus erat, intellēxit mortem Polyphēmi auxiliō sibi nōn futūram esse. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitūdō ut nē ā decem 10 quidem hominibus āmovēri posset. Ulixēs igitur hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad sociōs rediit; qui, cum intellēxissent quō in locō<sup>1</sup> rēs esset, nūllā spē salūtis oblātā, dē fortūnis suis dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen vehementer hortātus est nē animōs dēmitterent,<sup>2</sup> et dēmōnstrāvit sē ipsōs iam anteā ē multis et 15 magnis periculis ēvāsisse.

*A plan for vengeance*

**542.** Ortā lūce<sup>3</sup> Polyphēmus, iam ē somnō excitātus, idem quod<sup>4</sup> hesternō diē fēcit, correptis enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore ex antrō prōgressus est. Quod cum 20 vidērent Graeci, magnam in spēm vēnērunt<sup>5</sup> sē post paulum ēvāsūrōs. Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsī sunt, nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit. Graeci, omnī spē salūtis dēpositā, lāmentīs lacrimisque sē dēdidērunt. Ulixēs vērō, qui, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir 25

<sup>1</sup> locō, state, condition, not place. <sup>2</sup> nē . . . dēmitterent, not to lose heart.

<sup>3</sup> ortā lūce = prīmā lūce, at daybreak; ortā is from orior. <sup>4</sup> idem quod, the same as. <sup>5</sup> magnam . . . vēnērunt, had great hopes.

fortis fuit, etsi bene intellegēbat rem in discrimine esse, nōn dum omnīnō dēspērābat. Tandem, postquam diū tōtō animō cōgitāvit, hoc cēpit cōnsilium. Ē lignis quae in antrō reposita sunt pālum magnum dēlēgit; hunc summā cum diligentia  
 5 praeacūtum fēcit; tum, postquam sociis quid<sup>1</sup> fieri vellet ostendit, redditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

*Polyphemus thrice drains a wine bowl*

**543.** Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit et eōdem modō quō anteā cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī prōmpsīt,<sup>2</sup> quem forte, ut in tālibus rēbus saepe accidit, sēcum attulō lerat, et postquam magnam crātēram vīnō replēvit, gigantem ad bibendum prōvocāvit. Polyphēmus, qui numquām anteā vīnum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit.<sup>3</sup> Quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium crātēram replēri iubēret. Tum, cum quaesivisset quō nōmine  
 15 Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem<sup>4</sup> appellāri. Quod cum audivisset Polyphēmus, ita locūtus est: "Ut tibi grātiām prō tantō beneficiō referam, tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." His dictīs, cibō vīnōque gravātus recubuit<sup>5</sup> et post breve tempus somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs, sociīs convocā-  
 20 tīs, dixit: "Habēmus quam petiimus facultātem.<sup>6</sup> Tanta occāsiō nōn omittenda est."

*Noman*

**544.** Hāc ūrātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum pālum<sup>7</sup> igni calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmī, dum dormit, flagrante lignō trānsfōdit. Quō factō, omnēs in diversās spēluncae partīs sē abdi-  
 25 dērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre, quod necesse fuit,<sup>8</sup> ē somnō

<sup>1</sup> In what case is quid?   <sup>2</sup> From prōmō.   <sup>3</sup> From hauriō.   <sup>4</sup> Noman.

<sup>5</sup> From recumbō.   <sup>6</sup> quam . . . facultātem = facultātem quam petiimus.

<sup>7</sup> extrēmum pālum = extrēmam partem pālli.   <sup>8</sup> quod necesse fuit, which was necessary = necessarily; the reference is to what follows.

excitatus, clāmōrem terribilem sustulit,<sup>1</sup> et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixī manum inicere cōnābatur. Hoc tamen, quod iam omnīnō caecus erat, nūllō modō efficere potuit. Intereā reliqui Cyclōpēs, clāmōre auditō, undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt, et apud introitum adstantēs, quid Polyphēmus ageret<sup>2</sup> quaesi- 5 vērunt et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse et magnō dolōre adfici. Cum tamen cēterī quaesivissent quis ei<sup>3</sup> vim intulisset, respon- dīt ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Hōc auditō, Cyclōpēs, eum in īsāniām incidiſſe arbitrāti,<sup>4</sup> abiērunt. 10

### *The escape*

**545.** Sed Polyphēmus, cum sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsisset, furōre atque āmentiā impulsus, Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit. Tandem cum portam invēnissēt, saxum quō obstrūcta<sup>5</sup> erat āmōvit, ut pecus ad agrōs exiret. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit, et cum quaeque ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum eius manibus<sup>15</sup> tractābat, nē virī inter ovēs exire possent. Quod cum animad- vertisset Ulixēs, hoc cōsilia*m* iniit, bene enim intellēxit omnem spem salūtis iam in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōnī. Prīnum trēs quās vīdit pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit. Quibus inter sē<sup>6</sup> vīminibus cōnexis,<sup>7</sup> ūnum ex sociis ventribus eōrum ita subiēcit 20 ut omnīnō latēret; deinde ovis hominem sēcum ferentēs ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore<sup>8</sup> suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergis eōrum imposuit, ovis praeterīre passus<sup>9</sup> est. Ulixēs, postquam rem fēliciter ēvēnisse vīdit, omnēs sociōs suōs ex ḍordine eōdem modō ēmisit; quō factō, ipse 25 ultimus ēvāsit.

<sup>1</sup> From tollō. <sup>2</sup> quid . . . ageret, what *Polyphemus was doing = what ailed Polyphemus*. <sup>3</sup> Which usage of the dative? <sup>4</sup> Translate as if it were a present participle. See p. 213, note 2. <sup>5</sup> The subject is porta. <sup>6</sup> inter sē, together. <sup>7</sup> From cōnectō. <sup>8</sup> fore = futūrum esse, would be, would happen.

<sup>9</sup> From patiōr.

*Out of danger*

**546.** His rēbus ita cōflectis, Ulixēs cum sociis quam celerrimē ad litus contendit. Quō<sup>1</sup> cum vēnissent, ab eis qui praesidiō nāvi relictī erant magnā cum laetitiā accepti sunt. Hī enim, cum iam anxiis animis trēs diēs redditum eōrum in 5 hōrās<sup>2</sup> exspectāvissent, eōs in periculum grave incidisse suspicāti, ipsi auxiliandi causā ēgredi parābant. Tum Ulixēs, nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus in eō locō manēre, quam celerrimē proficisci cōnstituit. Iussit igitur omnēs nāvem cōnsendere, et, ancoris sublātis, paulum ā litore in altum prōvectus est. Tum 10 magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme,<sup>3</sup> quī iūra hospiti spernis, iūstam et dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvisti." Hāc vōce auditā, Polyphēmus, irā vehementer commōtus, ad mare sē contulit, et ubi intellēxit nāvem paulum ā litore remōtam esse, saxum ingēns correptum in eam partem coniēcit unde 15 vōcem venire sēnsit. Graeci autem, nūllō damnō acceptō, cursum tenuērunt.

EUTROPIUS: HISTORY OF ROME<sup>4</sup>*The founding of Rome by Romulus*

**547.** Rōmānum imperium<sup>5</sup> ā Rōmulō initium habet, qui Rhēae Silviae filius et Mārtis erat. Is decem et octō annōs nātus urbem parvam in Palātinō monte<sup>6</sup> cōnstituit. Condītā 20 civitātē, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ferē ēgit.<sup>7</sup> Multitudinem finitimōrum in civitātem recēpit, centum ex seniōribus<sup>8</sup> lēgit, quōrum cōsiliō omnia agēbat, quōs senātōrēs

<sup>1</sup> *quō, thither; begin to translate with ḡum.*   <sup>2</sup> *in hōrās, hourly.*   <sup>3</sup> *Vocative case, denoting the person addressed.*   <sup>4</sup> *Eutropius, a Roman historian of the fourth century of our era, wrote a brief history of Rome from its founding to the year 364.*   <sup>5</sup> *imperium, power, state.*   <sup>6</sup> *Palātinō monte, the Palatine Hill, one of the seven hills on which Rome was built.*   <sup>7</sup> *haec ferē ēgit, he did about as follows.*   <sup>8</sup> *seniōribus, older men; comparative of senex, old.*

nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Tum, cum uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent,<sup>1</sup> invitāvit ad spectāculum lūdōrum vicinās urbi Rōmae nātiōnēs atque eārum virginēs rapuit. Commōtis bellis propter raptārum<sup>2</sup> iniūriam Caenīnēnsēs vicit, Antemnātēs, Crustumīnōs, Sabinōs,<sup>3</sup> Fidēnātēs, Vēientēs. Haec 5 omnia oppida urbem cingunt. Et cum, ortā subitō tempestāte, nōn compāruisset,<sup>4</sup> annō rēgni tricēsimō septimō ad deōs trānsisse crēditus est et cōnsecrātus.<sup>5</sup>

*The kings who succeeded Romulus*

548. Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx crēatus est, qui bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus civitāti<sup>6</sup> quam Rōmulus 10 prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs Rōmānīs mōrēsque cōnstituit et annum dēscripsit in decem mēnsēs, et infinita sacra ac templa cōnstituit.

Huic successit Tullus Hostilius. Hic bella reparāvit, Albānōs vicit; Vēientēs et Fidēnātēs bellō superāvit; urbem ampliāvit adiectō Caeliō monte.<sup>7</sup>

15

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius suscēpit imperium. Contrā Latinōs dīmicāvit, Aventinum montem civitāti adiēcit et Iāniculum; apud ostium Tiberis civitātem condidit.

Deinde rēgnū Prīscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic numerum senātōrum duplicāvit, circum<sup>8</sup> Rōmae<sup>9</sup> aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmā- 20 nōs<sup>10</sup> instituit, qui ad nostrā memoriam permanent. Vicit idem etiam Sabinōs et nōn parum<sup>11</sup> agrōrum urbis Rōmae terri- tōriō iūnxit, primusque triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās, Capitōlium incohāvit.

<sup>1</sup> *cum . . . habērent*, because . . . had. A causal clause introduced by *cum*, because, as, since, has its verb in the subjunctive mood. <sup>2</sup> Understand *virginum*.

<sup>3</sup> In apposition with *Caenīnēnsēs*, *Antemnātēs*, and *Crustumīnōs*. Fidenæ and Veii were Etruscan towns. <sup>4</sup> *nōn compāruisset*, had disappeared. <sup>5</sup> *cōnsecrātus (est)*, was deified. <sup>6</sup> Which use of the dative? <sup>7</sup> adiectō Caeliō monte, by the addition of the Caelian Hill. <sup>8</sup> *circum*, the Circus Maximus, where races and other sports were held. <sup>9</sup> *Rōmae*, at Rome. <sup>10</sup> The lūdī Rōmāni consisted of a variety of games and contests held each year in September in the Circus Maximus. <sup>11</sup> *nōn parum*, not a little; *parum* is here used as a noun.

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium. Hic quoque Sabinos subegit, montes tres, Quirinalem, Viminalem, Esquiline, urbem adiunxit, fossas circum murum duxit. Primus omnium censum ordinavit, qui adhuc per orbem terrarum 5 incognitus erat. Sub eodem Romam, omnibus in censum delatis,<sup>1</sup> habuit capita<sup>2</sup> LXXXIII milia civium Romanorum cum his qui in agris erant.

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus regum, Volscos, quae gens ad Campaniam euntibus<sup>3</sup> non longe ab urbe 10 est, vicit, Gabios civitatem<sup>4</sup> et Suessam Pometiam subegit, cum Tuscis pacem fecit et templum Iovis in Capitoli<sup>5</sup> aedificavit. Postea Ardeam oppugnans imperium perdidit<sup>6</sup>; cumque imperavisset annos quattuor et viginti, cum uxore et liberis suis fugit.

*The first consuls*

15 549. Hinc consules coepérunt, prō unō rege duo, hāc causā creāti, ut, si unus malus esse voluisset,<sup>7</sup> alter eum habēns potestatē similem coerceret. Et placuit<sup>8</sup> nē imperium longius quam annum habērent, nē per diūturnitatē potestatis insolentiores redderentur. Fuērunt igitur annō primō ab expulsis 20 regibus consules Iūnius Brūtus et Tarquinius Collatinus. Sed Tarquinio Collatino statim sublata est dignitas. Placuerat<sup>9</sup> enim nē quisquam in urbe maneret qui Tarquinius vocaretur. Ergo, accepto omnī patrimoniō suō, ex urbe migravit, et loco ipsius<sup>10</sup> factus est L. Valerius Pūblicola consul.

<sup>1</sup> omnibus . . . delatis, when all had been enumerated. <sup>2</sup> See p. 208, note 5.

<sup>3</sup> ad Campaniam euntibus, to those going toward Campania, in the direction of Campania; euntibus is a dative of reference. <sup>4</sup> Gabios civitatem, the city (or community) of Gabii.

<sup>5</sup> in Capitoliō, on the Capitoline Hill. <sup>6</sup> A crime committed by a son of Tarquinius aroused such indignation that Tarquinius and his family were obliged to leave Rome.

<sup>7</sup> sī . . . voluisset, if one of the consuls were inclined to be troublesome; voluisset is attracted into the subjunctive mood, because it depends on a clause the verb of which is in the subjunctive.

<sup>8</sup> placuit, it was decided. The subject is the clause nē . . . habērent.

<sup>9</sup> placuerat, it had been decided. <sup>10</sup> loco ipsius, in his place.

*Wars against the Tarquins*

**550.** Commōvit tamen bellum urbi Rōmae rēx Tarquinius, qui fuerat expulsus, et, collēctis multīs gentibus, ut in rēgnū posset restituī, dimicāvit. In pīmā pugnā Brūtus cōnsul et Arrūns, Tarquinī filius, invicem sē occidērunt,<sup>1</sup> Rōmānī tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs recessērunt. Brūtum mātrōnae Rōmānae 5 quasi commūnem patrem per annum lūxērunt.<sup>2</sup>

Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius, ut reciperetur in rēgnū, bellum Rōmānīs<sup>3</sup> intulit, auxilium<sup>4</sup> ei ferente Porsenā,<sup>5</sup> Tusciae rēge, et Rōmam paene cēpit. Vērum tum quoque victus est. 10

Tertiō annō post rēgēs exāctōs Tarquinius, cum suscipi nōn posset in rēgnū neque ei Porsena, qui pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcerat, praestāret auxilium, Tusculum sē contulit, quae civitās nōn longē ab urbe est, atque ibi per quattuordecim annōs privātus incoluit. 15

*Pyrrhus and the Romans*

**551.** Eōdem tempore Tarentīnīs, qui iam in ultimā Italīā sunt, bellum indictum est, quod lēgātis Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcerant. Hi Pyrrhum, Ēpiri rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs in auxilium poposcērunt.<sup>6</sup> Is mox ad Italiam vēnit, tumque pīmum Rōmānī cum trānsmarinō hoste dimicāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōnsul P. Valerius Laevīnus, qui cum explorātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra dūcī, ostendi omnem exercitum, tumque dimitti, ut renūtiārent. Pyrrhō quae ā Rōmānīs agerentur. Commissā mox pugnā, cum iam Pyrrhus fugeret, elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, quōs incognitōs<sup>7</sup> Rōmānī 25 tīmuērunt. Sed nox proeliō finem dedit; Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit, Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mille octingentōs cēpit et eōs

<sup>1</sup> invicem sē occidērunt, killed each other. <sup>2</sup> From lūgeō. <sup>3</sup> Which usage of the dative? <sup>4</sup> auxiliā, object of ferente. <sup>5</sup> ferente Porsenā, ablative absolute. <sup>6</sup> From poscō. <sup>7</sup> Translate so as to show cause.

summō honōre trāctāvit, occīsōs sepelivit. Quōs cum adversō vulnere<sup>1</sup> et truci vultū<sup>1</sup> etiam mortuōs iacēre vidisset, tulisse ad caelum manūs dicitur cum hāc vōce: Sē tōtius orbis domīnum esse potuisse, sī tālēs sibi militēs contigissent.<sup>2</sup>

5 Posteā Pyrrhus, coniūnctis sibi Samnitibus, Lūcānis, Bruttiis, Rōmam perrēxit,<sup>3</sup> omnia ferrō ignique vāstāvit, Campāniā populātus est, et ad Praeneste vēnit. Mox terrōre exercitus, qui eum cum cōnsule sequēbātur, in Campāniā sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē redimendis captivis missi ab eō bene 10 recepti sunt. Captivōs sine pretiō Rōmam misit. Uñum ex lēgātīs Rōmānōrum, Fabricium, sic admirātus, cum eum pauperem esse cognōvisset, ut quārtā parte rēgnī prōmissā<sup>4</sup> sollicitare voluerit<sup>5</sup> ut ad sē trānsiret, contemptusque<sup>6</sup> est ā Fābričiō. Quārē cum Pyrrhus Rōmānōrum ingenti admirātiōne tenērētur,<sup>7</sup> lēgātūm misit, ut pācem aequīs condiciōnibus peteret, praecipuum virum, Cineam nōmine, ita ut Pyrrhus partem Italiae quam iam armīs occupāverat obtinēret.

• Pax displicuit remandātumque Pyrrhō est<sup>8</sup> ā senātū eum cum Rōmānis, nisi ex Italiā recessisset, pācem habēre nōn posse. 20 Ita lēgātūs Pyrrhi reversus est. Ā quō cum quaereret Pyrrhus quālem Rōmam<sup>9</sup> comperisset, Cineās dixit rēgum sē patriam vīdisse: tālēs illic ferē omnēs esse, quālis ūnius Pyrrhus apud Epīrum<sup>10</sup> et reliquam Graeciam putārētur.

Missi sunt contrā Pyrrhum ducēs P. Sulpicius et Decius 25 Mūs cōsulēs. Certāmine commissō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est,

<sup>1</sup> adversō vulnere and truci vultū are descriptive ablatives. Translate, *when he saw these men lying with wounds on the front of their bodies and with stern expressions on their faces even in death.* <sup>2</sup> if it had been his lot to have such soldiers. <sup>3</sup> From *pergō*. <sup>4</sup> quārtā . . . prōmissā, by the offer of a fourth of his kingdom. <sup>5</sup> The perfect subjunctive is often used in result clauses in secondary sequence. <sup>6</sup> From *contemnō*. <sup>7</sup> cum . . . tenērētur, since Pyrrhus felt great admiration for the Romans. How literally? The clause is causal.

<sup>8</sup> remandātūm . . . est, word was sent back to Pyrrhus, that, etc. <sup>9</sup> quālem Rōmam, what sort of city he had found Rome to be. <sup>10</sup> apud Epīrum, in Epirus.

elephantī interficti, viginti milia caesa<sup>1</sup> hostium, et ex Rōmānis tantum quīnque milia; Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus.<sup>2</sup>

Interiectō annō contrā Pyrrhum Fabricius est missus, qui prius inter lēgātōs sollicitārī nōn poterat; quārtā rēgnī parte prōmissā. Tum, cum vicina castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus Pyrrhi nocte ad eum vēnit, prōmittēns venēnō sē Pyrrhum occīsūrum, sī sibi aliquid pollicērētur.<sup>3</sup> Quem Fabricius vīncutum redūci iussit ad dominum Pyrrhōque dīcī quae contrā caput eius medicus spōpondisset.<sup>4</sup> Tum rēx admirātus eum dixisse fertur<sup>5</sup>: "Ille est Fabricius qui difficilius ab honestātē quam sōl ā cursū suō āverti potest." Tum rēx in Siciliam profectus est.

Cōsulēs deinde M. Curius Dentātus et Cornēlius Lentulus adversus Pyrrhum missi sunt. Curius contrā eum pugnāvit, exercitum eius cecidit,<sup>6</sup> ipsum Tarentum fugāvit, castra cēpit. Eō diē caesa hostium viginti tria milia. Curius in cōsulātū triumphāvit. Prīmus Rōmam elephantōs quattuor dūxit. Pyrrhus etiam ā Tarentō mox recessit et apud Argōs, Graeciae civitātem, occīsus est.

## STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

*The brave deed of Horatius Cocles*

**552.** Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, ad restituendōs Tarquiniōs cum infestō exercitū vēnit. Primō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāserat; ex agris in urbem dēmigrant; urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiūs. Alia pars urbis mūris,<sup>7</sup> alia Tiberī obiectō<sup>8</sup> tūta vidēbātur.<sup>9</sup> Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit. Unus vir autem erat,

<sup>1</sup> From caedō. <sup>2</sup> Supply est. <sup>3</sup> sī . . . pollicērētur, if some reward were promised to him. <sup>4</sup> From spōndeō. <sup>5</sup> fertur, is reported. <sup>6</sup> From caedō.

<sup>7</sup> mūris, by reason of its walls. <sup>8</sup> Tiberī obiectō, by the interposed Tiber = by the Tiber's being between. <sup>9</sup> vidēbātur, seemed.

Horātius Cocles, illō cognōmine appellātus quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmiserat. Is, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā, aeiē hostium sōlus sustinuit. Intereā pōns ā tergō interrumpēbātur. Ipsa audācia obstupefēcit hostis; ponte rescissō,<sup>1</sup> armātus in 5 Tiberim dēsiluit et, multis superincidentibus tēlis, incolumis ad suōs trānāvit. Ob virtūtem Horātiō civitās grātiā solvit<sup>2</sup>: ei tantum agrī pūblicē datum est quantum<sup>3</sup> ūnō diē circumarāre potuit. Statua quoque ei in Comitiō posita est.

*The fortitude of Mucius*

553. Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius senātū adiit 10 et veniam trānsfugiendi<sup>4</sup> petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte, in castra Porsenae vēnit. Ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope rēgium tribūnal cōnstitit. Stipendium tunc forte militib⁹ dabātur, et proximus rēgi erat scriba, qui similem vestem gerēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, scribam prō 15 rēge occīdit. Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus,<sup>5</sup> dextram accēnsō<sup>6</sup> ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, *velut* manum pūniēns. Attonitus mirāculō, rēx iuvenem āmovēri ab altārib⁹ iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, dixit trecentōs<sup>7</sup> 20 sibi similis adversus eum coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus, bellum acceptīs obsidibus dēpositus.

*Clælia, the hostage, escapes*

554. Porsena Cloeliam, virginem nōbilem, inter obsidēs accēperat. Castra Porsenae haud procul ab rīpā Tiberis locāta erant. Cloelia, dēceptis custōdibus, nocte castris ēgressa, equō quem fors dederat arreptō,<sup>8</sup> Tiberim trāiēcit. Quod ubi rēgi 25 nūntiātum est, primō incēnsus irā, Rōmam lēgātōs misit ad

<sup>1</sup> From rescindō. <sup>2</sup> grātiā solvit, showed its gratitude. <sup>3</sup> tantum . . . quantum, as much . . . as. <sup>4</sup> veniam trānsfugiendi, favor of deserting = permission to desert. <sup>5</sup> From pertrahō. <sup>6</sup> From accēndō; order: foculō accēnsō ad sacrificium. <sup>7</sup> trecentōs, three hundred; subject of coniūrāvisse. <sup>8</sup> equō . . . arreptō, seizing a horse; arreptō is from arripiō.

Cloeliam obsidem reposcendam. Rōmānī eam ex foedere restituērunt. Tum rēx virginis virtūtem admirātus<sup>1</sup> eam laudāvit ac partem obsidum ei datūrum esse sē dixit, permīsitque ut ipsa obsidēs legeret. Prōductis obsidibus, Cloelia virginēs puerōsque ēlēgit, quōrum aetātem iniūriae obnoxiam<sup>2</sup> sciēbat, et cum eis in patriam rediit. Rōmānī novam in fēminā virtūtem novō genere honōris, statuā equestri, dōnāvērunt. In summā<sup>3</sup> Viā Sacrā<sup>4</sup> est posita virgō īsidēns equō.

*Caius Marcius Coriolanus*

555. C. Mārcius captis Coriolis,<sup>5</sup> urbe Volscōrum, Coriolānus dictus est. Puer patre<sup>6</sup> orbātus sub mātris tūtēlāadolēvit. Cum 10 prima stīpendia facere coepisset<sup>7</sup> adulēscēns, ē multis proeliis quibus interfuit numquam rediit nisi corōnā aliōve militāri praemiō dōnātus. In omnī vitae ratiōne nihil aliud sibi prōpōnēbat quam ut mātri placēret; cumque illa audiret filium<sup>8</sup> laudāri aut corōnā dōnārī vidēret, tum dēmum fēlicem sē ipsa 15 putābat. Cōnsul factus gravi annōnā<sup>9</sup> advectum<sup>10</sup> ē Siciliā frūmentum magnō pretiō dandum populō cūrāvit, ut plēbs agrōs, nōn sēditiōnēs, coleret. Quā de causā damnātus ad Volscōs infestōs tunc Rōmānīs cōnfūgit eōsque adversus Rōmānōs concitāvit. Imperātor ā Volscis factus, castris ad quārtum ab urbe 20 lapidem<sup>11</sup> positis, agrum Rōmānum est populātus.

Missi sunt Rōmā ad Coriolānum lēgātī dē pāce, sed atrōx respōnsum rettulērunt. Iterum deinde iidem missi nē in castra

<sup>1</sup> Translate as if it were a present participle. <sup>2</sup> obnoxiam, liable to.

<sup>3</sup> summā, highest part of. <sup>4</sup> Viā Sacrā, a street running through the Roman Forum up to the Capitol. <sup>5</sup> captis Coriolis, because of the capture of Corioli.

<sup>6</sup> Which usage of the ablative? <sup>7</sup> prima . . . coepisset, had begun to earn first wages (as a soldier) = had begun his first military service. <sup>8</sup> Subject accusative of laudāri and dōnārī. <sup>9</sup> gravi annōnā, in a time of extreme scarcity.

<sup>10</sup> Agrees with frūmentum, which is the subject accusative of dandum (esse).

Translate, had (cūrāvit) corn, which had been brought from Sicily, distributed to the people at a high price. <sup>11</sup> lapidem, milestone.

quidem recepti sunt. Stupēbat senātus, trepidabat populus, viri pariter ac mulierēs exitium imminēns lāmentabantur. Tum Veturia, Coriolāni māter, et Volumnia uxor, duōs parvōs filiōs sēcum trahēns, castra hostium petiērunt. Ubi mātrem adspexit 5 Coriolānus, exclāmāvit: “Ō patria, viciſti īram mēam admōtis mātris meae precibus,<sup>1</sup> cui<sup>2</sup> tuam in mē iniūriam condōnō.” Complexus inde suōs castra mōvit et exercitum ex agrō Rōmānō abdūxit.

<sup>1</sup> admōtis . . . precibus, by employing the prayers.    <sup>2</sup> cui, for whose sake.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

### LESSON I

556. What use of the nominative do you know? What are the case endings of a noun, and what is their use? What are the personal endings of the third person singular and plural? Translate **puella ambulat** to show three kinds of action. What is the case ending in the nominative plural for words ending in -a in the nominative singular? What is an enclitic? To which word in a sentence is -ne generally attached? Accent **ambulant** and **ambulantne**. Divide **agricola** and **ambulant** into syllables, and give a reason for the accent of each word.

### LESSON II

557. What are the case endings for the nominative and the accusative singular? for the same cases in the plural? What usage has the accusative? Give the accusative singular and plural of **agricola**. What is the difference in meaning between **agricola puellās convocat** and **puellās agricola convocat**? What Latin words are suggested by the English words *laudatory, aquarium, convocation, cantata, aeronaut*? Tell why each noun in 36 stands in the case in which it is found.

### LESSON III

558. What is the use of the personal endings in the inflection of a verb? Give the personal endings of the present tense. What does each mean? Inflect **convocō** in the present indicative active. If a verb ends in -mus, what is its subject? If it ends in -s? Say in Latin *it swims* and *she walks*. Spell the present stem of each verb in 39, c. How many conjugations of Latin verbs are there? How are they distinguished from each other? Give the present infinitive active of each verb in 39, c.

## LESSON IV

**559.** What three Latin cases have you learned? To which English case does each correspond? What is the usage of each case you have met? Inflect **fugō** in the present indicative active. Give the nominative, genitive, and accusative singular and plural of the Latin word for *daughter*. Express in Latin *whose land?* *whom does he see?* *what has he?* Give English words that appear to be derived from **liberō** and **portō**. Give the genitive and the accusative forms of the nouns in 45. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 46.

## LESSON V

**560.** Spell the present stem of the Latin verb meaning *see*. What endings do you add in the inflection of the present indicative active? Where is the vowel e of the present stem of the second conjugation short in the inflection of the present tense? Inflect **doceō**, **habeō**, **videō**, and **portō** in the present indicative active. What Latin words are suggested by the English words *fortune*, *expectation*, *piratical*, *export*, *monitor*? Why is the infinitive given with each verb in the vocabularies? What kind of clause is introduced by **quod**?

## LESSON VI

**561.** How many cases of Latin nouns have you learned? Name them. Give a usage of each case, and give the rule for the usage. With which Latin case have you used a preposition? What is the general character of the dative and of the ablative case? Give the dative and the ablative singular and plural of each noun in 55. What do you observe about the endings of the dative and the ablative plural? Explain the normal order of words in a Latin sentence. What is the effect of a change from the normal order of words? Give English words that appear to be derived from **fābula**, **dō**, and **nārrō**. Conjugate each verb in 49 in the present indicative active. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 61.

## LESSON VII

562. How many declensions of Latin nouns are there? What nouns belong to the first declension? What is the base of a noun? Give in their order the case endings of the first declension. How do you recognize a noun of this declension? Decline **rēgina**, **pirāta**, and **domina**. What is the gender of most nouns of the first declension? Give five masculine nouns of this declension. What three case endings in this declension are the same? Say in Latin *in the fight, in the forests*. Give English words that appear to be derived from the words in 65.

## LESSON VIII

563. What is the case of the direct object in Latin? of the indirect object? for the *to* or *for* relation? for the *of* relation? How is the *in* or *on* relation expressed? What two genders are there in nouns of the second declension? What are the case endings of the second declension? Decline **dominus** and **oppidum**. Express in Latin *of the horses, in the garden, to the friends*. What cases are alike in the second declension? What four pairs of cases of neuter nouns in this declension are alike? What English words are suggested by **dominus**? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 75.

## LESSON IX

564. Decline **bonus**. Decline **pilum magnum**. What is the rule for the agreement of adjectives? What is the normal position of an adjective? of an indirect object? How many declensions of adjectives are there? What adjectives precede their nouns? Decline **nauta validus**. Give the ablative singular and plural of each noun in 82. Give the case endings of an adjective of the first and second declensions, reciting first the nominative endings for the three genders, then the genitive endings, and so on. What English words are suggested by **magnus**? Conjugate in the present indicative active each verb in 83.

## LESSON X

**565.** State the rule for the gender of nouns of the first declension. Is the ending of the adjective always the same as that of the noun with which it agrees? Why is **nauta bona** not correct? Express in Latin *you are a poet, your fortune is large, in Europe, to the kind goddess.* Decline **longus** and **puella parva**. Inflect **sum** and **dēmōstrō** in the present indicative active. What kind of verb is **sum**? What are predicate nouns and adjectives? Give two uses of the nominative.

## LESSON XII

**566.** What cases of the second declension end in -**o**? What cases end in -**is**? What two cases in the neuter plural end in -**a**? Decline **puer, ager, vir, praemium, and socius.** How do the English derivatives of these words help you to decline them? Point out the predicate nouns and adjectives in 101. How is the present stem of a verb found? Give English words that appear to be derived from the nouns of 100. What is the rule for the gender of nouns of the second declension? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 101.

## LESSON XIII

**567.** Decline **miser** and **vester**. Inflect **superō** in the present indicative active. How does the meaning of **tuus** differ from that of **vester**? What is an appositive? Find examples of an appositive in 96 and in 101. What is the rule for the case of an appositive? What is the rule for the agreement of an adjective? Say in Latin *for my friend Galba.* What English words appear to be derived from **miser, multus, and vocō?** What kind of clause begins with **quod** in sentence 7 of 105?

## LESSON XIV

**568.** Give two uses of the nominative and two of the dative, and one usage of each of the other cases. Give seven Latin adjectives that are accompanied by the dative. How do you say in

Latin *there is?* *there are?* Inflect **sum** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. Decline **servus**, **vir**, **filius**. What adjectives have you learned that keep **e** in their inflection? In what two ways have you used **amicus**? What is the rule for the dative with adjectives? Give English derivatives of **propinquus** and **proximus**.

## LESSON XV

**569.** Decline **legatus** and **scutum**. Inflect **pugnō** and **compleō** in the imperfect indicative active. Give two uses of the ablative. Which use requires a preposition? By what sort of prepositional phrases is the ablative of means to be translated? What is the tense sign of the imperfect indicative active? Divide **exspectabāmus** in such a way as to show the stem, the tense sign, and the personal ending. Which personal ending of the imperfect is unlike that of the present? Express in Latin *by an oar*, *with water*, *by means of money*. What kind of action is expressed by the imperfect?

## LESSON XVI

**570.** Inflect **labōrō** and **teneō** in the future indicative active. Give three uses of the ablative, two of the dative, and one of the genitive. Which two cases are used with prepositions in Latin? Give two uses of the accusative. What preposition in Latin is used with two cases? What is the tense sign of the future indicative active? Translate **cum cūrā** in two ways. When may **cum** be omitted in phrases of manner? Say in Latin *with a sword* and *with zeal*. Give English derivatives of **labōrō**. Decline **aeger**.

## LESSON XVII

**571.** What forms are given as the principal parts of a verb? Give the principal parts of **laudō**. What are the present and the perfect stem of **laudō**? What tenses use the present stem in their inflection (as far as you have studied the verb)? What are the personal endings of the perfect indicative active? What tenses use the perfect stem in their inflection? Inflect **laudō** in the perfect

indicative active. What is the difference between the perfect definite and the perfect indefinite? Translate the perfect of **laudō** in both ways. Tell the reason for the case of each noun and adjective in 138.

### LESSON XVIII

**572.** Give four uses of the ablative. Which uses of the ablative take **cum**? Inflect **videō** in the perfect indicative active and **mancē** in the imperfect indicative active. Express in Latin *with the Romans, with danger, with a shield, in Italy, into Germany*. Decline **periculum** and **locus**. What are the perfect stems of the verbs in 139? Give English derivatives of **captivus**, **causa**, and **locus**.

### LESSON XIX

**573.** What is a demonstrative? Give an example in English. In what ways is the demonstrative **is** used? Inflect **sum**, **hiemē**, and **maneō** in the tenses of the indicative active through the perfect. Express in Latin *she has been kind, they have been friends*. Decline **is** and **proximus**. What is the normal position of a modifying adjective? What is the normal position of **is** when it is an adjective? Tell the reason for the case of each noun and adjective in 150.

### LESSON XX

**574.** What is the difference in the action expressed by the imperfect and the perfect tense? What is the perfect stem of **sum**? Decline the interrogative pronoun **quis**. Decline the interrogative adjective **qui**. Express in Latin *whose horse? of those men, with that girl, with which spears?* Make a synopsis (671) of **sum** in each person for the tenses you have studied. Decline **animus** and **imperium**.

### LESSON XXI

**575.** Give the infinitives of **amō**, **moneō**, and **regō**. What letter of the infinitive needs to be especially noticed? Why? What are the perfect stems of **amō**, **moneō**, and **mittō**? Translate the third person

singular of the perfect indicative active of **dūcō** in two ways. What is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations? in the third? Inflect **mittō** in the indicative active through the perfect. Inflect **dūcō** and **emō** in the present and future indicative active. Give English derivatives of **dūcō** and **mittō**. Make a synopsis of **amō** in each person through the perfect indicative.

### LESSON XXIII

**576.** What three things must you know about each noun of the third declension to be able to decline it? What are the case endings of this declension? What case endings are the same? Decline **eques**, **dux**, **lapis**, and **caput**. Decline **rēx noster**. Make a synopsis of **mittō** in each person for the tenses you have studied. Give English derivatives of the words in 172.

### LESSON XXIV

**577.** What uses of the accusative and ablative cases have you now studied? What is the difference between phrases of place from which introduced by **ab**, **ex**, and **dē**? Give the rules for place from which and place to which. In what forms is the inflection of **capiō** unlike that of **regō**? Inflect **fugīō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active. Decline **mūrus** and **pēs**. Express in Latin *he fled toward the gate, he fled out of the gate, he fled away from the gate*. Give the genitive endings for the first three declensions; then the dative endings, and so on. From what Latin words are *pedal*, *mural*, and *dismiss* derived? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 181.

### LESSON XXV

**578.** Give five uses of the ablative case, and illustrate each with a Latin phrase. Decline **homō bonus**, **quod vulnus**, and **corpus**. What English words are used to translate the ablative of cause? What uses of the ablative require a preposition? In what two uses of the ablative is **cum** employed? Inflect **doleō** in the present, imperfect,

future, and perfect indicative active. In what two ways may the dative case be used? What two ways are there of expressing a phrase introduced by *to*? Make a synopsis of *capiō* in each person through the perfect indicative active.

### LESSON XXVI

**579.** What are the regular case endings for nouns of the third declension of each gender? What nouns have i-stems? How do nouns with i-stems differ in declension from other nouns of the third declension? What is an enclitic? Give two examples. Decline *lapis*, *civis*, and *urbs*. Express in Latin *because of our courage, sons of these citizens*. From what Latin words are *civilize, finite, ignition, marine*, and *interurban* derived?

### LESSON XXVII

**580.** What preposition is used with both the accusative and the ablative case? Decline *finis* and *mare*. Decline *aeger*. What two meanings has *inter*? How do you say *with* and *because of* in Latin? What forms of adjectives are used as nouns? Say in Latin *among the allies, after the war, across the sea, against the soldiers, toward the province, through the cities, without a friend*.

### LESSON XXIX

**581.** Decline *audāx*, *brevis*, and *ācer*. Decline *omnēs Rōmāni, periculum commūne*, and *dux fortis*. What English words are derived from *gravis*, *omnis*, and *fortis*? What is the more common ending for the ablative singular of adjectives of the third declension? How can you tell from the vocabularies whether an adjective of the third declension has one, two, or three terminations? Express in Latin *for an eager man, with all the citizens, among the brave centurions*. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 202.

### LESSON XXX

**582.** How can you tell a verb of the fourth conjugation from a verb in -iō of the third conjugation? How do verbs of the fourth conjugation differ in inflection from verbs in -iō of the third conjugation?

Inflect *dēfendō* and *veniō* in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active, and make synopses of each. What are the present and perfect stems of the verbs in 213? Decline *flūmen* and *dux nōbilis*. What English words are derived from *pauci*, *nōbilis*, *audiō*, and *dēfendō*? What are the principal parts of *dūcō*, *mittō*, *capiō*, *fugiō*, and *iaciō*?

#### LESSON XXXI

583. Give eight uses of the ablative case, two of the dative, and two of the accusative. Inflect *gerō* in all the tenses you have studied. Decline *ea aestās*, *secundus annus*, *nox*, and *tempus breve*. Express in Latin *within ten hours*, *at that time*, *during the second summer*. What is the rule for the expression of time when in Latin? From what Latin words are *perennial*, *decimate*, *primitive*, *extemporaneous*, and *belligerent* derived?

#### LESSON XXXII

584. What auxiliary word must be used in translating the pluperfect? How are the pluperfect and future perfect tenses formed? Inflect *veniō*, *sum*, and *gerō* in these tenses. What is the Latin way of saying *the Roman people*? What is the perfect system of a verb? What is the difference in the meaning of *Gallus* and *Gallia*? What is the meaning of *fuerat*? of *habuerat*? Write a Latin sentence containing an ablative of cause, an ablative of accompaniment, and a pluperfect indicative active.

#### LESSON XXXIII

585. In what two ways may a demonstrative be used? Distinguish between *is*, *hic*, and *ille*. Decline these words. Give the complete rules for place from which and place to which. Express in Latin *from Italy*, *from Rome*, *to Gaul*, *to Athens*. Make a synopsis of *gerō* in the third person singular and plural of the indicative active. From the derivation of the words what is the difference between a *society* and a *fraternity*?

## LESSON XXXV

**586.** What is the passive voice? What are the personal endings of the passive voice? In passive sentences how is the person doing the act expressed in Latin? How is the thing doing the act expressed? Inflect *superō* and *videō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive, and make synopses of each. In how many ways have you used the ablative case? How many of these uses employ *ā* or *ab*? How many employ *cum*? Express in Latin *they are overcome by weapons, they are overcome by the Gauls*. Where does the tense sign in the passive differ from the tense sign in the active?

## LESSON XXXVI

**587.** What is the antecedent of a relative pronoun? In what respects does a relative agree with its antecedent? In what case is a relative? Decline *qui*. Inflect *vāstō* in the active indicative, and make a synopsis of the third person singular and plural in the passive. Decline *vestrum cōsilia, legiō prima, and turris*. Express in Latin *the traders to whom I gave, the traders toward whom, among the mountains which I see, against those men whose sons are*. Give English derivatives from the words in 249.

## LESSON XXXVII

**588.** Decline *castra* and *cōsul Rōmānus*. Inflect *vincō* and *recipiō* in the present system active and passive. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural of *vincō*. What is the second person singular of the present passive of *gerō*? the second person singular of the future passive of *vincō*? What are the third persons plural of the present and future active and passive of *dūcō* and *iaciō*? From what Latin words are *pacific, consulate, reception, and victor* derived?

## LESSON XXXVIII

**589.** Decline the personal pronouns of the first, second, and third persons. Decline the reflexive pronouns of the first, second, and third persons. Why is the nominative of reflexive pronouns not

needed? Express in Latin *his, her, their, to him, to himself, him, himself, to me, with us.* Inflect **interficiō** in the active and passive indicative through the perfect tense, and make synopses in the third person singular and plural. What is the position of **cum** when it is used with personal pronouns?

### LESSON XXXIX

**590.** Inflect **dicō** in the perfect system, and **impediō** in the present system. Make a synopsis of **incitō** in the third person singular and of **praebeō** in the third person plural. Give English words derived from **dicō**, **impediō**, and **incitō**. What is the difference in meaning of the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? Decline **aedificium**. Tell the reason for the case of each noun, adjective, and relative pronoun in 275.

### LESSON XL

**591.** What kind of word is **suus**? When should it be used? When may it be omitted? How do you say *his, her, its, their*, when they are not reflexive? What kind of words are followed by an ablative of separation? Give six verbs that may be followed by this ablative. What prepositions are used with the ablative of separation? What other ablative is of the same nature as the ablative of separation? Inflect **dēsistō** in the indicative active, and **interclūdō** in the indicative passive. Give English derivatives from **privō**, **prohibeō**, and **dēsistō**.

### LESSON XLI

**592.** What tenses of the verb belong to the present system? to the perfect system? to the participial system? Point out six uses of the ablative in 290. Inflect **gerō** throughout the indicative passive. Decline **impedimentum**, **imperātor**, and **mora brevis**. How do **concilium** and **cōnsilium** differ in meaning? Why does a participle change its endings?

### LESSON XLII

**593.** What are the case endings of the fourth declension? What is the rule for the gender of nouns of the fourth declension? What exceptions are there to this rule? Decline **lacus**, **adventus**, **domus**, and

**cornū.** Inflect **mūniō** in the participial system, and make a synopsis in the third person plural active and passive. How are place from which and place to which expressed with the word **domus**? Give English words derived from **adventus**, **manus**, and **mūniō**.

### LESSON XLIII

**594.** What are the three degrees of comparison of adjectives? Compare **fortis** and **longus**. Decline the positive, comparative, and superlative of **gravis**. Inflect **petō** in the indicative active and passive. Make a synopsis of **faciō** in the first person plural of the active voice. Decline **senātus Rōmānus** and **iter longum**. How do you say in Latin *rather long, too new, very brave, I shall march, we were attacking?*

### LESSON XLIV

**595.** Compare **similis**, **dissimilis**, and **nōbilis**. Give two uses of the genitive and two of the dative case. What is a partitive genitive? Give an exception to the rule for the partitive genitive. Decline **pars** and **litus angustum**. What adjectives are compared like **similis**? Compare **ācer**, and decline its comparative.

### LESSON XLVI

**596.** Compare **bonus**, **summus**, **peior**, **plūrimus**, **minus**, and **maiōrem**, and decline each in the comparative degree. How is the comparative of **multus** used? What does **summus mōns** mean? Give English words that are derived from the words in 316. Give all the ways in which you have used each case.

### LESSON XLVII

**597.** What do adverbs modify? What is the regular way of forming adverbs from adjectives? What cases of adjectives are used as adverbs? Give examples. Form and compare an adverb from an adjective of the first and second declensions; from an adjective of the third declension of one ending. Form and compare adverbs from **ācer**, **miser**, and **bonūs**. Decline **multitūdō**. Inflect **dō** throughout

the indicative. Inflect **praemittō** in the participial system. Make a synopsis of **relinquō** in the third person plural. Tell the reason for the case of the nouns in 329.

#### LESSON XLVIII.

**598.** What are the case endings for each declension in the nominative singular? in the genitive singular? in the other cases? What is the gender of nouns of the fourth declension? of the fifth? Give the case endings of the fifth declension. Decline **diēs**, **rēs**, and **aciēs**. Inflect **pōnō** in the present and the future indicative active, and **instruō** in the present system. Make a synopsis of **pōnō** in the third person singular. Give three uses of the accusative case. How is time during which expressed? How is duration of time expressed?

#### LESSON L

**599.** What tenses has the subjunctive? What vowels characterize the present subjunctive of the several conjugations? Inflect the present subjunctive active and passive of **laudō**, **videō**, **gerō**, **recipiō**, **audiō**, and **sum**. To which system of the verb does the present subjunctive belong? How is purpose expressed in English? How in Latin? When is **ut** used in purpose clauses? When is **nē** used? Translate **venit ut videat** in five ways. Are purpose clauses independent or dependent? Are they adjectives, adverbs, or nouns in nature?

#### LESSON LI

**600.** How is the imperfect subjunctive formed? Inflect the present and the imperfect subjunctive active and passive of **portō**, **terreō**, **mittō**, **iaciō**, and **mūniō**. To which system does the imperfect subjunctive belong? What do you understand by sequence of tenses? What are the primary tenses? What are the secondary tenses? Give the rules for the sequence of tenses, and for the tense of the subjunctive in purpose clauses. Translate **vēnit ut vidēret** in as many ways as you can. Tell the reason for the tense of each subjunctive in 353.

of the infinitive generally accompanies *possum*? What English words are derived from *nihil*, *putō*, *respondeō*, and *nūntiō*?

### LESSON LXI

**608.** Name four indefinite pronouns. Decline *quidam* and *aliquis*. Name seven kinds of pronouns, giving an example of each. Review the declension of the various pronouns. Give the usages that you have learned for the several cases of nouns. Illustrate each by a brief Latin sentence.

### LESSON LXII

**609.** Recite the rule for the dative with compounds. Give some compound verbs with which the dative is used. What is the double dative? Inflect *dēsum* in all moods. Name a compound verb which takes both an accusative and a dative. What Latin words are suggested by the English words *munitions*, *prefect*, *subsidize*, *occurrence*? Illustrate the dative of purpose by a Latin sentence. Tell the reason for the case of the nouns and for the mood and tense of the subjunctives in 430.

### LESSON LXIII

**610.** Inflect *volō* and *nōlō*. Make a synopsis of each in the third person singular and plural. Give the rule for the dative with special intransitive verbs, and name verbs followed by such a dative. Say in Latin in two ways *Cæsar ordered the men to come into the camp*. Decline *mulier*, *sōl*, and *occāsus*. Inflect *resistō* in the present subjunctive and the future indicative active. Explain sequence of tenses. What tenses are used in purpose clauses, and when?

### LESSON LXV

**611.** How is the present participle formed? the future active participle? the future passive participle? Give the participles of *gerō* and their meanings. Decline *fugiēns*. What part of speech is a participle? What is the rule for the agreement of participles? Explain the tenses of participles. Translate *Galli territi ex agris*

fugiēbant in six ways. Give English words derived from **commoveō** and **reducō**. Inflect **commoveō** in the present system. Give the infinitives and the participles of **reducō**.

### LESSON LXVII

**612.** What is an ablative absolute? In what three ways is it formed? Give examples. Which participles are used in making the ablative absolute, and what time do they express? Translate **bellō factō** in five ways. Express in Latin *having captured the town they freed the captives*. Decline **dēditiō** and **ripa**. What does **media urbs** mean? Give the rule for the ablative absolute.

### LESSON LXVIII

**613.** Name two parts of the verb which are verbal nouns. Decline the gerunds of **iaciō** and of **mittō**. What is used in place of the nominative of the gerund? Translate **ad petendum**. What other ways of expressing the same idea are there in Latin? Inflect **ēdō** throughout. Make synopses in each person. Decline **nōmen** and **spatiū**. Give English words suggested by the Latin words of 463. Give the infinitives and the participles of **ōrō**, with their meanings.

### LESSON LXIX

**614.** What other name has the gerundive? What part of speech is a gerund? What part of speech is a gerundive? Decline the gerund and the gerundive of **videō**. Name two uses of the gerundive. Express in Latin *for the purpose of capturing the city and the signal had to be given*. Decline **vis**. Inflect **augeō** in the indicative active, **conveniō** in the subjunctive active, and **ferō** throughout, and give synopses of each. State what you know about the uses of participles.

### LESSON LXXI

**615.** What is a deponent verb? What active forms has a deponent verb? Inflect **cōnor** throughout. Give a Latin sentence containing an ablative of specification. What uses of the ablative case do you

know? What English words are suggested by **sequor**, **hortor**, and **experior**? Make a synopsis of **sequor** in the third person singular.

### LESSON LXXII

**616.** Inflect **faciō** in the active and the passive voice. Make a synopsis of **vereor** in the third person plural. What is a clause? What clauses thus far studied have had a verb in the subjunctive? in the infinitive? Recite the rule for temporal clauses introduced by **cum**. Say in Latin *I was informed by you, you informed me.*

### LESSON LXXIV

**617.** What substantive clauses have you studied? In which mood are their verbs? Give the rule for **quod** clauses of fact. Say in Latin *that road, as we have shown, was more difficult*. Decline **lēgatiō**. Inflect **ēgredior** throughout. Make synopses of **cōgō**. Give English words suggested by the words in 498.

### LESSON LXXV

**618.** What is the rule for the main verb of a statement that is given indirectly? for the subordinate verb of such a statement? What determines the sequence of tenses in indirect statements? Compare **celeriter** and decline **initium**. Inflect **mōrō** and **revertor** throughout. What uses do you know for each case of nouns (512)? How have you used the subjunctive mood (513)? the infinitive (513)? the participle (513)?

## APPENDIX I

### RULES OF SYNTAX

**NOTE.** These rules are here numbered consecutively for the convenience of teachers and pupils. The number in parentheses following a rule is its section number.

#### 619. Agreement.

1. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number (29).
2. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb (87).
3. A predicate adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb (88).
4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains (94).
5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case (79).
6. A predicate adjective used with a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb (394, b).
7. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the way it is used in its own clause (248).

#### 620. Nominative Case.

8. The subject of a verb is in the nominative case (28).

#### 621. Genitive Case.

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor is in the genitive case (44).
10. Words denoting a part may have with them a genitive of the whole from which the part is taken (309).

11. Some nouns of action and feeling may have with them a genitive to express the object of the action or feeling implied in the nouns (381).

12. The genitive denotes that of which something consists or is made (p. 79, note 1).

### 622. Dative Case.

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case (57).

14. Certain adjectives meaning *near*, *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, may be accompanied by a dative to show the person or the thing toward which the quality of the adjective is directed (111).

15. Some verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super**, take a dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative (425).

16. The dative is used to denote the purpose for which a thing serves (427).

17. The dative is used to denote the person (or, rarely, the thing) affected by the action or situation expressed by the verb (428).

18. Most verbs meaning *believe*, *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their opposites, also *command*, *obey*, *pardon*, *persuade*, *resist*, *serve*, *spare*, and the like, take a dative of the indirect object (433).

### 623. Accusative Case.

19. The object of a verb is in the accusative case (33).

20. Place *to which* is usually expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**; but with the names of towns, and with **domus**, the preposition is omitted (230, b).

21. The accusative is used with certain prepositions (193).

22. Extent of time or of space is expressed by the accusative (333).

23. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative (399).

### 624. Ablative Case.

24. Place *where* is commonly expressed by a phrase consisting of a preposition, usually **in**, with the ablative case (59).

25. The means by which an action is accomplished is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (122).

26. The ablative with **cum** is used with abstract nouns to denote the manner of an action; but **cum** may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun of the phrase (129).

27. The ablative with **cum** is used to show accompaniment (143).

28. Place *from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**); but with the names of towns, and with **domus**, the preposition is omitted (230, a).

29. The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause (185).

30. The ablative is used with certain prepositions (194).

31. The time at which or within which a thing happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (219).

32. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** (243).

33. Words signifying *privation*, *removal*, or *separation* are followed by the ablative without a preposition, or with the prepositions **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**) (282).

34. The degree of difference is expressed by the ablative (321).

35. The ablative of a noun or pronoun, with a participle, a noun, or an adjective in agreement, is used to express *time*, *cause*, *concession*, *condition*, or other relations (455).

36. The ablative without a preposition is used to denote in what respect something is true (481).

### **625. Adverbial Clauses.**

37. The cause of an action may be expressed by a dependent clause introduced by **quod** (51).

38. The subjunctive is used with **ut** or **nē** in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action stated in the independent clause (344).

39. The subjunctive is used with *ut* or *ut non* in a dependent clause to express the result of the action stated in the independent clause (358).

40. Temporal clauses referring to past time, when introduced by *cum*, have their verb in the indicative if they fix the time of an action, but in the subjunctive if they describe the circumstances of an action (488).

41. Adverbial clauses introduced by *quā* and *ut* (= *as*) have their verbs in the indicative (497).

### **626. Adjective Clauses.**

42. A relative clause modifies its antecedent as an adjective modifies its noun (247, b).

### **627. Substantive Clauses.**

43. Verbs meaning *ask*, *command*, *persuade*, and *urge* may have for their object a clause of purpose with its verb in the subjunctive (356).

44. An indirect question, with its verb in the subjunctive, may be used as the subject or the object of another verb (372, b).

45. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the subject of another verb (393).

46. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the object of another verb (393).

47. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used with verbs meaning *say*, *think*, *know*, *perceive*, and the like, to express an indirect statement (401).

48. The indicative is used with *quod* in a substantive clause to state something which is regarded as a fact (496).

### **628. Participles, the Gerund, and the Gerundive.**

49. A participle may be used as an adjective to modify a noun; or it may express the idea that might otherwise be expressed by a clause of *time*, *concession*, *cause*, or *condition*, or by a *relative clause* (443-445).

50. The gerund is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular, with the constructions of regular nouns (461).

51. When a gerund with an object might be used, the gerundive is the more usual construction. The gerundive is a verbal adjective in agreement with a noun (471, 472).

52. The gerund or the gerundive with **ad** or **causā** may be used to express the purpose of an action (461, 472).

53. The gerundive is used with the forms of the verb **sum** to express necessary action (473).

### 629. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements.

54. The verbs of the subordinate clauses of an indirect statement are in the subjunctive (502).

## FORMATION OF LATIN WORDS

During the first year of the study of Latin the pupil should learn the force of the prefixes and suffixes given below.

### 630. Prefixes.

ā- (ab-, abs-), <i>away from, from</i>	
ad-, <i>to, toward, against</i>	
con-, <i>together; completely</i>	
dē-, <i>down from; from</i>	
ex- (e-), <i>out from, out of; completely</i>	
in-, <i>in, into, on, toward</i>	
in-, <i>not; like English un-, in-</i>	
inter-, <i>between</i>	
per-, <i>through; thoroughly</i>	
prae-, <i>in front of, in advance</i>	
prō-, <i>forward, forth, for</i>	
re- (red-), <i>back, again</i>	
sub- (subs-), <i>under, from under, up</i>	
trāns- (trā-), <i>across, through</i>	

ab + dūcō = abdūcō, <i>lead away</i>
ad + dūcō = addūcō, <i>lead to</i>
con + dūcō = condūcō, <i>lead together</i>
dē + dūcō = dēdūcō, <i>lead down</i>
ē + dūcō = ēdūcō, <i>lead out</i>
in + dūcō = indūcō, <i>lead in, lead on</i>
in + amīcus = inimīcus, <i>unfriendly</i>
inter + cēdō = intercēdō, <i>go between</i>
per + dūcō = perdūcō, <i>lead through</i>
prae + mittō = praemittō, <i>send ahead</i>
prō + dūcō = prōdūcō, <i>lead forth</i>
re + dūcō = redūcō, <i>lead back</i>
su(b)s + teneō = sustineō, <i>hold up, sustain</i>
trā + dūcō = trādūcō, <i>lead across</i>

**631.** Explain the formation of the following verbs, and give the meaning of each :

appropinquō	cognōscō	incolō	īstruō	persuādeō
convocō	dēpōnō	sustineō	conlocō	addūcō
exspectō	reddō	reperiō	cōnstituō	redūcō
dēmōnstrō	dēsum	respondeō	ēdūcō	suscipiō
compleō	coniciō	recipiō	trādō	accēdō
perturbō	permittō	impediō	commoveō	perficiō
praebeō	trānseō	incitō	praeficiō	ēgredior
prohibeō	prōgredior	expugnō	praestō	cōgō
dēsistō	exīstīmō	perveniō	praesum	cōsuēscō
acciō	cōfirmō	praemittō	resistō	revertor
dēbeō	dēfendō	conveniō	excēdō	prōcēdō

**632. Suffixes.**

a. The suffixes **-tās**, **-tūs**, and **-ia**, when added to the stems of nouns, make other nouns denoting *condition* or *characteristic*:

**cīvi** (stem of *cīvis*, *citizen*) + **tās** = **cīvitās**, *citizenship* (the condition or characteristic of a citizen); *state*, *tribe*.

**vir** (weakened stem of *vir*, *man*) + **tūs** = **virtūs**, *manliness*, *valor* (the characteristic of a man).

b. The suffixes **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tās**, and **-tūdō**, when added to the stems of adjectives, make abstract nouns denoting *quality* or *condition*:

**alti** (weakened stem of *altus*, *high*) + **tūdō** = **altitūdō**, *height* (the quality or condition of being high).

c. The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tus**, and **-ium**, when added to the stems of verbs, make verbal nouns denoting an *act* or the *result of an act*:

**mūniō** (stem of *mūniō*, *fortify*) + **tiō** = **mūnitiō**, *a fortifying*, *a fortification* (the act of fortifying, or the result of the act of fortifying).

**633. Explain the formation of the following nouns :**

victōria	nātiō	aedificium	celeritās	dēditiō
praemium	cōsilium	adventus	difficultās	ēruptiō
studium	legiō	exercitus	mūnitiō	altitūdō
imperium	multitūdō	equitātus	praesidium	facultās
virtūs	cīvitās	cōspectus	subsidiū	lēgatiō
conloquium	tempestās	memoria	occāsus	condiciō

## ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

**634. Suggestions for a Notebook.** In making a collection of the English words that are derived from the Latin words of the vocabularies, the pupil should keep the results of his work in a notebook. Such a book should contain, in addition to the list of derivatives, the definition of each derivative, and a brief sentence illustrating its use. A suggested form of arrangement for the notebook follows:

DERIVATIVES OF **Vocō, call**

<b>vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus</b>	vocation, vocational, vocal, evoke, convoke, convocation, vocative, revoke, invoke, vociferous, invocation
	vocation : a <i>calling</i> , occupation vocational : pertaining to a vocation or <i>calling</i> vocal : pertaining to the voice evoke : <i>call</i> out convoke : <i>call</i> together convocation : a <i>calling</i> together, an assembly vocative : case of <i>calling</i> , case of address revoke : <i>call</i> back invoke : <i>call</i> upon, ask for vociferous : of large <i>calling</i> power, with a loud voice invocation : a <i>calling</i> upon, a prayer
	vocation : The choice of a vocation is not always easy vocational : Vocational guidance is often necessary vocal : He is receiving vocal instruction evoke : His remarks evoked applause convoke : He will convoke the council convocation : Convocation day is at hand vocative : The vocative is not common in Caesar revoke : Their punishment will be revoked invoke : The ancients invoked many gods vociferous : The audience became vociferous invocation : The invocation was then made

**635.** The following verbs are especially worthy of study in the manner suggested above because of the large number of English words derived from them :

amō	dūcō	audiō	locō (conlocō)	nāvigō
videō	mittō	dicō	cēdō	pōnō
habeō	capiō	vincō	parō	cognōscō
doceō	iaciō	faciō	pugnō	putō
moneō	sedeō (obsidēō)	dō	teneō	moveō
terreō	timeō	agō	veniō	sūmō

The prefixes listed in 630, and also *ante*, *before*, *circum*, *around*, *ob*, *toward*, and *super*, *above*, usually are evident in the English derivatives of Latin words. But sometimes the prefix appears in a different spelling : thus,

ab- appears as a-, abs-, as- (*abstain*)

ad- appears as ac-, ag-, al-, ap-, ar-, as-, at- (*apparatus*)

con- appears as com-, co-, col-, cor- (*composition*)

in- appears as im-, ir-, il- (*impose*)

ob- appears as oc-, of-, obs-, o- (*occur*)

sub- appears as suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sur- (*suppose*)

## APPENDIX II

### DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

#### NOUNS

**636.**

#### FIRST DECLENSION

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hasta</i>	-a	<i>hastae</i>	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hastae</i>	-ae	<i>hastārum</i>	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hastae</i>	-ae	<i>hastīs</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hastam</i>	-am	<i>hastās</i>	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hastā</i>	-ā	<i>hastīs</i>	-īs

**637.**

#### SECOND DECLENSION

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
	MASC.		MASC.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hortus</i>	-us	<i>hortī</i>	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hortī</i>	-ī	<i>hortōrum</i>	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hortō</i>	-ō	<i>hortīs</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hortum</i>	-um	<i>hortōs</i>	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hortō</i>	-ō	<i>hortīs</i>	-īs

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS	
	NEUT.		NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>dōnum</i>	-um	<i>dōna</i>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dōnī</i>	-ī	<i>dōnōrum</i>	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dōnō</i>	-ō	<i>dōnīs</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>dōnum</i>	-um	<i>dōna</i>	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>dōnō</i>	-ō	<i>dōnīs</i>	-īs

SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir	filius
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	fili
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	filiō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum	filiūm
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō	filiō
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī	filiī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	filiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filiīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	filiōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filiīs
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	proelium			proelia
<i>Gen.</i>	proeli			proeliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	proeliō			proeliis
<i>Acc.</i>	proelium			proelia
<i>Abl.</i>	proeliō			proeliis
PLURAL				

## 638.

## THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR					CASE ENDINGS	
					M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	mīles	virtūs	caput	-s or —	—
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	mīlitis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	mīliti	virtūti	capitī	-ī	-i
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	mīlitem	virtūtem	caput	-em	—
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	mīlite	virtūte	capite	-e	-e
PLURAL						
<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	mīlītēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	mīlītum	virtūtum	capitum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	mīlītibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	mīlītēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	mīlītibus	virtūtibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

639.

*I*-STEMS

## SINGULAR

## CASE ENDINGS

## M. AND F. N.

<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	cohors	mōns	mare	-s (-is, -ēs) —
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	cohortis	montis	maris	-is —
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	cohortī	montī	marī	-ī —
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	cohortem	montem	mare	-em (-im) —
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	cohorte	monte	marī	-e (-ī) —

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	cohortēs	montēs	maria	-ēs	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	cohortium	montium	marium	-ium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	cohortibus	montibus	maribus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostīs (-ēs)	cohortīs (-ēs)	montīs (-ēs)	maria	-is (-ēs)	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	cohortibus	montibus	maribus	-ibus	-ibus

## SING.

## PLUR.

## SING.

## PLUR.

<i>Nom.</i>	ignis	ignēs	turris	turēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignis	ignium	turris	turrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ignī	ignibus	turī	turribus
<i>Acc.</i>	igneum	ignis (-ēs)	turrim (-em)	turris (-ēs)
<i>Abl.</i>	ignī (-e)	ignibus	turī (-e)	turribus

640.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

## SINGULAR

## CASE ENDINGS

## CASE ENDINGS

## MASC.

## NEUT.

<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	-us	cornū	-ū
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
<i>Dat.</i>	exercituī (-ū)	-uī (-ū)	cornū	-ū
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitūm	-um	cornū	-ū
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	-ū	cornū	-ū

		PLURAL		
		CASE ENDINGS		CASE ENDINGS
		MASC.		NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>exercitūs</b>	-ūs	<b>cornua</b>	-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>exercituum</b>	-uum	<b>cornuum</b>	-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>exercitibus</b>	-ibus (-ubus)	<b>cornibus</b>	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>exercitūs</b>	-ūs	<b>cornua</b>	-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>exercitibus</b>	-ibus (-ubus)	<b>cornibus</b>	-ibus

**641.****FIFTH DECLENSION**

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>diēī</b>	<b>diērum</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>rērum</b>	<b>-ēī</b>	<b>-ērum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>diēī</b>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>reī</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ēī</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>diem</b>	<b>diēs</b>	<b>rem</b>	<b>rēs</b>	<b>-em</b>	<b>-ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>diē</b>	<b>diēbus</b>	<b>rē</b>	<b>rēbus</b>	<b>-ē</b>	<b>-ēbus</b>

**642.****SPECIAL PARADIGMS**

	SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>deus</b>	<b>domus</b>	<b>iter</b>	<b>vīs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>deī</b>	<b>domūs (-ī)</b>	<b>itineris</b>	<b>vīs</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>deō</b>	<b>domūi (-ō)</b>	<b>itinerī</b>	<b>vī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>deum</b>	<b>domum</b>	<b>iter</b>	<b>vīm</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>deō</b>	<b>domō (-ū)</b>	<b>itinere</b>	<b>vī</b>

	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>deī (diī, dī)</b>	<b>domūs</b>	<b>itinera</b>	<b>vīrēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>deōrum (deum)</b>	<b>domuum (-ōrum)</b>	<b>itinerum</b>	<b>vīrium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>deīs (diīs, dīs)</b>	<b>domibus</b>	<b>itineribus</b>	<b>vīribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>deōs</b>	<b>domōs (-ūs)</b>	<b>itinera</b>	<b>vīrīs (-ēs)</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>deīs (diīs, dīs)</b>	<b>domibus</b>	<b>itineribus</b>	<b>vīribus</b>

**SINGULAR**

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>Iuppiter</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>Iovis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>Iovī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>Iovem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>Iovē</b>

## ADJECTIVES

## 643. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonus</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberam</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberā</i>	<i>liberō</i>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>	<i>liberārum</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberōs</i>	<i>liberās</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>noster</i>	<i>nostra</i>	<i>nostrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nostrī</i>	<i>nostrae</i>	<i>nostrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nostrō</i>	<i>nostrae</i>	<i>nostrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nostrum</i>	<i>nostram</i>	<i>nostrum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nostrō</i>	<i>nostrā</i>	<i>nostrō</i>

## PLURAL

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> nostrī	nostræ	nostra
<i>Gen.</i> nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
<i>Dat.</i> nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
<i>Acc.</i> nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
<i>Abl.</i> nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

## 644.

## THIRD DECLENSION

## SINGULAR

M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> audāx	audāx
<i>Gen.</i> audācis	audācis
<i>Dat.</i> audācī	audācī
<i>Acc.</i> audācem	audāx
<i>Abl.</i> audācī (-e)	audācī (-e)

## SINGULAR

M. AND F.	N.
brevis	breve
brevis	brevis
brevī	brevī
brevem	breve
brevī	brevī

## PLURAL

Nom.	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācīs (-ēs)	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus

## PLURAL

brevēs	brevia
brevium	brevium
brevibus	brevibus
brevīs (-ēs)	brevia
brevibus	brevibus

## SINGULAR

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
ācer	ācris	ācre
ācris	ācris	ācris
ācī	ācī	ācī
ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ācī	ācī	ācī

## PLURAL

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ācris (-ēs)	ācris (-ēs)	ācria
ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## 645.

## PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

## SINGULAR

M. AND F.	N.
amāns	amāns
amantis	amantis
amantī	amantī
amantem	amāns
amante (-ī)	amante (-ī)

## PLURAL

M. AND F.	N.
amantēs	amantia
amantium	amantium
amantibus	amantibus
amantīs (-ēs)	amantia
amantibus	amantibus

## SINGULAR

M. AND F.

N.

*Nom.* iēns

iēns

*Gen.* euntis

euntis

*Dat.* euntī

euntī

*Acc.* euntem

iēns

*Abl.* eunte (-ī)

eunte (-ī)

## PLURAL

M. AND F.

N.

euntēs

euntia

euntium

euntium

euntibus

euntibus

euntīs (-ēs)

euntia

euntibus

euntibus

## 646.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

## SINGULAR

MASC.

FEM.

NEUT.

*Nom.* aliūs

alīa

aliud

*Gen.* aliūs

alīus

alius

*Dat.* aliī

aliī

aliī

*Acc.* aliūm

aliām

aliud

*Abl.* aliō

aliā

aliō

## PLURAL

MASC.

FEM.

NEUT.

aliīi

alīae

alīa

aliōrum

alīārum

aliōrum

aliīs

aliīs

aliīs

aliōs

aliās

alīa

aliīs

aliīs

aliīs

MASC.

FEM.

NEUT.

*Nom.* ūnūs

ūna

ūnum

M. AND F.

N.

trēs

trīa

*Gen.* ūnūs

ūnīus

ūnius

trīum

trīum

*Dat.* ūnī

ūnī

ūnī

tribus

tribus

*Acc.* ūnum

ūnam

ūnum

trīs (trēs)

trīa

*Abl.* ūnō

ūnā

ūnō

tribus

tribus

MASC.

FEM.

NEUT.

*Nom.* duō

duae

duo

SING.

PLUR.

*Gen.* duōrum

duārum

duōrum

mille

mīlia

*Dat.* duōbus

duābus

duōbus

mille

mīlibus

*Acc.* duōs (duo)

duās

duo

mille

mīlia

*Abl.* duōbus

duābus

duōbus

mille

mīlibus

## 647.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

## POSITIVE

## COMPARATIVE

## SUPERLATIVE

lātūs

lātior, lātiūs

lātissimus, -a, -um

brevis

brevior, brevius

brevissimus, -a, -um

audāx

audācior, audāciūs

audācissimus, -a, -um

miser

miserior, miserius

miserrimus, -a, -um

ācer

ācior, ācriūs

ācerrimus, -a, -um

## 648. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> lātiōr	lātiōs	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
<i>Gen.</i> lātiōrīs	lātiōrīs	lātiōrūm	lātiōrūm
<i>Dat.</i> lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
<i>Acc.</i> lātiōrem	lātiōs	lātiōrēs (-is)	lātiōra
<i>Abl.</i> lātiōre (-i)	lātiōre (-i)	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> —	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i> —	plūris	plūriūm	plūriūm
<i>Dat.</i> —	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i> —	plūs	plūris (-ēs)	plūra
<i>Abl.</i> —	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

## 649. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bonus, -a, -um</i>	<i>melior, melius</i>	<i>optimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>malus, -a, -um</i>	<i>peior, peius</i>	<i>pessimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>magnus, -a, -um</i>	<i>maiōr, maius</i>	<i>maximus, -a, -um</i>
<i>multus, -a, -um</i>	<i>—, plūs</i>	<i>plūrimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>multi, -ae, -a</i>	<i>plūrēs, plūra</i>	<i>plūrimī, -ae, -a</i>
<i>parvus, -a, -um</i>	<i>minor, minus</i>	<i>minimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>facilis, -e</i>	<i>faciliōr, -ius</i>	<i>facillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>difficilis, -e</i>	<i>difficiliōr, -ius</i>	<i>difficillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>similis, -e</i>	<i>similiōr, -ius</i>	<i>simillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>dissimilis, -e</i>	<i>dissimiliōr, -ius</i>	<i>dissimillimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>exterus, outward</i>	<i>exterior, outer, exterior</i>	<i>extrēmus } outermost, extimus } last</i>
<i>inferus, below</i>	<i>inferior, lower</i>	<i>infimus } lowest imus }</i>
<i>posterus, following</i>	<i>posterior, later</i>	<i>postrēmus } last postumus }</i>
<i>superus, above</i>	<i>superior, higher</i>	<i>suprēmus } highest summus }</i>

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
[ <i>cis, citrā, on this side</i> ]	citerior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[ <i>in, intrā, in, within</i> ]	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[ <i>prae, prō, before</i> ]	prior, <i>former</i>	primus, <i>first</i>
[ <i>prope, near</i> ]	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
[ <i>ultrā, beyond</i> ]	ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest</i>

## 650. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē ( <i>cārus</i> )	cārius	cāriissimē
miserē ( <i>miser</i> )	miserius	miserrimē
āriter ( <i>ācer</i> )	ācrius	ācerimē
facile ( <i>facilis</i> )	facilius	facillimē
bene ( <i>bonus</i> )	melius	optimē
male ( <i>malus</i> )	peius	pessimē
multum ( <i>multus</i> )	plūs	plūrimum
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū, <i>long, a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

## 651. NUMERALS

## CARDINALS

1. ūnus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo
3. trēs, tria
4. quattuor
5. quīnque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim

## ORDINALS

- primus, -a, -um
- secundus (*or alter*)
- tertius
- quārtus
- quīntus
- sextus
- septimus
- octāvus
- nōnus
- decimus
- ūndecimus
- duodecimus
- tertius decimus
- quārtus decimus

## CARDINALS

15. quīndecim  
 16. sēdecim  
 17. septendecim  
 18. duodēvīgintī  
 19. ūndēvīgintī  
 20. vīgintī  
 21. { vīgintī ūnus *or*  
     { ūnus et vīgintī  
 22. { vīgintī duo *or*  
     { duo et vīgintī  
 28. duodētrīgintā  
 29. ūndētrīgintā  
 30. trīgintā  
 40. quadrāgintā  
 50. quīnquāgintā  
 60. sexāgintā  
 70. septuāgintā  
 80. octōgintā  
 90. nōnāgintā  
 100. centum  
 101. { centum ūnus *or*  
     { centum et ūnus  
 200. ducentī, -ae, -a  
 300. trecentī  
 400. quadringentī  
 500. quīngentī  
 600. sescentī  
 700. septingentī  
 800. octingentī  
 900. nōngentī  
 1000. mīlle  
 2000. duo mīlia  
 100,000. centum mīlia

## ORDINALS

- quīntus decimus  
 sextus decimus  
 septimus decimus  
 duodēvīcēnsimus  
 ūndēvīcēnsimus  
 vīcēnsimus  
 { vīcēnsimus prīmus *or*  
   { ūnus et vīcēnsimus  
 { vīcēnsimus secundus *or*  
   { alter et vīcēnsimus  
 duodētrīcēnsimus  
 ūndētrīcēnsimus  
 trīcēnsimus  
 quadrāgēnsimus  
 quīnquāgēnsimus  
 sexāgēnsimus  
 septuāgēnsimus  
 octōgēnsimus  
 nōnāgēnsimus  
 centēnsimus  
 { centēnsimus prīmus *or*  
   { centēnsimus ét prīmus  
 ducentēnsimus  
 trecentēnsimus  
 quadringentēnsimus  
 quīngentēnsimus  
 sescentēnsimus  
 septingentēnsimus  
 octingentēnsimus  
 nōngentēnsimus  
 millēnsimus  
 bis millēnsimus  
 centiēns millēnsimus

## PRONOUNS

652.

## PERSONAL

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	ego, <i>I</i>	nōs, <i>we</i>	tū, <i>you</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>		
Gen.	meī	nostrum (-trī)	tuī	vestrum (-trī)		
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs		
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs		
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs		
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	is, <i>he</i>	iī (eī), <i>they</i>	ea, <i>she</i>	eae, <i>they</i>	id, <i>it</i>	ea, <i>they</i>
Gen.	eius,	eōrum, <i>his</i>	eius,	eārum, <i>their</i>	eius,	eōrum, <i>their</i>
Dat.	eī	iīs (eīs)	eī	iīs (eīs)	eī	iīs (eīs)
Acc.	eum	eōs	eam	eās	id	ea
Abl.	eō	iīs (eīs)	eā	iīs (eīs)	eō	iīs (eīs)

a. *Hic* (654) and *ille* (654) are also used as pronouns of the third person.

653.

## REFLEXIVE

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Gen.	meī, <i>of myself</i>	nostrī, <i>of ourselves</i>	tuī, <i>of yourself</i>	vestrī, <i>of yourselves</i>	suī, <i>of himself</i>	suī, <i>of themselves</i>
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

654.

## DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī (eī)	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	e'adem	idem	{ iīdem eīdem	eaedem	e'adem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem	iīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	e'adem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ iīsdem eīsdem	iīsdem	iīsdem
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

## 655.

## RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 656.

## INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis' (qui)	quae	quid (quod)	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 657.

## INDEFINITE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

	PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidām
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

	PLURAL				
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam		
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam		
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdām	quibusdām	quibusdām		
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdām	quāsdām	quaedam		
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdām	quibusdām	quibusdām		
	SINGULAR				
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque)	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemque	quamque	quidque (quodque)	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quōque	quāque	quōque	quōquam	quōquam
<i>Plural rare</i>			<i>Plural missing</i>		

## REGULAR VERBS

## 658. FIRST CONJUGATION — Ā-Verbs

*amō, love*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *a'mō, amā're, amā'vī, amā'tus*Pres. Stem *amā-*      Perf. Stem *amāv-*      Part. Stem *amāt-*

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PRESENT

## PASSIVE VOICE

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

a'mō	amā'mus	a'mor	amā'mur
a'mās	amā'tis	amā'ris	amā'mini
a'mat	amā'mant	amā'tur	aman'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amā'bām	amā'bā'mus	amā'bār	amā'bā'mur
amā'bās	amā'bā'tis	amā'bā'ris	amā'bā'mini
amā'bāt	amā'bā'bant	amā'bā'tur	amā'bān'tur

## FUTURE

<i>I shall love, etc.</i>	
amā'bō	amā'bimus
amā'bis	amā'bitis
amā'bit	amā'bunt

*I shall be loved, etc.*

amā'bor	amā'bimir
amā'beris	amā'bimini
amā'bitur	amā'bun'tur

## PERFECT

*I have loved, loved, did love, etc.      I have been (was) loved, etc.*

amā'vī	amā'vimus
amāvis'tī	amāvis'tis
amā'veit	amāvē'runt

amā'tus	sum
es	amā'ti
est	sunt

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had loved, etc.*

amā'veram	amā'verā'mus
amā'verās	amā'verā'tis
amā'verat	amā'verant

*I had been loved, etc.*

amā'tus	erām
erās	amā'ti
erat	erātis

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have loved, etc.*

amā'verō	amā'verimus
amā'veris	amā'veritis
amā'verit	amā'verint

*I shall have been loved, etc.*

amā'tus	erō
eris	amā'ti
erit	eritis

erit	erunt
------	-------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

a'mem	amē'mus
a'mēs	amē'tis
a'met	a'ment

a'mer	amē'mur
amē'ris	amē'mini
amē'tur	amen'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

amā'rem	amārē'mus
amā'rēs	amārē'tis
amā'ret	amā'rent

amā'er	amārē'mur
amārē'ris	amārē'mini
amārē'tur	amāren'tur

## PERFECT

amā'verim	amāveri'mus
amā'veris	amāveri'tis
amā'verit	amā'verint

amā'tus	sim
sīs	amā'ti
sīt	sītis

sīt	sīnt
-----	------

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

amāvis'sem	amāvissē'mus	amātus	essem	essēmus
amāvis'sēs	amāvissē'tis		essēs	essētis
amāvis'set	amāvis'sent		esset	essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

a'mā, *love thou*amā're, *be thou loved*amā'te, *love ye*amā'mini, *be ye loved*

## FUTURE

amātō, *thou shalt love*amātō, *thou shalt be loved*amātō, *he shall love*amātō, *he shall be loved*amātōte, *you shall love*amantō, *they shall love*amantō, *they shall be loved*

## INFINITIVE

PRES. amā're, *to love*amā'ri, *to be loved*PERF. amāvis'se, *to have loved*amā'tus esse, *to have been loved*FUT. amātū'rūs esse, *to be about to  
love*[amā'tum irī, *to be about to be  
loved*]

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. a'māns, -antis, *loving*

PRES. \_\_\_\_\_

FUT. amātū'rūs, -a, -um, *about to  
love*GER.<sup>1</sup> aman'dus, -a, -um, *to be loved*

PERF. \_\_\_\_\_

PERF. amā'tus, -a, -um, *having been  
loved; loved*

## GERUND

Nom. \_\_\_\_\_

Gen. aman'di, *of loving*Dat. aman'dō, *for loving*Acc. aman'dūm, *loving*Abl. aman'dō, *by loving*

## SUPINE

Acc. [amātūm, *to love*]Abl. [amātū, *to love, in the loving*]<sup>1</sup> Gerundive, sometimes called *future passive participle*.

659.

SECOND CONJUGATION—Ē-Verbs**moneō, advise**

PRINCIPAL PARTS: mo'neō, monē're, mo'nūi, mo'nitus

Pres. Stem monē-      Perf. Stem monu-      Part. Stem monit-

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PRESENT

*I advise, etc.*

mo'neō	monē'mus
mo'nēs	monē'tis
mo'net	mo'nent

## PASSIVE VOICE

*I am advised, etc.*

mo'neor	monē'mur
monē'ris	monē'mini
monē'tur	monen'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monē'bām	monē'bā'mus
monē'bās	monē'bā'tis
monē'bāt	monē'bā'bant

## FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monē'bō	monē'bimus
monē'bīs	monē'bītis
monē'bīt	monē'bītunt

## PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.**I have been (was) advised, etc.*

mo'nūi	monu'imus	sum es est	sumus estis sunt
monuis'tī	monuis'tis		
mo'nuit	monu'erunt		

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monu'eram	monuerā'mus	erām erās erat	erāmus erātis erant
monu'erās	monuerā'tis		
monu'erat	monu'erant		

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.*

monu'erō	monue'rimus
monu'eris	monue'ritis
monu'erit	monue'rint

*I shall have been advised, etc.*

mo'nitus	erō eris erit	erō eris erit	erimus eritis erunt
----------	---------------------	---------------------	---------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

mo'neam	moneā'mus	mo'near	moneā'mur
mo'neās	moneā'tis	moneā'ris	moneā'mini
mo'neat	mo'neant	moneā'tur	monean'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

monē'rem	monērē'mus	monē'rer	monērē'mur
monē'rēs	monērē'tis	monērē'ris	monērē'mini
monē'ret	monē'rent	monērē'tur	monēren'tur

## PERFECT

monu'erim	monuerī'mus	sim	sīmus
monu'eris	monuerī'tis	sīs	sītis
monu'erit	monuerī'nt	sīt	sīnt

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

monuis'sem	monuissē'mus	essem	essēmus
monuis'sēs	monuissē'tis	essēs	essētis
monuis'set	monuissē'sent	esset	essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

mo'nē, advise thou	monē're, be thou advised
monē'te, advise ye	monē'mini, be ye advised

## FUTURE

monētō, thou shalt advise	monētor, thou shalt be advised
monētō, he shall advise	monētor, he shall be advised
monētōte, you shall advise	monētor, they shall be advised
monētō, they shall advise	monētor, they shall be advised

## INFINITIVE

PRES. monē're, <i>to advise</i>	monē'ri, <i>to be advised</i>
PERF. monuis'se, <i>to have advised</i>	mo'nitus esse, <i>to have been advised</i>
FUT. monitū'rus esse, <i>to be about to advise</i>	[mo'nitum iri, <i>to be about to be advised</i> ]

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. mo'nēns, -entis, <i>advising</i>	PRES. _____
FUT. monitū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to advise</i>	GER. monen'dus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised</i>
PERF. _____	PERF. mo'nitus, -a, -um, <i>having been advised, advised</i>

## GERUND

Nom. _____	
Gen.	monen'di, <i>of advising</i>
Dat.	monen'dō, <i>for advising</i>
Acc.	monen'dum, <i>advising</i>
Abl.	monen'dō, <i>by advising</i>

## SUPINE

Acc.	[monitum, <i>to advise</i> ]
Abl.	[monitū, <i>to advise, in the advising</i> ]

## 660.

## THIRD CONJUGATION — Ē-Verbs

regō, *rule*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: re'gō, re'gere, rē'xi, rēct'us

Pres. Stem rege-

Perf. Stem rēx-

Part. Stem rēct-

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PRESENT

*I rule, etc.**I am ruled, etc.*

re'gō

re'gimus

re'gor

re'gimur

re'gis

re'gitis

re'geris

re'gi'mini

re'git

re'gunt

re'gitur

regun'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was ruling, etc.*

regē'bam	regēbā'mus
regē'bās	regēbā'tis
regē'bat	regē'bant

regē'bar	regēbā'mur
regēbā'ris	regēbā'mini
regēbā'tur	regēbāntur

## FUTURE

*I shall rule, etc.*

re'gam	regē'mus
re'gēs	regē'tis
re'get	re'gent

*I shall be ruled, etc.*

re'gar	regē'mur
regē'ris	regē'mini
regē'tur	regen'tur

## PERFECT

*I have ruled, etc.*

rē'xi	rē'ximus
rēxis'ti	rēxis'tis
rē'xit	rēxē'runt

*I have been ruled, etc.*

rēc'tus	sum	rēc'ti	sumus
	es		estis
	est		sunt

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had ruled, etc.*

rē'xeram	rēxerā'mus
rē'xerās	rēxerā'tis
rē'xerat	rē'xerant

*I had been ruled, etc.*

rēc'tus	erām	rēc'ti	erāmus
	erās		erātis
	erat		erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled, etc.*

rē'xerō	rēxe'mimus
rē'xeris	rēxe'mitis
rē'xerit	rē'xerint

*I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēc'tus	erō	rēc'ti	erimus
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

re'gam	regā'mus
re'gās	regā'tis
re'gat	re'gant

re'gar	regā'mur
regā'ris	regā'mini
regā'tur	regan'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

re'gerem	regerē'mus
re'gerēs	regerē'tis
re'geret	re'gerent

re'gerer	regerē'mur
regerē'ris	regerē'mini
regerē'tur	regerēntur

## PERFECT

rē'xerim	rēxerī'mus	rēc'tus	sim sis sit	rēc'ti	sīmus sītis sint
rē'xeris	rēxerī'tis				
rē'xerit	rē'xerint				

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

rēxis'sem	rēxisse'mus	rēc'tus	essem essēs esset	rēc'ti	essēmus essētis essent
rēxis'sēs	rēxisse'tis				
rēxis'set	rēxis'sent				

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

re'ge, rule thou	re'gere, be thou ruled
re'gite, rule ye	regi'mini, be ye ruled

## FUTURE

regitō, thou shalt rule	regitor, thou shalt be ruled
regitō, he shall rule	regitor, he shall be ruled
regitōtē, ye shall rule	
reguntō, they shall rule	reguntor, they shall be ruled

## INFINITIVE

PRES. re'gere, to rule	re'gī, to be ruled
PERF. rēxis'se, to have ruled	rēc'tus esse, to have been ruled
FUT. rēctū'rūs esse, to be about to rule	[rēctū'mi, to be about to be ruled]

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. re'gēns, -entis, ruling	PRES. _____
FUT. rēctū'rūs, -a, -um, about to rule	GER. regen'dus, -a, -um, to be ruled
PERF. _____	PERF. rēc'tus, -a, -um, having been ruled, ruled

## GERUND

Nom. \_\_\_\_\_

Gen.	regen'dī, of ruling
Dat.	regen'dō, for ruling
Acc.	regen'dūm, ruling
Abl.	regen'dō, by ruling

## SUPINE

Acc.	[rēctūm, to rule]
Abl.	[rēctū, to rule, in the ruling]

## 661. THIRD CONJUGATION — Verbs in -iō

*capiō, take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ca'piō, ca'pere, cē'pi, cap'tus*

<i>Pres. Stem cape-</i>	<i>Perf. Stem cēp-</i>	<i>Part. Stem capt-</i>	
<b>ACTIVE VOICE</b>	<b>INDICATIVE</b>	<b>PASSIVE VOICE</b>	
<i>I take, etc.</i>	<b>PRESENT</b>	<i>I am taken, etc.</i>	
ca'piō ca'pis ca'pit	ca'pimus ca'pitis ca'piunt	ca'pior ca'peris ca'pitur	ca'pimur capi'mini capiun'tur
<b>IMPERFECT (PAST)</b>			
<i>I was taking, etc.</i>	<i>I was taken, etc.</i>		
capiē'bam capiē'bās capiē'bat	capiē'bā'mus capiē'bā'tis capiē'bant	capiē'bar capiē'bā'ris capiē'bā'tur	capiē'bā'mur capiē'bā'mini capiēban'tur
<b>FUTURE</b>	<b>I shall be taken, etc.</b>		
<i>I shall take, etc.</i>	<i>I shall be taken, etc.</i>		
ca'piam ca'piēs ca'piet	capiē'mus capiē'tis ca'pient	ca'piar capiē'ris capiē'tur	capiē'mur capiē'mini capien'tur
<b>PERFECT</b>	<b>cap'tus sum, es, est, etc.</b>		
cē'pi, cēpis'ti, cē'pit, etc.	cap'tus sum, es, est, etc.		
<b>PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)</b>			
cē'peram, cē'perās, cē'perat, etc.	cap'tus eram, erās, erat, etc.		
<b>FUTURE PERFECT</b>			
cē'perō, cē'peris, cē'perit, etc.	cap'tus erō, eris, erit, etc.		
<b>SUBJUNCTIVE</b>			
<b>PRESENT</b>			
ca'piam, ca'piās, ca'piat, etc.	ca'piar, -iā'ris, -iā'tur, etc.		
<b>IMPERFECT (PAST)</b>			
ca'perem, ca'perēs, ca'peret, etc.	ca'perer, -erē'ris, -erē'tur, etc.		

## PERFECT

cē'perim, cē'peris, cē'perit, etc. cap'tus sim, sis, sit, etc.

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

cēpis'sem, cēpis'sēs, cēpis'set, etc. cap'tus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

PRES. ca'pe, take thou ca'pere, be thou taken

ca'pite, take ye capi'mini, be ye taken

FUT. capitō, thou shalt take, etc. capitor, thou shalt be taken, etc.

## INFINITIVE

PRES. ca'pere, to take ca'pi, to be taken

PERF. cēpis'se, to have taken cap'tus esse, to have been taken

FUT. captū'rūs esse, to be about to [cap'tum īrī, to be about to be  
take taken]

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. ca'piēns, -ientis, taking PRES. \_\_\_\_\_

FUT. captū'rūs, -a, -um, about to GER. capien'dus, -a, -um, to be taken  
take PERF. cap'tus, -a, -um, having been

PERF. \_\_\_\_\_ taken, taken

## GERUND

Gen. capien'di, of taking, etc.

## SUPINE

Acc. [captum, to take]

Abl. [captū, to take, in the taking]

## 662. FOURTH CONJUGATION — I-Verbs

audiō, hear

PRINCIPAL PARTS: au'diō, audi're, audi'vī, audi'tus

Pres. Stem audi- Perf. Stem audiv- Part. Stem audit-

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

## PASSIVE VOICE

I hear, etc.

## PRESENT

I am heard, etc.

au'diō audi'mus

au'dior

audi'mur

au'dis audi'tis

audi'ris

audi'mini

au'dit audi'uent

audi'tur

audiun'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was hearing, etc.*

audiēbam

audiēbās

audiēbat

audiēbā'mus

audiēbā'tis

audiēbā'bant

audiēbā'bar

audiēbā'ris

audiēbā'tur

audiēbā'mur

audiēbā'mini

audiēban'tur

## FUTURE

*I shall hear, etc.*

au'diam

au'diēs

au'diet

audiē'mus

audiē'tis

au'dient

au'diar

audiē'ris

audiē'tur

audiē'mur

audiē'mini

audien'tur

## PERFECT

*I have heard, etc.*

audiī'vī

audiivis'ti

audiī'vit

audiī'vimus

audiivis'tis

audiivē'runt

audiī'tus { sum  
es  
estaudiī'ti { sumus  
estis  
sunt

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had heard, etc.*

audiī'veram

audiī'verās

audiī'verat

audiī'verā'mus

audiī'verā'tis

audiī'verant

audiī'tus { eram  
erās  
erataudiī'ti { erāmus  
erātis  
erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.*

audiī'verō

audiī'veris

audiī'verit

audiī'verimus

audiī'veritis

audiī'verint

*I shall have been heard, etc.*audiī'tus { erō  
eris  
eritaudiī'ti { erimus  
eritis  
erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

au'diam

au'diās

au'diat

audiā'mus

audiā'tis

au'diant

au'diar

audiā'ris

audiā'tur

audiā'mur

audiā'mini

audian'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

audiī'rem

audiī'res

audiī'ret

audiī'remus

audiī'retis

audiī'rent

audiī'rer

audiī'reris

audiī'retur

audiī'remur

audiī'remini

audiren'tur

PERFECT			
audi'verim	audi'veri'mus	audi'tus	sim sīs sit
audi'veris	audi'veri'tis		
audi'verit	audi'verint		
PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)			
audivis'sem	audi'vissē'mus	audi'tus	essem essēs esset
audivis'sēs	audi'vissē'tis		
audivis'set	audi'vis'sent		
IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT			
au'dī, <i>hear thou</i>		audi're, <i>be thou heard</i>	
audi'te, <i>hear ye</i>		audi'mini, <i>be ye heard</i>	
FUTURE			
auditō, <i>thou shalt hear</i>		auditor, <i>thou shalt be heard</i>	
auditō, <i>he shall hear</i>		auditor, <i>he shall be heard</i>	
auditōte, <i>ye shall hear</i>			
audiuntō, <i>they shall hear</i>		audiunctor, <i>they shall be heard</i>	
INFINITIVE			
PRES. audi're, <i>to hear</i>		audi'rī, <i>to be heard</i>	
PERF. audivis'se, <i>to have heard</i>		audi'tus esse, <i>to have been heard</i>	
FUT. auditū'rus esse, <i>to be about to</i>	[audi'tum īrī, <i>to be about to be</i>		
hear	heard]		
PARTICIPLES			
PRES. au'diēns, -ientis, <i>hearing</i>	PRES. _____		
FUT. auditū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to</i>	GER. audien'dus, -a, -um, <i>to be</i>		
hear	heard		
PERF. _____	PERF. audi'tus, -a, -um, <i>having been</i>		
	heard, <i>heard</i>		
GERUND			
Nom. _____			
Gen. audien'dī, <i>of hearing</i>			
Dat. audien'dō, <i>for hearing</i>			
Acc. audien'dum, <i>hearing</i>			
Abl. audien'dō, <i>by hearing</i>			
SUPINE			
Acc. [audi'tum, <i>to hear</i> ]			
Abl. [auditū, <i>to hear, in the hearing</i> ]			

## IRREGULAR VERBS

663.

*sum, be*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sum, esse, fu'i, futū'rus*Pres. Stem *es-*      Perf. Stem *fu-*      Part. Stem *fut-*

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

*sum, I am*  
*es, you are*  
*est, he (she, it) is*

*su'mus, we are*  
*es'tis, you are*  
*sunt, they are*

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

*e'ram, I was*  
*e'rās, you were*  
*e'rat, he was*

*erā'mus, we were*  
*erā'tis, you were*  
*e'runt, they were*

## FUTURE

*e'rō, I shall be*  
*e'ris, you will be*  
*e'rit, he will be*

*e'rimus, we shall be*  
*e'ritis, you will be*  
*e'runt, they will be*

## PERFECT

*fu'i, I have been, was*  
*fu'sti, you have been, were*  
*fu'it, he has been, was*

*fu'imus, we have been, were*  
*fu'stis, you have been, were*  
*fuē'runt, they have been, were*

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*fu'eram, I had been*  
*fu'erās, you had been*  
*fu'erat, he had been*

*fuerā'mus, we had been*  
*fuerā'tis, you had been*  
*fuerant, they had been*

## FUTURE PERFECT

*fu'erō, I shall have been*  
*fu'eris, you will have been*  
*fu'erit, he will have been*

*fue'rimus, we shall have been*  
*fue'ritis, you will have been*  
*fue'rint, they will have been*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

SING.	PLUR.
sim	sí'mus
sis	sí'tis
sit	sint

## PERFECT

fu'erim	fuerí'mus
fu'eris	fuerí'tis
fu'erit	fu'erint

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

es, be thou
es'te, be ye

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

SING.	PLUR.
es'sem	essé'mus
es'sés	essé'tis
es'set	es'sent

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

fuis'sem	fuisse'mus
fuis'sés	fuisse'tis
fuis'set	fuisse'sent

## FUTURE

estō, thou shalt be
estō, he shall be
estōte, ye shall be
suntō, they shall be

## INFINITIVE

PRES. es'se, to be

PERF. fuisse, to have been

FUT. futū'rūs esse, or fo're, to be  
about to be

## PARTICIPLE

futū'rūs, -a, -um, about to be

## 664. possum, be able, can

PRINCIPAL PARTS: possum, posse, potui, —

## INDICATIVE

## SING. PLUR.

PRES.	possum	possumus	SING.	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis		possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt		possit	possint
IMPF.	poteram	poterāmus		possem	possēmus
FUT.	poterō	poterimus		—	—
PERF.	potuī	potuimus		potuerim	potuerīmus
PLUP.	potueram	potuerāmus		potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus		—	—

## INFINITIVE

PRES. posse

PERF. potuisse

## 665.

## volō, nōlō, mālō

PRINCIPAL PARTS: { volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, will, wish  
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, will not  
 mālō, mālle, māluī, —, be more willing, prefer

## INDICATIVE

SINGULAR		
PRES. volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
PLURAL		
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF. volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT. volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF. voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP. volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P. voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR		
PRES. velim	nōlim	mālim
velīs	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
PLURAL		
velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF. vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF. voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP. voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

## IMPERATIVE

PRES. —	nōlī	—
	nōlīte	—
FUT. —	nōlītō, etc.	—

## INFINITIVE

PRES. velle	nölle	mälle
PERF. voluisse	nöluisse	mäluisse

## PARTICIPLE

PRES. volēns	nölenſ
	—

666. *ferō, bear, carry, endure*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*

*Pres. Stem fer-*      *Perf. Stem tul-*      *Part. Stem lät-*

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE

PRES.	ferō	ferimus
	fers	fertis
	fert	ferunt
IMPF.	ferēbam	
FUT.	feram	
PERF.	tulī	
PLUP.	tuleram	
F. P.	tulerō	

## PASSIVE

feror	ferimur
ferris	ferimini
fertur	feruntur
ferēbar	
ferar	
lātus sum	
lātus eram	
lātus erō	

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulisset	lātus essem

## IMPERATIVE

## ACTIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte
FUT.	fertō	fertōte
	fertō	feruntō

## PASSIVE

ferre	feriminī
fertor	
fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE

PRES. ferre	ferri
PERF. tulisse	lātus esse
FUT. lātūrus esse	[lātum īrī]

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. ferēns	PRES. —
FUT. lātūrus	GER. ferendus
PERF. —	PERF. lātus
GERUND	
Gen. ferendī	SUPINE
Dat. ferendō	
Acc. ferendum	[lātum]
Abl. ferendō	[lātū]

667.

eō, go

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, iī (īvī), itūrus

Pres. stem ī-      Perf. stem ī- (īv-)      Part. stem it-

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRES. eō	īmus	eam	ī	īte
īs	ītis			
it	eunt			
IMPF. ībam		īrem		
FUT. ībō		—	ītō	ītōte
PERF. iī		ierim	{ īto	ēuntō
PLUP. ieram		īssem		
F. P. ierō		—		

## INFINITIVE

PRES. ire	PARTICIPLES
PERF. īsse	iēns, euntis (645)
FUT. itūrus esse	ītum itūrus

## GERUND

Gen. eundī	SUPINE
Dat. eundō	
Acc. eundum	[ītum]
Abl. eundō	[ītū]

## 668.

*fiō, be made, become, happen*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fiō, fieri, factus sum*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRES.	<i>fiō</i>	<i>fīm</i>	<i>fi</i>	<i>fite</i>
	<i>fīs</i>	<i>fīm</i>		
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fīunt</i>		
IMPF.	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fīrem</i>		
FUT.	<i>fīam</i>	—		
PERF.	<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>		
PLUP.	<i>factus erām</i>	<i>factus essem</i>		
F. P.	<i>factus erō</i>	—		
INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES		
PRES.	<i>fieri</i>	GER. <i>faciendus</i>		
PERF.	<i>factus esse</i>	PERF. <i>factus</i>		
FUT.	[ <i>factum īrī</i> ]	—		

## 669.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS:	I. <i>hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge</i>
	II. <i>vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear</i>
	III. <i>sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow</i>
	IV. <i>potior, potīrī, potītus sum, get possession of</i>

## INDICATIVE

PRES.	<i>hortor</i>	<i>vereor</i>	<i>sequor</i>	<i>potior</i>
	<i>hortārīs</i>	<i>verērīs</i>	<i>sequerīs</i>	<i>potīrīs</i>
	<i>hortātūr</i>	<i>verētūr</i>	<i>sequitūr</i>	<i>potītūr</i>
	<i>hortāmūr</i>	<i>verēmūr</i>	<i>sequimūr</i>	<i>potīmūr</i>
	<i>hortāmīnī</i>	<i>verēmīnī</i>	<i>sequimīnī</i>	<i>potīmīnī</i>
	<i>hortantūr</i>	<i>verēntūr</i>	<i>sequūntūr</i>	<i>potīntūr</i>
IMPF.	<i>hortābar</i>	<i>verēbar</i>	<i>sequēbar</i>	<i>potīēbar</i>
FUT.	<i>hortābor</i>	<i>verēbor</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>potiar</i>
PERF.	<i>hortātūs sum</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>	<i>secūtūs sum</i>	<i>potītūs sum</i>
PLUP.	<i>hortātūs erām</i>	<i>veritus erām</i>	<i>secūtūs erām</i>	<i>potītūs erām</i>
F. P.	<i>hortātūs erō</i>	<i>veritus erō</i>	<i>secūtūs erō</i>	<i>potītūs erō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRES. horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF. hortärer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
PERF. hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP. hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem
IMPERATIVE			
PRES. hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT. hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potitor
INFINITIVE			
PRES. hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF. hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT. hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse
PARTICIPLES			
PRES. hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT. hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF. hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER. hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
GERUND			
hortandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.
SUPINE			
[hortātum, -tū]	[veritum, -tū]	[secūtum, -tū]	[potītum, -tū]

## 670. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## INDICATIVE

- PRES. amandus sum, *I am to be, must be, loved*  
 IMPF. amandus eram, *I was to be, had to be, loved*  
 FUT. amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved*  
 PERF. amandus fuī, *I was to be, had to be, loved*  
 PLUP. amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved*  
 F. P. amandus fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. amandus sim  
 IMPF. amandus essem  
 PERF. amandus fuerim  
 PLUP. amandus fuisse

## INFINITIVE

- PRES. amandus esse, *to have to be loved*  
 PERF. amandus fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

So in the other conjugations:

monendus sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*  
 regendus sum, *I am to be, must be, ruled*  
 capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*  
 audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard*  
 etc.

## 671.

## SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB

The synopsis of a verb is a summary of the conjugation of that verb made by stating in succession the forms for some particular person and number.

The following is a synopsis of **amō** in the third person singular, arranged by stems. The infinitives, participles, etc. are added to complete each system.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **amō, amāre, amāvi, amātus**

*Pres. Stem amā-*      *Perf. Stem amāv-*      *Part. Stem amāt-*

## PRESENT SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PRESENT STEM

ACTIVE	INDICATIVE	PASSIVE
PRES. amā-t		amā-tur
IMPF. amā-bat		amā-bātūr
FUT. amā-bit		amā-bitūr
SUBJUNCTIVE		
PRES. amē-t		amē-tur
IMPF. amā-ret		amā-rētūr
INFINITIVE		
PRES. amā-re		amā-rī
PARTICIPLE		
PRES. amā-ns		GER. ama-ndus
GERUND		
	ama-ndī	

## PERFECT SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PERFECT STEM

## INDICATIVE

- PERF. amāv-it  
 PLUP. amāv-erat  
 F. P. amāv-erit

## SUBJUNCTIVE

- amāv-erit  
 amāv-isset
- 

## INFINITIVE

- PERF. amāv-isse

## PARTICIPIAL SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PARTICIPIAL STEM

## INDICATIVE

- PERF. amāt-us est  
 PLUP. amāt-us erat  
 F. P. amāt-us erit

## SUBJUNCTIVE

- amāt-us sit  
 amāt-us esset
- 

## INFINITIVE

- PERF. \_\_\_\_\_  
 FUT. amāt-ūrus esse

- amāt-us esse  
 [amāt-um iri]

## PARTICIPLE

- FUT. amāt-ūrus

- PERF. amāt-us

## SUPINE

- [amāt-um]  
 [amāt-ū]

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets (except in the case of compounds with one or both parts changed in form) are sometimes primitives, sometimes cognates.

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not intended to be used as such. They are inserted to show literal meanings.

Abbreviations are generally self-explanatory. Cf. (*confer*) = compare; irr. = irregular.

Words printed in SMALL CAPITALS are at once derivatives and definitions: as, ABDUCT, under *abdūcō*. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in *italic* in parentheses: as, (*Accident*), under *accidō*.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupils should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

**ā** (ab), *prep. with abl.*, from, by, off

**ab-dō**, *abdere*, *abdidī*, *abditus* [-dō, put], hide, conceal

**ab-dūcō**, *abducere*, *abdūxī*, *abductus*, lead away, take off; ABDUCT

**ab-eō**, *abire*, *abiī*, *abitūrus*, go from, go off, go away

**ab-ićiō**, *abdicere*, *abiēcī*, *abiectus* [-iaciō], throw off, throw down, cast away. (*Abject*)

**ab-ripiō**, *abripere*, *abripui*, *abreptus* [-rapiō], snatch away, carry off

**abs-cidō**, *abscidere*, *abscidī*, *abscisus* [*ab(s)-caedō*], cut off

**abs-trahō**, *abstrahere*, *abstrāxī*, *abstrāctus* [*ab(s)-*], drag away, draw off. (*Abstract*)

**ab-sum**, *abesse*, *āfui*, *āfutūrus*, be away, be ABSENT, be distant, be off; *with ā and abl.*

**ac**, *conj.*, see *atque*  
**ac-cēdō**, *accēdere*, *accessī*, *accessūrus* [*ad-*], go or come near, approach. (*Accession*.) Cf. *adeō* and *appro-pinquō*

**ac-cendō**, *accendere*, *accendi*, *accē-sus* [*ad-candeō*, shine], kindle, set fire to, light; inflame

**ac-cidō**, *accidere*, *accidī*, — [*ad-cadō*, fall], fall upon, fall out, happen. (*Accident*.) Cf. *ēveniō* and *fiō*

**ac-cipiō**, *accipere*, *accēpī*, *acceptus* [*ad-capiō*], (take to), receive, ACCEPT

- ac-currō, accurrere, currī (accurred), accusūrus [*ad-*], run up, run toward
- ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, sharp, keen; active, EAGER. (*Acrid*)
- acervus, -ī, *m.*, pile, heap, mass
- aciēs, -ēi, *f.* [*ācer*], edge; line, line of battle, battle array
- Ācrisius, Ācrisi, *m.*, ACRISIUS, grandfather of Perseus
- ācriter, *adv.* [*ācer*], sharply, EAGERLY, spiritedly, fiercely
- ad*, *prep.* with *acc.*, to, toward, near, up to; with gerund or gerundive, to, for; *ad hunc modum*, after this manner; as *adv.*, about
- ad-aequō*, adaequāre, adaequāvī, *ad-aequātus*, become EQUAL to, EQUAL. (*Adequate*)
- adclivis*, -e, *adj.*, sloping toward, rising, ascending. (*Acclivity*)
- ad-dūcō*, addūcere, addūxī, adductus, lead to, influence. (*Adduce*)
- ad-eō*, adire, adiī, *aditus*, go to, approach, visit. Cf. accēdō and *apropinquō*
- ad-ferō*, adferre, attulī, adlātus, bear to, bring, render
- ad-ficiō*, adficere, adfēcī, adfectus [-*faciō*], AFFECT, influence; afflict, oppress
- ad-gredior*, adgredī, *adgressus sum* [-*gradior*, go], approach, attack. (*Aggressive*)
- ad-hibeō*, adhibēre, adhibui, adhibitus [-*habeō*], apply, employ, use
- ad-hūc*, *adv.*, hitherto, as yet, still
- ad-iciō*,adicere, adiēcī, adiectus [-*iaciō*], add. (*Adjective*)
- aditus*, -ūs, *m.* [*adeō*], approach, way of access. Cf. adventus
- ad-iungō*, adiungere, adiūnxī, adiūnctus, join to. (*Adjunct*)
- ad-ligō*, adligāre, adligāvī, adligātus, bind to, bind
- admīrātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*admīror*], ADMIRATION, astonishment, wonder
- ad-mīrō*, admīrārī, admīrātus sum [*admīrātiō*], wonder at, ADMIRE
- ad-mittō*, admittere, admīsī, admīsus, permit, allow; give rein to. (*Admit*)
- admōtus*, see *admoveō*
- ad-moveō*, admovēre, admōvī, admōtus, (move to), apply, employ
- ad-nectō*, adnectere, *adnexuī* (*adnexi*), adnexus, tie to, fasten to, attach. (*Annex*)
- ad-olēscō*, adolēscere, adolēvī, adul-tus, grow up. (*Adult*)
- ad-ōrō*, adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātus, pray to, worship, ADORE
- ad-spiciō*, adspicere, adspexī, adspec-tus [-*speciō*, look], look at, look upon, behold. (*Aspect*)
- ad-stō*, adstāre, adstītī, —, stand near
- ad-sum*, adesse, adfūi, adfutūrus, be present, be here; with dat.
- Aduatuci*, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the ADUATUCI, a Gallic tribe
- adulēscēns*, -entis, *m. and f.* [*ado-lescō*], youth, young person. (*Adolescence*.) Cf. iuvenis
- adultus*, see *adolēscō*
- advectus*, see *advehō*
- ad-vehō*, advehere, advēxi, advectus, carry to, bring on, bring

- adventus**, -ūs, *m.*, approach, arrival.  
(*Advent.*) Cf. *aditus*
- adversus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, turned toward, opposite, in front, ADVERSE
- adversus**, *prep. with acc.*, against
- aedēs** (*aedis*), -is, *f.*, building, temple; plur., house
- aedificium**, *aedificī*, *n.* [*aedificō*], building. (*Edifice*)
- aedificō**, *aedificāre*, *aedificāvī*, *aedificātus* [*aedēs-faciō*], build. (*Edify*)
- aeger**, *aegra*, *aegrum*, *adj.*, sick, weak, feeble
- aequus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, EQUAL
- āer**, *āeris*, *m.* (*acc. āera*), AIR
- aes**, *aeris*, *n.*, copper, bronze
- aestās**, -ātis, *f.*, summer
- aetās**, -ātis, *f.*, life, AGE
- Aethiopēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, the ETHIOPIANS
- Aetna**, -ae, *f.*, AETNA, a mountain in Sicily
- Āfrica**, -ae, *f.*, AFRICA
- Āfricānus**, -i, *m.*, AFRICANUS
- ager**, *agri*, *m.*, field, territory, land
- agger**, -eris, *m.*, mound, rampart
- Āgis**, -idis, *m.*, AGIS, a king of Sparta
- agmēn**, -inis, *n.* [*agō*], (the thing led), army, host, column
- agō**, *agere*, ēgi, ēctus, drive, lead, bring up; ACT, do; treat; celebrate; pass (life)
- agricola**, -ae, *m.* [*ager-colō*], farmer, husbandman
- āla**, -ae, *f.*, wing
- Alba**, -ae, *f.*, ALBA, an ancient city of Italy
- Albānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ALBAN; as noun, an ALBAN, inhabitant of Alba
- albus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, white
- Alcmēna**, -ae, *f.*, ALCMENA, the mother of Hercules
- aliās**, *adv.* [*alius*], elsewhere, at another time
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*alius*], another's; unfavorable. (*Alien*)
- ali-quandō**, *adv.* [*alius*], at some time; formerly, once. Cf. *ōlim*
- aliquis** (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod), *indef. pron. and adj.*, some one, some, any
- alius**, -a, -ud, *adj. and pron.*, another, other, else; *alius . . . alius*, one . . . another. (*Alias.*) Cf. *cēteri*
- Allobrogēs**, -um, *m. plur.*, the ALLOBROGES, a tribe of Gaul
- Alpēs**, -ium, *f. plur.*, the ALPS
- altāria**, -ium, *n. plur.*, ALTAR
- alter**, -era, -erum, *adj. and pron.*, the one, the other (of two); second; *alter . . . alter*, the one . . . the other. (*Alternative*)
- altitudō**, -inis, *f.* [*altus*], height
- altum**, -i, *n.* [*altus*], the sea
- altus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep
- alveus**, -i, *m.*, hollow vessel, tub, trough
- Ambarri**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the AMBARRI, a tribe of Gaul, near the Hædui
- ambulō**, *ambulāre*, *ambulāvī*, *ambulātūrus*, walk, take a walk. (*Perambulate*)
- āmentia**, -ae, *f.*, want of reason, madness

amicitia, -ae, *f.* [*amicus*], friend-  
ship  
 amicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*amō*], friendly ;  
*as noun*, friend. (*Amiable*)  
 ā-mittō, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus,  
*send away ; lose*  
 amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus [*amor*],  
*love, like, be fond of*  
 amor, -ōris, *f.* [*amō*], love  
 ā-moveō, āmovēre, āmōvī, āmōtus,  
*move away, put aside*  
 ampliō, ampliare, ampliāvī, ampli-  
 atus [*amplus*], increase, extend.  
*(Ampliative)*  
 amplus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ampliō*], large,  
*wide; honorable. (Ample, Amplify)*  
**Amūlius, Amūlī, *m.*, AMULIUS**, father  
*of Rhea Silvia*  
 an, *conj.*, or  
 ancilla, -ae, *f.*, maidservant  
 ancora, -ae, *f.*, ANCHOR  
**Ancus Mārcius, Ancī Mārcī, *m.*,**  
*ANCUS MARCIUS, one of the seven  
 kings of Rome*  
**Andromeda, -ae, *f.*, ANDROMEDA**  
 anguis, -is, *m. and f.*, serpent, snake  
 angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow.  
*(Anguish)*  
 anima, -ae, *f.* [*animus*], breath, soul,  
*life. (Animate)*  
 anim-advertō, animadvertere, anim-  
 advertī, animadversus [*animus-*],  
*turn the mind to, notice*  
 animus, -i, *m.* [*anima*], mind, soul,  
*spirit, disposition. Cf. mēns*  
 annōna, -ae, *f.* [*annus*], (*the year's  
 supply*), provisions ; price (of pro-  
 visions), market ; scarcity  
 annus, -i, *m.*, year. (*Annual*)

ante, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*,  
*before*  
 anteā, *adv.* [*ante*], before  
 ante-cēdō, antecēdere, antecessi, an-  
 tecessūrus, go before. (*Antecedent*)  
**Antemnātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the in-**  
*habitants of Antemnæ*  
 ante-quam, *conj.*, sooner than, be-  
*fore*  
 antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ante*], old,  
*ancient. (Antiquity)*  
 antrum, -i, *n.*, cave  
 anxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, troubled,  
*ANXIOUS*  
 aperiō, aperire, aperui, apertus, open  
**Apollō, -inis, *m.*, APOLLO**, a god of  
*the Greeks*  
 appellō, appellare, appellāvī, ap-  
 pellātus [*ad-*], address, call, name.  
*(Appeal.) Cf. vocō*  
 ap-pellō, appellere, appulī, appulsus  
 [*ad-*], (drive to) ; nāvem appellere,  
*land, put in*  
 ap-prehendō, apprehendere, appre-  
 hendi, apprehēnsus [*ad-*], seize.  
*(Apprehend)*  
 ap-propinquō, appropinquare, ap-  
 propinquāvī, appropinquātūrus  
 [*ad-*], approach, come near to.  
*Cf. adeō and accēdō*  
 aptō, aptāre, aptāvī, aptātus, fit.  
*(Adapt)*  
 apud, *prep.* with *acc.*, with, by, near,  
*among*  
 aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. (*Aquatic*)  
**Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, AQUILEIA**, a city at  
*the head of the Adriatic*  
**Aquitānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the AQUI-**  
*TANI*, a tribe of Gaul

- āra, -ae, f., altar  
**Arar**, -aris, m., the Saône, a river of Gaul, flowing into the Rhone  
**arbitror**, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum, think, suppose. (*Arbitrator.*) Cf. existimō and putō  
**arbor**, -oris, f., tree  
**arca**, -ae, f., box, chest, ARK  
**arcus**, -ūs, m., bow. (*Arc*)  
**Ardea**, -ae, f., ARDEA, a city of Italy  
**arduuus**, -a, -um, adj., steep; difficult, ARDUOUS  
**Argī**, -ōrum, m. plur., ARGOS, a city of Greece  
**Aristotelēs**, -is, m., ARISTOTLE, a Greek philosopher  
**arma**, -ōrum, n. plur. [*armō*], ARMS, weapons, ARMOR  
**armō**, armāre, armāvī, armātus [*arma*], ARM, equip  
**ar-ripiō**, arripere, arripui, arreptus [*ad-rapiō*], seize, snatch  
**Arrūns**, Arruntis, m., ARRUNS, a son of Tarquinius Superbus  
**ars**, artis, f., ART, skill  
**a-scendō**, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsus [*ad-scandō*, climb], climb to, mount, ASCEND  
**ascēnsus**, -ūs, m. [*ascendō*], a going up, ASCENT  
**at**, conj., but. Cf. sed and autem  
**Athēnae**, -ārum, f. plur., ATHENS  
**Atlās**, -antis, m., ATLAS, one of the Titans  
**at-que**, conj., used before vowels and consonants, ac before consonants only [*ad-*], and also, and especially, and; as. Cf. et and -que  
**atrōx**, -ōcis, adj., savage, fierce, severe. (*Atrocious.*) Cf. saevus and trux  
**at-tonitus**, -a, -um, adj. [ad-], thunderstruck, astounded, awe-struck  
**auctōritās**, -ātis, f., power, AUTHORITY, influence  
**audācia**, -ae, f. [*audāx*], daring, boldness, AUDACITY  
**audāx**, -ācis, adj., daring, bold. (*Audacious*)  
**audiō**, audire, audīvī (audīl), audītus, hear, listen. (*Audience*)  
**au-ferō**, auferre, abstuli, ablātus [ab(s)-], bear off, carry away, take away. (*Ablative*)  
**augeō**, augēre, auxī, auctus [*auxiliū*], increase, enlarge. (*Augment*)  
**aureus**, -a, -um, adj. [*aurum*], of gold, golden  
**aurum**, -i, n., gold  
**aut**, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or. Cf. vel  
**autem**, conj. (*never used as the first word*), but, however, moreover, now. Cf. sed  
**auxiliōr**, auxiliāri, auxiliātus sum [*auxiliū*], give help, aid, assist, succor  
**auxiliūm**, auxiliī, n. [*augeō*], help, aid, support. (*Auxiliary*)  
**Aventinus**, -a, -um, adj., AVENTINE, of the AVENTINE (one of the hills of Rome)  
**ā-vertō**, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, turn away, turn aside, AVERT, remove  
**avus**, -i, m., grandfather

barbarus, -i, m., BARBARIAN  
 Belgae, -arum, m. plur., the BEL-  
     GIANS or BELGÆ, a Gallic tribe  
 bellum, -i, n., war. (*Belligerent*)  
 bēlua, -ae, f., beast, monster  
 bene, adv. [*bonus*], well  
 beneficium, benefici, n. [*bene-faciō*],  
     kindness, service, BENEFIT  
 bibō, bibere, bibi, —, drink. (*Im-  
     bibe*)  
 bis, adv., twice  
 bonitās, -ātis, f. [*bonus*], fertility,  
     goodness  
 bonus, -a, -um, adj., good, kind  
 brevis, -e, adj., short, BRIEF  
 Britannia, -ae, f., BRITAIN  
 Britannus, -i, m., a BRITON, in-  
     habitant of Britannia  
 Brutii or Brittii, -ōrum, m. plur.,  
     the BRUTTII, a people of southern  
     Italy  
 Brütus, -i, m., BRUTUS, a Roman  
     surname

C., abbreviation for Gāius, Caius

caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind  
 caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus, cut;  
     kill. (*Suicide*)

Caelius, -a, -um, adj., CÆLIAN

caelum, -i, n., sky, heaven, heavens

Caenīnēnsēs, -ium, m. plur., the in-  
     habitants of Cænina

Caesar, -aris, m., Caius Julius  
     CÆSAR, a famous Roman

cale-faciō, calefacere, calefēcī, cale-  
     factus [*caleō*, be hot], make hot,  
     heat

Campānia, -ae, f., CAMPANIA, a dis-  
     trict of Italy

canis, -is, m. and f., dog. (*Canine*)  
 Cannae, -ārum, f. plur., CANNÆ, a  
     town of southern Italy  
 cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātus,  
     sing. (*Chant*)  
 capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, take,  
     seize, CAPTURE; form  
 Capitōlium, Capitōli, n., the CAP-  
     ITOL, temple of Jupiter at Rome;  
     the CAPITOLINE Hill  
 captiva, -ae, f. [*capiō*], CAPTIVE,  
     prisoner  
 captivus, -i, m. [*capiō*], CAPTIVE,  
     prisoner  
 Capua, -ae, f., CAPUA, a city in  
     Italy  
 caput, -itis, n., head; person.  
     (*Capital*)  
 careō, carēre, carui, caritūrus, be in  
     want of, lack, want; *with abl.*  
     (*Caret*)  
 carō, carnis, f., flesh. (*Carnal*)  
 carrus, -i, m., wagon, CART, CAR  
 cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious  
 casa, -ae, f., hut, cottage  
 Cassivellaunus, -i, m., CASSIVEL-  
     LAUNUS, a British chief  
 castellum, -i, n. [*diminutive of*  
     *castrum*, fortress], redoubt, strong-  
     hold. (*Castle*)  
 Casticus, -i, m., CASTICUS, a Gallic  
     chief  
 castra, -ōrum, n. plur., camp.  
     (*Chester*)  
 cāsus, -ūs, m., a falling; chance;  
     misfortune, loss. (*Case*)  
 cauda, -ae, f., tail.  
 causa, -ae, f., CAUSE, reason; causā,  
     *after a genitive*, for the sake

- cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, give way, retire. (*Secede*)
- celeber, -bris, -bre, adj. [*celebrō*], frequented, visited; renowned, CELEBRATED
- celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus [*celeber*], frequent, throng. (*Celebrate*)
- celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick
- celeritās, -ātis, f. [*celer*], swiftness, speed, quickness, CELERITY
- celeriter, adv. [*celer*], swiftly, quickly
- cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātus, CONCEAL
- cēna, -ae, f. [*cēnō*], dinner, meal
- Cēnaeum, -i, n., CENÆUM, a promontory on the island of Eubœa
- cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātus [*cēna*], dine, take a meal
- cēnsus, -ūs, m., a CENSUS
- centaurus, -i, m., CENTAUR, a fabled monster, half man, half horse
- centum, adj., indecl., hundred. (*Cent*)
- centuriō, -ōnis, m., CENTURION, an underofficer in the Roman army
- Cēpheus, -i, m., CEPHEUS, father of Andromeda
- cēra, -ae, f., wax. (*Cerate*)
- certāmen, -inis, n., strife, contest
- certē, adv. [*certus*], really, surely, CERTAINLY
- certus, -a, -um, adj., fixed, determined, CERTAIN, sure; certiōrem faciō, (make more certain), inform
- cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., plur., the rest, the remaining, the others. Cf. aliis cibis, -i, m., food
- Cicerō, -ōnis, m., CICERO, a famous Roman orator
- Cineās, -ae, m., CINEAS, a friend of Pyrrhus
- cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, surround, encircle, gird
- circiter, adv., about
- circuitus, -ūs, m. [*circum-eō*], (a going round), circumference, CIRCUIT
- circum, prep. with acc., around
- circum-arō, circumarāre, circumarāvī, —, plough around
- circum-dō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus, place around, surround, inclose
- circum-mūniō, circummūnire, circummūnivī, circummūnitus, wall around, surround, fortify, blockade
- circum-stō, circumstāre, circumsteti (circumstī), —, stand around, surround. (*Circumstance*)
- circum-veniō, circumvenire, circumvenī, circumventus, surround, CIRCUMVENT
- circus, -i, m., the CIRCUS at Rome, in which chariot races and other contests were held
- Cisalpinus, -a, -um, adj., (this side the Alps), CISALPINE
- citerior, -ius, adj., comp., hither, nearer
- cithara, -ae, f., lyre
- citrā, prep. with acc., this side of
- civis, -is, m. and f., citizen. (*Civil*)
- cīvitās, -ātis, f. [*cīvis*], (body of citizens), state; citizenship. (*City*)
- clāmor, -ōris, m., cry, shout; barking. (*Clamor*)
- clārus, -a, -um, adj., CLEAR, loud; renowned, famous. (*Clarion*)

- claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus,  
shut, CLOSE. (*Clause*)
- cloāca, -ae, f., sewer
- Cloelia, -ae, f., CLÆLIA, a noble  
Roman maiden
- Cocles, -itis, m., (blind in one eye),  
COICLES, surname of Horatius
- coepi, coepisse, coeptus (*defective; tenses from present stem wanting*), began
- co-erceō, coercēre, coercui, coercitus [*co(m)-arceō*, keep off], keep back, check, restrain. (*Coerce*)
- cōgitō, cōgitare, cōgitavi, cōgitatus, consider thoroughly, reflect. (*Cogitation*)
- cognōmen, -inis, n. [*co(m)-(g)nōmen*], surname, COGNOMEN
- co-gnōscō, cognōscere, cognōvi, cognitus [*co(m)-(g)nōscō*, know], learn, RECOGNIZE, know, understand
- cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coāctus [*co(m)-agō*], (drive together), collect, drive, compel
- cohors, -hortis, f., COHORT, a division of the Roman army
- Collātinus, -i, m., COLLATINUS, a Roman
- col·ligō, colligere, collēgi, collectus [*com-legō*], COLLECT, gather together
- collis, -is, m., hill. Cf. mōns
- collum, -i, n., neck. (*Collar*)
- colō, colere, colui, cultus, care for, CULTIVATE, till; honor. Cf. agricola and incola
- com-(col-, con-, cor-, co-, cō-), primitive form of cum, a prefix

- denoting completeness or union; sometimes intensive
- comes, -itis, m. and f. [*com-eō*], comrade, companion
- comitium, comiti, n. [*com-eō*], (place of assembling), the COMITIUM, a part of the Roman Forum
- commeātus, -üs, m., supplies, provisions
- com-mittō, committere, commisi, commissus, intrust, COMMIT; proelium committere, join battle, engage. (*Commission*)
- com-moveō, commovēre, commōvi, commōtus, (put in violent motion), shake, disturb, agitate, move. (*Commotion*)
- commūnis, -e, adj., COMMON, general. (*Community*)
- com-pāreō, compārēre, compārui, —, APPEAR
- com-pellō, compellere, compulī, compulsus, (drive together), force. COMPEL. (*Compulsion*)
- com-periō, comperire, comperi, compertus [-pariō, bring forth], find out, learn
- com-plector, complectī, complexus sum, embrace
- com-pleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, fill out, fill up, cover. (*Complete*)
- com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), adj., plur., very many, many, a number
- com-primō, comprimere, compressi, compressus [-premō, press], PRESS together, grasp; check, suppress. (*Compress*)
- compulsus, see compellō

- con-**, see **com-**
- cōnātūs**, -ūs, *m.* [*cōnor*], attempt
- cōnēdō**, *concēdere*, concessi, concessus, allow, grant, permit. (*Concede*)
- cōnciliūm**, *concili*, *n.*, COUNCIL, assembly
- cōcītō**, *concitāre*, *concitāvī*, *cōcītātūs*, rouse up, rouse, spur on
- cōcurrō**, *concurrere*, *concurri*, *cōcūrūs*, run together, rush together, rally, gather. (*Course*)
- cōdīciō**, -ōnis, *f.* [*con-dīcō*], (a talking together), agreement, CONDITION, terms
- cōndō**, *condere*, *condidī*, conditus [-dō, put], conceal, hide; found, establish. Cf. *cēlō*
- cōdōnō**, *condōnāre*, *condōnāvī*, *cōdōnātūs*, give up, surrender; forgive, pardon, CONDONE
- cōnectō**, *cōnectere*, *cōnexūi*, *cōnexus* [*co(m)-*], bind together; join, tie. (*Connect*)
- cōn-ferō**, *cōfēre*, *contulī*, *cōnlātūs*, bring together, collect; sē *cōn-fēre*, betake one's self
- cōnfertus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, crowded, thick, dense
- cōnficiō**, *cōnficere*, *cōfēci*, *cōfēctūs* [-*faciō*], make, accomplish, carry out, finish; weaken, wear out
- cōnfīrmō**, *cōfirmāre*, *cōfirmāvī*, *cōnfīrmātūs*, make FIRM, strengthen, steady. (*Confirm*)
- cōnfugiō**, *cōfugere*, *cōfūgi*, —, flee for refuge, flee
- cō-iciō**, *conicere*, *coniēcī*, *coniectus* [-*iaciō*], throw together; throw, put, hurl, cast. (*Conjecture*)
- cōniungō**, *coniungere*, *coniūnxī*, *cōniunctus*, join together, unite. (*Conjunction*)
- cōniūnx**, -*iugis*, *m. and f.* [*coniungō*], husband, wife. (*Conjugal*)
- cōniūrātō**, -ōnis, *f.* [*coniūrō*], conspiracy
- cōn-iūrō**, *coniūrāre*, *coniūrāvī*, *cōn-iūrātūs*, unite by oath, conspire. (*Conjure*)
- cōn-locō**, *conlocāre*, *conlocāvī*, *cōnlocātūs*, place, station. Cf. *pōnō*
- cōnloquīm**, *conloqui*, *n.* [*con-lo-quor*], (a talking together), conversation, conference, COLLOQUY
- cōnor**, *cōnārl*, *cōnātūs sum*, endeavor, attempt, try. (*Conative*)
- cōn-scendō**, *cōnsēndēre*, *cōnsēndī*, *cōnsēnsūs* [-*scandō*, climb], climb up, mount, go on board
- cōn-scribō**, *cōnsēribēre*, *cōnscripsi*, *cōnsēptūs*, enlist, enrol, levy. (*Conscription*)
- cōn-secrō**, *cōnsecrāre*, *cōnsecrāvī*, *cōnsecrātūs* [-*sacrō*, make sacred], deify, CONSECRATE
- cōn-sequor**, *cōnsequī*, *cōnsecūtūs sum*, overtake. (*Consecutive*)
- cōn-servō**, *cōnsērvāre*, *cōnsērvāvī*, *cōnsērvātūs*, PRESERVE, save. (*Conserve*)
- Cōnsidius**, *Cōnsidī*, *m.*, CONSIDIUS, an officer of Cæsar
- cōnsilīum**, *cōnsili*, *n.* [*cōnsulō*], advice, COUNSEL, prudence, wisdom; plan, design

cō-sistō, cōsistere, cōstitūi, —, stand firm, take one's stand, halt; depend, rest. (*Consist*)  
 cōspectus, -ūs, *m.*, look, view, sight  
 cō-stituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus [-statuō, set up], establish, determine, fix, decide, resolve. (*Constitution*)  
 cō-suēscō, cōsuēscere, cōsuēvi, cōsuētus, accustom; become accustomed; *perf.*, be accustomed, be wont  
 cōsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [*cōsuēscō*], custom, habit  
 cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, CONSUL  
 cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [*cōnsul*], CONSULSHIP  
 cōnsulō, cōsulere, cōsului, cōsultus [*cōsūlūm*], take counsel, CONSULT  
 cōn-sūmō, cōnsumere, cōnsumpsī, cōnsumptus, use up, spend, pass, CONSUME  
 con-tegō, contegere, contēxi, contēctus, cover  
 con-temnō, contemnere, contemp̄sī, contemptus, despise, CONTEMN. (*Contempt*)  
 con-tendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, strain, struggle, strive, hasten. (*Contend.*) Cf. mātūrō and properō  
 contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*contendō*], struggle, exertion. (*Contention*)  
 continēns, -entis, *f.* [*contineō*], mainland, CONTINENT  
 continenter, *adv.* [*contineō*], continuously  
 con-tineō, continēre, continui, contentus [-teneō], hold together,

keep together, hold, CONTAIN. (*Contents*)  
 con-tingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus [-tangō, touch], fall to one's lot. (*Contact*)  
 continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*contineō*], CONTINUOUS, successive  
 contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, against, CONTRARY to  
 con-veniō, convenire, convēni, convētūrus, come together, assemble, meet; CONVENE. (*Convention*)  
 conventus, -ūs, *m.* [*conveniō*], gathering, assembly, meeting  
 con-vocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus, call together, summon, CONVOKE  
 cōpia, -ae, *f.* [*co(m)-ops*], abundance, wealth, plenty; plur., troops, forces. (*Copious*)  
 cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person  
 Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, CORINTH  
 Coriolānus, -ī, *m.*, CORIOLANUS, a famous Roman warrior  
 Coriolī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, CORIOLI, an ancient town in Italy  
 Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, CORNELIA, a Roman name  
 cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn  
 corōna, -ae, *f.*, CROWN. (*Coronet*)  
 corpus, -oris, *n.*, body. (*Corpse*)  
 cor-ripiō, corripere, corripui, correp-tus [*com-rapiō*], seize, take hold of  
 cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cotidie*], daily  
 cotidiē, *adv.* [*quot-dies*], daily  
 crātēra, -ae, *f.*, mixing bowl, bowl  
 crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, numerous, frequent

**crēdibilis, -e, adj.**, to be believed,  
CREDIBLE

**crēdō, crēdere, crēdī, crēditus, believe, think, suppose.** (*Credit*)

**creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus, make, CREATE; choose, elect**

**Crēta, -ae, f., CRETE, an island southeast of Greece**

**cruciātus, -ūs, m., torture**

**Crustumini, -ōrum, m. plur., the inhabitants of Crustumerium**

**cubiculum, -ī, n. [cubō, lie], bedchamber**

**cum, conj., when**

**cum, prep. with abl., with**

**cūnae, -ārum, f. plur., cradle**

**cūnctus, -a, -um, adj., all together, all. Cf. omnis, tōtus, and ūniversus**

**cupidē, adv. [cupidus], eagerly**

**cupiditās, -ātis, f. [cupidus], longing, desire. (*Cupidity*)**

**cupidius, adv. [cupidē], too eagerly**

**cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [cupiō], desirous, fond**

**cupiō, cupere, cupivī (cupiī), cupitus, desire, be eager for. Cf. volō**

**cūr, adv., why, wherefore**

**cūra, -ae, f. [cūrō], care, anxiety**

**Curius, Curi, m., CURIUS, a Roman name**

**cūrō, cūrāre, cūravī, cūrātus [cūra], care for, take care; with gerundive, have (a thing done)**

**currō, currere, cucurri, cursūrus [cursus], run**

**cursus, -ūs, m. [currō], COURSE, race-COURSE**

**custōdiō, custōdire, custōdīvī (custōdiī), custōditus [custōs], guard, protect, defend**

**custōs, -ōdis, m. and f. [custōdiō], guardian, keeper. (*Custodian*)**

**Cyclōps, -ōpis, m., (round eye), a CYCLOPS, one of a fabulous race of giants on the coast of Sicily**

**Daedalus, -ī, m., DÆDALUS, father of Icarus**

**damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātus [damnūm], CONDEMN, sentence, doom**

**damnum, -ī, n. [damnō], hurt, harm, damage, loss**

**Danaē, -ēs, f., DANAE, mother of Perseus**

**dē, prep. with abl., down from, from; about, concerning, of; of time, in, during, for**

**dea, -ae, f. [deus], goddess**

**dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus [dē habeō], owe, ought, must, should**

**dēbitus, -a, -um, adj. [dēbeō], owed; due, appropriate. (*Debit, Debt*)**

**decem, adj., indecl., ten**

**dē-cidō, dēcidere, dēcidi, — [ -cadō, fall], fall down, fall off**

**decimus, -a, -um, adj. [decem], tenth. (*Decimal*)**

**dē-cipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpi, dēceptus [-capiō], DECEIVE**

**Decius, Decī, m., DECIUS, a Roman name**

**dēditicius, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō], surrendered; masc. plur. as noun, prisoners of war, subjects**

**dēditiō, -ōnis, f. [dēdō], (a giving up), surrender**

**dē-dō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditus [-dō, put], give up, surrender**

dē-dūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxi, dēductus, lead down, lead off, escort, bring to. (*Deduct*)  
 dē-fendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus, (strike off from), DEFEND, protect  
 dē-ferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātus, (bring down), report  
 dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., tired out, weary, very tired  
 Dēianira, -ae, f., DEIANIRA, wife of Hercules  
 dē-iciō, dēicere, dēiēci, dēiectus [-iaciō], throw down, let fall; disappoint; *pass.*, slip, stumble. (*Dejected*)  
 dēiectus, *see* dēiciō  
 de-inde, adv., (from thence), then, afterwards, next  
 dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvi, dēlectātus, DELIGHT, please. (*Delectable*)  
 dē-ligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus [-legō], pick out, choose, SELECT  
 Delphi, -ōrum, m. plur., DELPHI, a town in Greece  
 Delphicus, -a, -um, adj., of DELPHI, DELPHIC  
 dē-migrō, dēmigrāre, dēmigrāvī, dēmigrātūrus, MIGRATE from; remove, go away. Cf. abeō  
 dē-mittō, dēmittere, dēmisi, dēmissus, (send down), let down, let go, lose  
 dē-mōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātūrus, point out, show, describe. (*Demonstrate*)  
 dēmum, adv., at length, at last; tum dēmum, not till then

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally; in short, in fact  
 dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., thick, DENSE  
 Dentātus, -i, m., DENTATUS, a Roman name  
 dē-pellō, dēpellere, dēpuli, dēpulsus, drive out, drive away, remove, banish  
 dē-plōrō, dēplōrāre, dēplōrāvī, dēplōrātūrus, lament, DEPLORE  
 dē-pōnō, dēpōnere, dēposui, dēpositus, put down, lay aside, abandon. (*Deposit*)  
 dēpositus, *see* dēpōnō  
 dēpulsus, *see* dēpellō  
 dē-scendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsūrus [-scandō, climb], (climb down), come down, DESCEND  
 dē-scribō, dēscribēre, dēscriptī, dēscriptus, mark off, divide. (*Describe*)  
 dē-serō, dēserere, dēserui, dēsertus, abandon, DESERT  
 dēsertus, *see* dēserō  
 dē-siliō, dēsilire, dēsiluī, dēsultūrus [-saliō, jump], jump down, leap down  
 dē-sistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus, (stand off or apart), leave off, cease; DESIST  
 dēspectus, -ūs, m., (a looking down upon), view, PROSPECT  
 dē-spērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātūrus, be hopeless, DESPAIR  
 dē-spoliō, dēspoliāre, dēspoliāvī, dēspoliātūrus, rob, deprive, DESPOIL  
 dē-sum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be from, be wanting, lack; *with dat.*

dē-super, *adv.*, down from above  
dē-trahō, dētrahere, dētrāxi, dē-  
trāctus, draw off, throw off, re-  
move. (*Detract*)

deus, -ī, *m.*, god. (*Deity*)

dē-vorō, dēvorāre, dēvorāvi, dēvorā-  
tus, swallow up, DEVOUR, gulp  
down

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right (hand).  
(*Dexterous*)

dextra, -ae, *f.* [*dexter*], right hand

dī, *see dis-*

dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus, say, tell,  
speak; appoint. (*Dictum*)

diēs, -ēi, *m.*, day

dif-ficilis, -e, *adj.* [*dis-facilis*], hard,  
DIFFICULT

difficultās, -ātis, *f.* [*difficilis*], DIFFI-  
CULTY

dignitās, -ātis, *f.*, rank. (*Dignity*)

diligenter, *adv.* [*diligentia*], DILI-  
GENTLY, industriously

diligentia, -ae, *f.* [*diligenter*], DILI-  
GENCE, carefulness, industry

dīmicō, dīmicāre, dīmicāvi, dīmicā-  
tūrus, fight, contend. Cf. pugnō

dī-mittō, dīmittere, dīmisi, dimissus,  
send off, DISMISS; let slip, let go by

dis- (di-), a prefix denoting separa-  
tion, asunder, apart, in different  
directions. Cf. dīmittō, discēdō,  
dissimilis, divellō

dis-cēdō, discēdere, discessi, disces-  
sūrus, depart, withdraw, go off.  
Cf. abeō

discō, discere, didici, discitūrus, learn.  
(*Disciple*)

discrīmen, -inis, *n.*, risk, danger,  
crisis. Cf. periculum

dis-pliceō, displicēre, displicuī, dis-  
plicitūrus [-placeō], DISPLEASE  
dis-similis, -e, *adj.*, unlike, DIS-  
SIMILAR

diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long  
diūturnitās, -ātis, *f.* [diū], length,  
duration

dī-vellō, divellere, divelli, dīvulsus,  
tear asunder, tear apart

dīversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (turned away),  
separate, different, DIVERSE

Divicō, -ōnis, *m.*, DIVICO, a chief  
of the Helvetians

dīvidō, dividere, dīvisi, dīvisus,  
DIVIDE, apportion. (*Division*)

dīvinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the gods,  
DIVINE

dīvulsus, *see divellō*

dō, dare, dedi, datus, give, offer;  
put. Cf. dōnō

doceō, docēre, docui, doctus, teach,  
show. (*Docile, Doctor*)

doleō, dolēre, dolui, dolitūrus [*dolor*],  
grieve, be sorry. (*Condole*)

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [*doleō*], pain, grief.  
(*Dolorous*)

dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, trick, fraud,  
cunning

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*domus*],  
DOMESTIC

domī, *see domus*

domina, -ae, *f.* [*dominus*], mistress, lady

dominus, -ī, *m.* [*domus*], lord, mas-  
ter, owner. (*Dominate*)

domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home; domī,  
at home. (*Domestic*)

dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvi, dōnātus [*dō-  
num*], give, present. (*Donate*.)

Cf. dō

dōnum, -ī, *n.* [dō], gift, present  
 dormiō, dormire, dormivī (*dormīū*),  
 dormitus, sleep. (*Dormitory*)  
 dracō, -ōnis, *m.*, serpent, DRAGON  
 ducenti, -ae, -a, *adj.*, two hundred  
 dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus [*dux*], lead,  
 draw; derive. (*Duct*)  
 dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; until  
 Dumnorix, -igis, *m.*, DUMNORIX, a  
 leader of the Hædui  
 duo, duae, duo, *adj.*, two. (*Dual*)  
 duo-decim [-decem], *adj.*, *indecl.*,  
 twelve  
 duplex, -icis, *adj.* [*duo*], twofold,  
 double  
 duplīcō, duplīcāre, duplīcāvī, duplī-  
 catus [*duplex*], double. (*Duplicate*)  
 dux, ducis, *m. and f.* [*dūcō*], leader,  
 general. (*Duke*) Cf. imperātor

ē, see ex

ē-dō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus [-dō, put],  
 put forth, raise, utter. (*Edit*)

ēducō, ēducāre, ēducāvī, ēducātus,  
 bring up, train, EDUCATE  
 ē-dūcō, ēducere, ēdūxi, ēductus, lead  
 out, lead forth, bring away;  
 draw

ef-ficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus [*ex-  
 faciō*], bring about, EFFECT, ac-  
 complish

ef-flō, efflāre, efflāvī, efflātus [*ex-*],  
 (blow out), breathe out

ef-fundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus  
 [*ex-*], pour forth, pour out, shed.  
 (*Effusion*)

effūsus, see effundō.

ego, *pers. pron.*, I; *plur.* nōs, we.  
 (*Egotist*)

ē-gredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum [-gra-  
 dior, go], go out, go forth; in  
 terram ēgressus, having gone  
 ashore. (*Egress*.) Cf. exēdō

ēgregiē, *adv.*, remarkably, excellently  
 ēgressus, see ēgredior

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, ELEPHANT  
 ē-ligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlectus [-legō],  
 pick out, choose, SELECT. (*Elect*)

ē-mittō, ēmittere, ēmisi, ēmissus,  
 send forth, let loose, let out.  
 (*Emit*)

ēmō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus, (take),  
 buy

enim, *conj.* (*never the first word*),  
 for; indeed, in fact. Cf. nam

Ennius, Enni, *m.*, ENNIUS, an early  
 Latin poet

ē-nūntiō, ēnūntiāre, ēnūntiāvī, ēnūn-  
 tiātus, proclaim, ANNOUNCE, re-  
 veal, utter. (*Enunciate*)

ēō, īre, īī (iyi), itūrus, go  
 eō, *adv.* [*is*], to that place, thither,  
 there

Ēpirus, -ī, *f.*, EPIRUS, a division of  
 Greece

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, EPISTLE  
 eques, -itis, *m.* [*equus*], horseman,  
 knight

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [*eques*], (of  
 horsemen), EQUESTRIAN

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [*eques*], (body of  
 horsemen), cavalry

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. (*Equine*)

ergō, *adv.*, therefore

errō, errāre, errāvī, errātūrus, wander,  
 ERR

ērudīō, ērudīre, ērudīvī (*ērudīū*), ēru-  
 ditus, instruct. (*Erudite*)

- ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, (a bursting forth), sally. (*Eruption*)
- Ēsquiline, -ī, *m.*, the ESQUILINE, one of the hills of Rome
- et, *conj.*, and, also; et . . . et, both . . . and. Cf. atque (ac) and -que
- etiam, *adv. and conj.* [et-iam], (and now), also, even. Cf. quoque
- Etrūsci, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the ETRUSCANS, people of Etruria, in Italy
- et-sī, *conj.*, although
- Eunomus, -ī, *m.*, EUNOMUS, a boy who was killed by Hercules
- Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, EUROPE
- Eurystheus, -ī, *m.*, EURYSTHEUS, king of Tiryns, in Greece
- Eurytus, -ī, *m.*, EURYTUS, father of Iole
- ē-vādō, ēvādēre, ēvāsi, ēvāsūrus, (go out), get away, escape. (*Evade*)
- ē-veniō, ēvenire, ēvēnī, ēventūrus, (come out), fall out, happen, turn out. (*Event.*) Cf. accidō and fiō
- ex (ē), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from, of, off, on; in accordance with
- exanimātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*anima*], breathless, out of breath, exhausted
- ex-cēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessū-rus, go out, go forth, depart. (*Exceed*)
- ex-citō, excitāre, excitāvī, excitātus, (call out), rouse, arouse, wake. (*Excite*)
- ex-clāmō, exclāmāre, exclāmāvī, exclāmātus, cry out, EXCLAIM
- excursiō, -ōnis, *f.*, (a running out), sally, sortie. (*Excursion*)
- exemplum, -ī, *n.*, sample, EXAMPLE, warning
- ex-eō, exire, exī, exitūrus, go out, go forth, come out. (*Exit.*) Cf. ēgredior
- exerceō, exercēre, exercū, exercitus, EXERCISE, train
- exercitatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*exerceō*], exercise, training
- exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [*exerceō*], (the thing trained), army
- ex-igō, exigere, exēgī, exāctus [-agō], drive out, expel. (*Exact*)
- existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātus, think, judge, consider, suppose. Cf. arbitror and putō
- exitium, exitī, *n.* [*exeō*], ruin, destruction
- ex-pellō, expellere, expuli, expulsus, drive out, EXPEL. (*Expulsion*)
- ex-perior, experīrī, expertus sum [*perīculum*], try, test; EXPERIENCE. Cf. tentō
- expertus, see experior
- ex-piō, expiāre, expiāvī, expiātus, make amends for, EXPIATE
- explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [*explōrō*], scout, spy
- ex-plōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātus [*explōrātor*], examine, EXPLORE, investigate
- ex-pōnō, expōnere, exposū, exposītus, set forth, explain, relate; EXPOSE
- expositus, see expōnō
- ex-pugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus, take by storm, take, capture. Cf. oppugnō

- expulsus**, *see expellō*
- exspectō**, **exspectāre**, **exspectāvi**, **exspectātus**, (look out for), await, wait for, wait, EXPECT
- ex-struō**, **exstruere**, **exstrūxi**, **exstrūctus**, (heap up), build, erect, CONSTRUCT
- extrā**, *prep.* with acc., outside, beyond
- ex-trahō**, **extrahere**, **extrāxi**, **extrātus**, draw out, drag out. (*Extract*)
- extrēmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, superl., outermost, last, farthest; end of; EXTREME
- exuō**, **exuere**, **exui**, **exūtus**, take off, put off
- faber**, -bri, *m.*, workman, artisan, smith
- Fabricius**, **Fabrici**, *m.*, FABRICIUS, a famous Roman general
- fābula**, -ae, *f.*, story, tale, FABLE
- facile**, *adv.* [*facilis*], easily
- facilis**, -e, *adj.* [*faciō*], (that can be done), easy to do, easy. (*Facility*)
- faciō**, **facere**, **fēci**, **factus**, do, make; form, perform
- factum**, -i, *n.* [*faciō*], act, deed, action. (*Fact*)
- facultās**, -ātis, *f.* [*facilis*], power, opportunity, chance. (*Faculty*)
- falx**, **falcis**, *f.*, curved sword
- fāma**, -ae, *f.*, rumor, report; FAME, renown
- famēs**, -is, *f.*, hunger, FAMINE
- fātum**, -i, *n.*, FATE
- Faustulus**, -i, *m.*, FAUSTULUS, a shepherd
- faveō**, **favēre**, **fāvi**, **fautūrus**, be favorable to, FAVOR, befriend; with dat.
- fēlēs**, -is, *f.*, cat. (*Feline*)
- fēliciter**, *adv.* [*felix*], luckily, fortunately, successfully
- felix**, -icis, *adj.*, lucky, fortunate, happy. (*Felicity*)
- fēmina**, -ae, *f.*, woman. (*Feminine*)  
*Cf.* mulier
- ferē**, *adv.*, nearly, for the most part, almost, about
- ferō**, **ferre**, **tuli**, **lātus**, bear, bring; report, say. *Cf.* portō and tolerō
- ferrum**, -i, *n.*, iron; sword. *Cf.* gladius
- Fidēnātēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, the inhabitants of Fidenæ
- fidēs**, -ei, *f.*, trust, confidence. (*Fidelity*)
- figūra**, -ae, *f.* [*fig(n)gō*], shape, form, FIGURE
- filia**, -ae, *f.* [*filius*], daughter
- filius**, **fili**, *m.* [*filia*], son. (*Filial*)
- fingō**,  **fingere**, **finxi**, **fictus**, fashion, devise. (*Feign, Fiction*)
- finis**, -is, *m.*, end, border; *plur.*, territories. (*Final*)
- finitimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*finis*], bordering on; *masc. plur. as noun*, neighbors
- fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum** (*supplies pass.* to faciō), be made, be done, become, happen. *Cf.* accidō and ēveniō
- firmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, FIRM
- flagrāns**, -antis, *adj.*, flaming, blazing, burning. (*Flagrant*)

**flūmen, -inis, n.** [*fluō*], (that which flows), river, stream  
**fluō, fluere, flūxi, fluxūrus, flow**  
**foculus, -ī, m.** [*focus*], sacrificial hearth, fire pan, brazier  
**focus, -ī, m.**, hearth. (*Focus, Fuel*)  
**foedus, -eris, n.**, league, treaty, alliance. (*Federal*)  
**fore, for futūrum esse**  
**fors, fortis, f.**, chance, luck  
**forte, adv.** [*fors*], by chance, perhaps  
**fortis, -e, adj.**, strong, brave, courageous. (*Fortitude*) Cf. *validus*  
**fortiter, adv.** [*fortis*], bravely, courageously  
**fortūna, -ae, f.** [*fors*], FORTUNE, good FORTUNE  
**fossa, -ae, f.**, ditch, trench, FOSSE; canal  
**frāter, -tris, m.**, brother. (*Fraternal*)  
**fremitus, -ūs, m.**, noise, roaring, roar  
**frōns, frontis, f.**, forehead, brow. (*Front*)  
**frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj.** [*frūmentum*], of grain  
**frūmentum, -ī, n.**, corn, grain  
**frūstrā, adv.**, in vain. (*Frustate*)  
**fuga, -ae, f.** [*fugīō*], flight  
**fugiō, fugere, fūgiī, fugitūrus** [*fugō, fuga*], run away, flee; flee from. (*Fugitive*)  
**fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus** [*fuga, fugīō*], put to flight, rout  
**fūmus, -ī, m.**, smoke. (*Fumes*)  
**furor, -ōris, m.**, madness, frenzy, FUROR  
**Gabii, -ōrum, m. plur.**, GABII, a city of Italy

**Galba, -ae, m.**, GALBA  
**galea, -ae, f.**, helmet  
**Gallia, -ae, f.**, GAUL  
**Gallicus, -a, -um, adj.**, GALLIC  
**Gallus, -ī, m.**, a GAUL  
**gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum** (*semi-deponent*) [*gaudium*], be glad, rejoice  
**gaudium, gaudi, n.** [*gaudeō*], JOY, gladness. Cf. *laetitia*  
**gāvisus, see gaudeō**  
**geminus, -a, -um, adj.**, twin-born, twin-  
**Genāva, -ae, f.**, GENEVA  
**gēns, gentis, f.** [*genus*], race, tribe, house, family. (*Gentile, Gentle*)  
**genus, -eris, n.** [*gēns*], race, lineage; kind, class. (*Generous*)  
**Germānia, -ae, f.**, GERMANY  
**Germānus, -a, -um, adj.**, GERMAN; as noun, a GERMAN  
**gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus**, bear, carry on, wage (war); manage, do; wear; sē gerere, act, behave; pass., go on, take place  
**gigās, -antis, m.**, GIANT  
**gladius, gladi, m.**, sword. (*Gladiator*) Cf.  *ferrum*  
**glōria, -ae, f.**, GLORY, reputation  
**Gorgō, -onis, f.**, a GORGON  
**Graeae, -ārum, f. plur.**, the GRÆAE  
**Graecia, -ae, f.**, GREECE  
**Graecus, -ī, m.**, a GREEK  
**grāmen, -inis, n.**, grass  
**grātia, -ae, f.** [*grātus*], favor, kindness; plur., thanks, GRATITUDE  
**grātus, -a, -um, adj.** [*grātia*], acceptable, pleasing; GRATEFUL  
**gravis, -e, adj.**, heavy, severe, serious. (*Grave*)

**graviter**, *adv.* [*gravis*], heavily, severely, vehemently, greatly  
**gravō**, **gravāre**, **gravāvī**, **gravātus** [*gravis*], oppress, burden, overcome. (*Aggravate*)  
**gustō**, **gustāre**, **gustāvī**, **gustātus**, taste, eat. (*Gustatory*)

**habeō**, **habēre**, **habui**, **habitūs**, have, hold, keep; with *ōratiōnem*, make, deliver. (*Habit*)

**habitō**, **habitāre**, **habitāvī**, **habitātus** [*frequentative of habeō*], inHABIT; dwell, live. Cf. *incolō*

**Haeduus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, HÆDUAN; *masc. plur. as noun*, the HÆDUI, a tribe of Gaul

**haereō**, **haerēre**, **haesi**, **haesūrus**, stick, cling, be fixed; be perplexed, HESITATE. (*Adhere*)

**Hammōn**, -ōnis, *m.*, HAMMON, an Egyptian god, identified by the Romans with Jupiter

**Hannibal**, -alis, *m.*, HANNIBAL, a famous Carthaginian general

**harēna**, -ae, *f.*, sand, shore. (*Arena*)

**hasta**, -ae, *f.*, spear

**haud**, *adv.*, not. Cf. nōn

**hauriō**, **haurire**, **hausi**, **haustus**, drink, drain. (*Exhaust*)

**Helvētiī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the HELVETII, a tribe of Gaul

**Herculēs**, -is, *m.*, HERCULES, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, famous for his strength

**Hesperidēs**, -um, *f. plur.*, the HESPERIDES, daughters of Atlas and Hesperis, and guardians of the golden apples

**hesternus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of yesterday, yester-

**hiberna**, -ōrum, *n. plur.* [*hiems*], winter quarters. (*Hibernate*)

**hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this, this of mine; *as pers. pron.*, he, she, it

**hic**, *adv.* [*hic*], here, hereupon

**hiemō**, **hiemāre**, **hiemāvī**, **hiemātūrus** [*hiems*], spend the winter

**hiems**, **hiemis**, *f.* [*hiemō*], winter; storm

**hinc**, *adv.* [*hic*], hence, from here

**Hispānia**, -ae, *f.*, SPAIN

**Hispānus**, -i, *m.*, a SPANIARD

**ho-diē**, *adv.* [*hōc-die*], to-day

**homō**, -inis, *m. and f.* [*hūmānus*], (human being), man. Cf. vir

**honestās**, -ātis, *f.* [*honor*], honorable character, integrity, uprightness, HONESTY

**honor**, -ōris, *m.*, HONOR

**hōra**, -ae, *f.*, HOUR; in hōrās, from hour to hour, hourly

**Horātius**, Horātī, *m.*, HORATIUS (Cocles)

**horribilis**, -e, *adj.*, terrible, dreadful, HORRIBLE. Cf. *terribilis*

**hortor**, **hortārī**, **hortātus sum**, urge, entreat, EXHORT

**hortus**, -i, *m.*, garden. (*Horticulture*)

**hospiitium**, **hospiitī**, *n.*, HOSPITALITY

**hostis**, -is, *m. and f.*, enemy. (*Hostile*)

Cf. *inimicus*

**hūc**, *adv.* [*hic*], hither

**hūmānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*homō*], (pertaining to man), man's, HUMAN

**humī**, locative, on the ground. (*Exhume*)

- iaceō, iacēre, iacui, — [iaciō], (be thrown), lie, lie dead. (*Adjacent*)
- iaciō, iacere, iēci, iactus [iaceō], throw, cast, hurl
- iam, *adv.*, already, now, at last; nōn iam, no longer. Cf. nunc
- Iāniculum, -ī, *n.*, the JANICULUM, one of the hills of Rome
- ibi, *adv.* [*is*], in that place, there
- īcarus, -ī, *m.*, ICARUS
- ictus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow
- idem, eadem, idem, dem. *adj.* and *pron.* [*is*], same; idem quī, same as. (*Identical*)
- idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable
- igitur, *conj.* (*seldom the first word*), therefore, then. Cf. itaque
- ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. (*Ignite*)
- ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvi, ignōrātus, not know, be ignorant of. (*Ignore*)
- i-gnōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in-(g)nōtus*, known], unknown, unfamiliar, strange
- ille, -a, -ud, dem. *adj.* and *pron.*, that (yonder); as pers. *pron.*, he, she, it
- illīc, *adv.* [*ille*], there
- illūc, *adv.* [*ille*], thither
- immānitās, -ātis, *f.*, savageness, cruelty, barbarity
- im-mineō, imminēre, imminui, — [*in-*], hang over, impend. (*Imminent*)
- impedimentum, -ī, *n.* [*impediō*], hindrance; plur., baggage. (*Impediment*)
- impediō, impedire, impedivī (impe-diī), impeditus [*in-pēs*], entangle, hamper, IMPEDE
- im-pellō, impellere, impuli, impulsus [*in-*], move, induce, drive, IMPEL. (*Impulse*)
- im-pendeō, impendēre, —, — [*in-*], overhang, IMPEND
- imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [*imperō*], commander, general. (*Emperor*)
- imperātum, -ī, *n.* [*imperō*], order, command. Cf. iussum
- imperium, imperi, *n.* [*imperō*], command, rule, power. (*Empire*)
- imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus [*imperium*], order, command, demand; rule; with dat. of person. (*Imperative.*) Cf. iubeō
- impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, assault. (*Impetuous*)
- im-pleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus [*in-*], fill up, cover, fill
- im-pōnō, impōnere, imposui, impositus [*in-*], put in or on, place in or on; mount; IMPOSE; with dat. of person or place
- impositus, see impōnō
- impudēns, -entia, *adj.*, shameless, IMPUDENT
- impulsus, see impellō
- imus, -a, -um, *adj.*, superl. of inferus
- in, *prep.* with acc., into, to, against, on, toward, for; with abl., IN, on, in case of
- in-, prefix, into, on, toward, etc.; also in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. un-, in-, not
- in-cendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus [-candeō, shine], set fire to, burn. (*Incendiary*)

- incēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*incendō*], inflamed, hot, fiery. (*Incense*)
- in-certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, UNCERTAIN, doubtful
- in-cidō, incidere, incidi, — [— *-cadō*, fall], fall into; in īsāniām incidere, become insane. (*Incident*)
- in-cipiō, incipere, incēpi, inceptus [— *capio*], (take in hand), begin. (*Incipient*)
- in-citō, incitare, incitāvi, incitātus, arouse, stir, INCITE
- in-clūdō, inclūdere, inclusi, inclusus [— *claudō*], shut in, confine. (*Include*)
- in-cognitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknown
- incohō, incohāre, incohāvī, incohātus, begin. (*Inchoate*)
- incola, -ae, *m.* and *f.* [*incolō*], inhabitant
- in-colō, incolere, incolui, — [*incola*], dwell in, inhabit; live, dwell. Cf. habitō
- incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, safe
- increpitō, increpitare, —, —, upbraid, taunt, abuse
- inde, *adv.* [*is*], thence, thereupon
- indicō, indicare, indicāvi, indicātus, inform, disclose, make known. (*Indicate*)
- in-dicō, indicere, indixī, indictus, proclaim, declare, appoint. (*Indict*)
- in-dūcō, inducere, indūxi, inductus, lead to, draw to, INDUCE, persuade
- induō, induere, indui, indūtus, put on, clothe one's self in, clothe, wrap
- in-eō, inire, inī (inīvī), initus, go in, enter; begin, form
- in-fāns, -antis, *adj.*, (not speaking); as noun, INFANT, baby
- in-fēlix, -īcis, *adj.*, unfortunate, unlucky, unhappy. (*Infelicitous*)
- inferior, -ius, *adj.*, comp. of inferus. (*Inferior*)
- in-ferō, īferre, intulī, inlātus, (bear in or against), cause, bring on, inflict. (*Infer*)
- (inferus), -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below, underneath
- infestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile; as noun, enemy. (*Infest*)
- in-ficiō, inficere, infēci, infectus [— *faciō*], soak, imbue, stain. (*Infect*)
- infinitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, many, countless. (*Infinite*)
- ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, huge, great. Cf. magnus
- in-iciō, inicere, iniēci, iniectus [— *iaciō*], throw on, cast on, put on. (*Inject*)
- iniectus, see iniciō
- in-imicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [— *amicus*], unfriendly, hostile; as noun, ENEMY. (*Inimical*) Cf. hostis
- in-iqus, -a, -um, *adj.* [— *aequus*], unequal; uneven, unfavorable
- initium, initi, *n.* [*ineō*], beginning. (*Initial*)
- iniūria, -ae, *f.* [*in-iūs*], wrong, harm, insult, INJURY
- inopia, -ae, *f.*, want, poverty, lack, need
- in-rideō, inridere, inrisi, inrisus, laugh at, mock, ridicule

- īnsānia, -ae, f.**, INSANITY, madness  
**īn-sideō, īsidēre, īsēdī, īsessūrus**  
 [-*sedēō*], sit on  
**īnsolēns, -entis, adj.**, arrogant, overbearing. (*Insolent*)  
**īn-spiciō, īspicere, īspexī, īspec-tus** [-*speciō*, look], look into, look on, INSPECT  
**īn-stituō, īstituere, īstituī, īstitū-tus** [-*statuō*, set up], set up, fix, arrange. (*Institute*)  
**īnstrūctus**, see *īnstruō*  
**īn-struō, īstruere, īstrūxi, īstrūc-tus**, build in, form; INSTRUCT, train; prepare, provide  
**īnsula, -ae, f.**, island. (*Peninsula*)  
**īntel-legō, ītelle-gere, ītelle-xī, ītel-lec-tus** [*inter-legō*], (choose between), learn, know, perceive, understand. (*Intellect.*) Cf. *cognoscō*  
**īn-tendō, ītendere, ītendī, ītentus**, (stretch out towards), bend, aim. (*Intend*)  
**īnter, prep. with acc.**, between, among, amid, during, while;  
**īnter sē**, among themselves, together  
**īnter-clūdō, īnterclūdere, īnterclūsī, īnterclūsus** [-*claudō*], shut off, cut off  
**īnter-dūm, adv.**, sometimes  
**īnter-eā, adv.**, meanwhile  
**īnterfectus**, see *īnterficiō*  
**īnter-ficiō, īnterficiere, īnterfēcī, īnterfectus** [-*faciō*], kill, slay, put to death. Cf. *necō* and *occidō*  
**īnter-iciō, ītericere, īteriēcī, īnter-iectus** [-*iaciō*], place between; *pass.*, intervene. (*Interjection*)  
**īnterim, adv.**, meanwhile, in the meantime. (*Interim*)  
**īnterior, -ius, adj., comp.**, inner, INTERIOR  
**īnter-mittō, ītermittere, ītermisi, ītermissus**, (send between), leave off; *pass.*, intervene, pass. (*Intermittent*)  
**īnter-rogō, īterrogāre, īterrogāvī, īterrogātus**, ask, question. (*Interrogate*)  
**īnter-rumpō, īterrumpere, īter-rūpi, īterruptus**, break down. (*Interrupt*)  
**īnter-sum, īteresse, īterfuī, īter-futūrus**, be between  
**īntervallum, -ī, n.**, space, INTERVAL  
**īntrō, ītrāre, ītrāvī, ītrātus**, go into, ENTER  
**īntroitus, -ūs, m.** [*īntroeō*, go in], ENTRANCE  
**īntrō-mittō, īntrōmittere, īntrōmisi, īntrōmissus**, (send in), let in, ADMIT  
**īn-vādō, īnvādere, īnvāsī, īnvāsus**, come upon, attack, INVADE, take possession of  
**īn-veniō, īvenire, īvēni, īventus**, come upon, find, discover. (*Invent*.) Cf. *reperiō*  
**īn-vicem, adv.**, in turn, mutually  
**īn-video, īvidēre, īvidī, īvisūrus** (look toward), be jealous of, ENVY  
**īnvitō, īnvitāre, īnvitāvī, īnvitātus, īnvite**  
**Iolē, -ēs, f.**, IOLE, daughter of Eurytus  
**īphiclēs, -is, m.**, IPHICLES, brother of Hercules

**ipse**, -a, -um, *dem. adj. and pron.*, self, very

**ira**, -ae, f., anger, wrath, IRE

**is**, ea, id, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that;

*as pers. pron.*, he, she, it

**iste**, -a, -ud, *dem. adj. and pron.*

[*is*], that (of yours)

**ita**, *adv.*, so, thus. Cf. sic and tam

**Italia**, -ae, f., ITALY

**ita-que**, *conj.*, and so, therefore.

Cf. igitur

**item**, *adv.* [*ita*], also, likewise

**iter**, *itineris*, n. [eō, go], way, journey, march, line of march. (*Itinerary*)

**iterum**, *adv.*, a second time, again. (*Iteration*)

**iubeō**, iubēre, iussī, iussus, bid, order, command. Cf. imperō

**iugum**, -ī, n. [*iungō*], yoke; ridge

**Iūlia**, -ae, f., JULIA, a Roman name

**iunctus**, *see iungō*

**iungō**, iungere, iünxi, iünctus, unite, JOIN, span, cross. (*Junction*)

**Iūnius**, Iūni, m., JUNIUS, a Roman name

**Iūnō**, -onis, f., JUNO, queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter

**Iuppiter**, Iovis, m., JUPITER, the supreme deity of the Romans

**Iūra**, -ae, m., JURA, a chain of mountains in Gaul

**iürō**, iürare, iüravī, iüratūrus [*iūs*], swear, take an oath. (*Abjure*)

**iūs**, iūris, n., right, justice

**iussū**, *adv.* [*iubeō*], by order, by command of

**iussum**, -ī, n. [*iubeō*], order, command. Cf. imperātum

**iussus**, *see iubeō*

**iūstus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*iūs*], JUST

**iūvenis**, -e, *adj.*, young; *as noun*,

young man, youth. (*Juvenile*)

Cf. adulēscēns

**iuvō**, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid

**L.**, abbreviation for Lūcius

**Labiēnus**, -ī, m., LABIENUS, a lieutenant in Cæsar's army

**labor**, -ōris, m. [*labōrō*], LABOR, toil.

Cf. opus and opera

**labōrō**, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātūrus [*labor*], work, toil; suffer. (*Elaborate*)

**lac**, lactis, n., milk. (*Lacteal*)

**Lacaena**, -ae, f., a Laconian woman, a woman of Sparta

**lacrima**, -ae, f., tear. (*Lachrymal*)

**lacus**, -ūs, m., LAKE, pool

**laetitia**, -ae, f. [*laetus*], joy, gladness

**laetus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad, merry, pleasant, joyful

**Laevinus**, -ī, m., LÆVINUS, a Roman consul

**lambō**, lambere, —, —, lick, lap

**lämenta**, -ōrum, n. plur. [*lämentor*], wailing, LAMENTS, LAMENTATION

**lämentor**, lämentārī, lämentātus sum [*lämenta*], wail, LAMENT

**lapis**, -idis, m., stone, milestone. (*Lapidary*)

**lateō**, latēre, latui, —, lurk, lie hid, be concealed. (*Latent*)

**Latinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, LATIN; masc. plur. *as noun*, the LATINS

**lātitūdō**, -inis, f. [*lātus*], breadth, width. (*Latitude*)

**latrō**, -ōnis, m., robber, brigand

**lātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, wide

- laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus, praise, LAUD. (*Laudatory*)
- lēctus, *see* legō
- lēgatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*legātus*], embassy, LEGATION
- lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [*lēgatiō*], ambassador, deputy, lieutenant, LEGATUS. (*Legate*)
- legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*legō*], (a gathering), LEGION
- legō, legere, lēglī, lēctus, gather; se-LECT; read
- Lemannus, -ī, *m.*, the Lake of Geneva
- lēnis, -e, *adj.*: [*lēniter*], soft, smooth, gentle, mild. (*Lenient*)
- lēniter, *adv.* [*lēnis*], gently, moderately
- Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, LENTULUS, a Roman name
- Leōnidās, -ae, *m.*, LEONIDAS, commander of the Greeks at Thermopylæ
- lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law. (*Legal*)
- libenter, *adv.*, willingly, gladly
- liber, -brī, *m.*, book. (*Library*)
- liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free. (*Liberal*)
- liberi, -ōrum, *m. plur.* [*liber*], children
- liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus [*liber*], set free, free, LIBERATE; with *abl.* of separation
- libertās, -ātis, *f.* [*liber*], freedom, LIBERTY
- Lichās, -ae, *m.*, LICHAS, an attendant of Hercules
- ligneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wooden
- lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood; stake, stick
- Lingonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the LIN-GONES, a tribe in Gaul
- lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, LANGUAGE
- Linus, -ī, *m.*, LINUS, teacher of Hercules in music
- littera, -ae, *f.*, a LETTER (of the alphabet); *plur.*, LETTER, epistle. (*Literature*)
- lītus, -oris, *n.*, shore. (*Littoral*)
- locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus [*locus*], place, put, set. (*Locate*)
- locus, -ī, *m.* (*plur. locī, m., and loca, n.*), place, position, situation; chance, opportunity. (*Local*)
- locūtus, *see* loquor
- longē, *adv.* [*longus*], far, far off, by far
- longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*longus*], distant, remote, far away
- longitūdō, -inis, *f.*, length. (*Longitude*)
- longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, tedious
- loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak, talk, say. (*Elocution, Eloquent*)
- Lūcānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the LUCA-NIANS, a people of southern Italy
- lūdus, -ī, *m.*, game, sport
- lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxi, —, mourn, mourn for
- lūmen, -inis, *n.* [*tūx*], light. (*Luminous*)
- lupa, -ae, *f.*, she-wolf
- lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light. (*Lucid*)
- M., abbreviation for Mārcus
- māchinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, contrivance, MACHINE, engine
- magicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, MAGIC
- magis, *adv.* [*mag(nus)*], more, rather

- magister**, -tri, *m.* [*magis*], MASTER, teacher. (*Magistrate*)
- magnificus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*magnus-faciō*], splendid, MAGNIFICENT
- magnitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [*magnus*], greatness, size, MAGNITUDE
- magnopere**, *adv.* [*abl. of magnum opus*], greatly, exceedingly, heartily
- magnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large; loud. (*Magnify*)
- maior**, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.* of **magnus**. (*Major*)
- male**, *adv.* [*malus*], badly, ill. (*Malevolent*)
- mālō**, **mālle**, **mālui**, — [ *magis-volō* ], be more willing, prefer, would rather
- malum**, -i, *n.* [*malus*], bad thing, evil
- malus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, evil
- mandō**, **mandāre**, **mandāvī**, **mandā-tus** [*manus-dō*], (put in hand), charge, COMMAND, intrust. (*Man-date*)
- maneō**, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus**, stay, REMAIN, wait. (*Permanent*)
- manus**, -üs, *f.*, hand; grappling hook; force, band. (*Manual*)
- Mārcius**, **Mārcī**, *m.*, MARCIUS, a Roman name
- Mārcus**, -i, *m.*, MARCUS, a Roman first name
- mare**, -is, *n.*, sea. (*Marine*)
- maritus**, -i, *m.*, husband. (*Marital*)
- Mārs**, **Mārtis**, *m.*, MARS, the god of war. (*Martial*)
- māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother. (*Maternal*)
- mātrimōnium**, **mātrimōnī**, *n.* [*māter*], MATRIMONY, marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, marry
- mātrōna**, -ae, *f.* [*māter*], MATRON, woman
- mātūrō**, **mātūrāre**, **mātūrāvī**, **mātū-rātus**, hasten. (*Mature*.) Cf. *properō* and *contendō*
- maximē**, *adv.* [*maximus*], most, especially, greatly. Cf. *praecipue*
- maximus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, *superl.* of **magnus**. (*Maximum*)
- mē**, see *ego*
- medicus**, -i, *m.*, doctor, physician. (*Medicine*)
- medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, middle of; in *mediō*, between (them); in *medium*, to the center. (*Medium*)
- Medūsa**, -ae, *f.*, MEDUSA, one of the Gorgons, slain by Perseus
- melior**, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.* of **bonus**, better. (*Ameliorate*)
- membrum**, -i, *n.*, limb. (*Member*)
- memoria**, -ae, *f.* [*memorō*], MEMORY
- memorō**, **memorāre**, **memorāvī**, **me-morātus** [*memoria*], mention, relate, state. (*Commemorate*)
- mēns**, **mentis**, *f.*, mind. Cf. *animus*
- mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table
- mēnsis**, -is, *m.*, month
- mercātor**, -ōris, *m.*, trader, MERCHANT
- Mercurius**, **Mercurī**, *m.*, MERCURY, the messenger of the gods
- mergō**, **mergere**, **mersī**, **mersus**, sink. (*Merge*)
- meritum**, -i, *n.*, thing deserved, deserts, MERIT
- mersus**, see *mergō*
- meus**, -a, -um, possess. *adj.* and *pron.*, my, mine

- migrō, migrāre, migrāvī, migrātūrus, depart. (*Migrate*)
- mihi, *see* ego
- miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier. (*Military*)
- militāris, -e, *adj.* [*miles*], MILITARY
- mille, *adj.*, *indecl.* in sing.; in plur., milia, -ium, thousand; also (*supply passum*), MILES
- Minerva, -ae, *f.*, MINERVA, the goddess of wisdom
- minimē, *adv.* [*minimus*], least, not at all, by no means
- minimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *superl.* of parvus, least, very little. (*Minimum*)
- minor, -us, *adj.*, *comp.* of parvus, smaller, lesser. (*Minor, Minus*)
- minus, *adv.* [*minor*], less
- mīrāculum, -i, *n.* [*mīror*], wonder, marvel, MIRACLE
- mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum [*mīrus*], wonder, wonder at, ADMIRE
- mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*mīror*], wonderful, extraordinary
- miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, unhappy, MISERABLE
- mīserē, *adv.* [*miser*], wretchedly, MISERABLY
- mīsericordia, -ae, *f.*, pity, compassion
- mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, send. (*Mission*)
- modo, *adv.* [*modus*], only; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also
- modus, -i, *m.*, way, manner. (*Mood*)
- moenia, -ium, *n.* plur. [*mūniō*], walls (of a city). Cf. mūrus
- moneō, monēre, monūī, monitus, remind, advise, warn. (*Monitor*)
- mōns, montis, *m.*, MOUNTAIN, hill. Cf. collis
- mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātūs, show, point out. (*Demonstrate*)
- mōnstrum, -i, *n.*, MONSTER
- mora, -ae, *f.* [*moror*], delay
- mōrior, morī, mortuus sum (*fut. part.* moritūrus) [*mors*], die. (*Mortuary*)
- mōror, morārī, morātus sum [*mora*], retard, hinder, delay. (*Mortarium*)
- mōrs, mortis, *f.* [*mōrior*], death. (*Mortal*) Cf. nex
- mōrtuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*mōrior*], dead
- mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, habit, custom. (*Moral*)
- moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, MOVE
- mox, *adv.*, soon, presently
- Mūcius, Mūcī, *m.*, MUCIUS, a Roman name
- mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman. Cf. fēmina
- mūltitūdō, -inis, *f.* [*multus*], great number, MULTITUDE, quantity
- mūltō, *adv.* [*multus*], by much, much
- mūltum, *adv.* [*multus*], much
- mūltus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; plur., many. (*Multiply*)
- mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī (*mūnīi*), mūnītūs [*mōenia*], fortify, defend
- mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*mūniō*], fortification, defense. (*Munitions*)
- mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, office
- mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall. (*Mural, Immure*) Cf. moenia
- mūs, mūris, *m.* and *f.*, mouse
- Mūs, Mūris, *m.*, MUS, a Roman surname

- mūsica, -ae, *f.*, MUSIC  
 mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus,  
 change, alter. (*Mutation*)
- nam, *conj.*, for. Cf. enim  
 nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus,  
 tell, relate, NARRATE  
 nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born.  
 (*Native*)  
**Nāsīca**, -ae, *m.*, NASICA, a Roman  
 surname  
**nātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, tribe, people, NATION  
**natō**, natāre, natāvī, natātūrus [*fre-  
 quentative of nō*], swim, float.  
 (*Natatorial*)  
**nātūra**, -ae, *f.* [nāscor], (birth),  
 NATURE, character  
**nātus**, see nāscor  
**nauta**, -ae, *m.* [*for nāvita*; *nāvis*],  
 sailor. (*Nautical*)  
**nāvīgum**, nāvīgi, *n.* [nāvīgō], boat  
**nāvīgō**, nāvīgāre, nāvīgāvī, nāvīgā-  
 tus [nāvis-agō], sail, cruise, NAVI-  
 GATE  
**nāvis**, -is, *f.* (*acc.* -em, -im; *abl.* -ī,  
 -e), ship. (*Naval*)  
**-ne**, interrog. *adv.*, enclitic, sign of  
 a question  
**nē**, *conj.*, that not, that; lest; nē  
 . . . quidem, not even  
**nec**, see neque  
**necessē**, neut. *adj.*, indecl., unavoidable,  
 NECESSARY  
**necessitās**, -ātis, *f.* [necessē], need,  
 NECESSITY  
**necō**, necāre, necāvī, necātus [nex],  
 kill, slay. Cf. interficiō and occidō  
**negōtium**, negōti, *n.*, business, labor.  
 (*Negotiate*)
- nēmō, -ini (*dat.*; *no gen. or abl.*), *m.*  
 and *f.* [nē-homō], no one, nobody,  
 no man  
**Neptūnus**, -ī, *m.*, NEPTUNE, the god  
 of the sea  
**ne-que or nec**, *conj.*, and not, nōr;  
 neque . . . neque, neither . . .  
 nor  
**Nervī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the NERVI,  
 a tribe of northeastern Gaul  
**Nessus**, -ī, *m.*, NESSUS, a centaur  
 slain by Hercules  
**neuter**, -tra, -trum, *adj. and pron.*  
 [nē-uter], neither (of two). (*Neu-  
 tral*)  
**nex**, necis, *f.* [necō], death, slaughter,  
 murder. Cf. mors  
**nihil**, *n.*, indecl., nothing; nihil cibī,  
 no food. (*Nihilist*)  
**ni-si**, *conj.*, if not, unless, except  
**nix**, nivis, *f.*, snow  
**nō**, nāre, nāvī, —, swim  
**nōbilis**, -e, *adj.* [nōscō, know], well  
 known, celebrated; of high birth;  
 NOBLE  
**nōbilitās**, -ātis, *f.* [nōbilis], rank,  
 NOBILITY  
**noceō**, nocēre, nocui, nocitūrus, do  
 harm to, hurt, injure; *with dat.*  
 (*Noxious*)  
**noctū**, *adv.* [nox], by night  
**nōlō**, nōlle, nōlui, — [nē-volō], be  
 unwilling, will not, not wish  
**nōmen**, -inis, *n.* [nōscō, know], (that  
 by which a thing is known), name.  
 (*Nominal*)  
**nōminō**, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōmi-  
 natūs [nōmen], name, call. (*Nomi-  
 nate*)

- nōn, *adv.* [*nē-ūnum*], not; nōn iam, no longer; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also. (*Nonentity.*) Cf. haud
- nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet
- nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.* and *pron.*, (not none), some, several
- nōs, *see* ego
- noster, -tra, -trum, possess. *adj.* and *pron.* [*nōs*], our, ours; nostrī, our men. (*Nostrum*)
- novem, *adj.*, *indecl.*, nine
- novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new. (*Novelty*)
- nox, noctis, *f.*, night. (*Nocturnal*)
- nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud
- nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.* and *pron.* [*nē-ūllus*], no, none, no one. (*Nativity*)
- num, interrog. *adv.*, in an *indir. question*, whether
- Numa Pompilius, Numae Pompilī, *m.*, NUMA POMPILIIUS, the second king of Rome
- numerus, -ī, *m.*, NUMBER. (*Numerical*)
- numquam, *adv.* [*nē-umquam*], never
- nunc, *adv.*, now. (*Quidnunc.*) Cf. iam
- nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus [*nūntius*], report, ANNOUNCE. (*An-nunciation*)
- nūntius, nūnti, *m.* [*nūntiō*], bearer of news, messenger. (*Nuncio*)
- nūper, *adv.* [*for noviper; novus*], recently, lately
- nymphā, -ae, *f.*, NYMPH
- ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
- ob-, prefix, against, opposite
- ob-iciō, obicere, obiēci, obiectus [-iaciō], (throw in the way), throw between, interpose. (*Object*)
- obiectus, *see* obiciō
- oblātus, *see* offerō
- obnoxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, liable to, exposed to. (*Obnoxious*)
- obscūrō, obscūrāre, obscūrāvī, obscūrātus, darken, conceal. (*Obscure*)
- obses, -idis, *m. and f.* [*ob-sedeō*], (one who sits or remains as a pledge), hostage
- ob-sideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus [-sedeō], (sit down against), besiege, beset, blockade. (*Obsess.*) Cf. oppugnō
- obsolētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, old. (*Obsolete*)
- ob-struō, obstruere, obstrūxi, obstrūctus, (build up against), block up, bar, barricade, OBSTRUCT
- ob-stupefaciō, obstupefacere, obstu-pefēci, obstupefactus, astonish, amaze, astound
- ob-tineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus [-teneō], (hold against), possess, occupy, hold. (*Obtain*)
- occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, chance, opportunity. (*Occasion.*) Cf. potestās
- occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, setting (of the sun)
- oc-cidō, occidere, occidī, occisus [*ob-caedō*], cut down, slay, kill. Cf. interficiō and necō
- occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātus [*ob-capio*], take possession of, seize; OCCUPY
- oc-currō, occurrere, occurri, occursūrus [*ob-*], run toward; meet, fall in with. (*Occur*)

- ōceanus, -i, m., OCEAN  
 Ocelum, -i, n., OCELUM, a town in Cisalpine Gaul  
**octingentī, -ae, -a, adj.** [*octō-centum*], eight hundred  
**octō, adj., indecl.**, eight. (*Octave*)  
**octōgintā, adj., indecl.**, eighty  
**oculus, -i, m.**, eye. (*Ocular*)  
**odium, odi, n.**, hatred, enmity. (*Odium*)  
**Oeneus, -i, m.**, OENEUS, father of Deianira  
**Oeta, -ae, f.**, ΟΤΑ, a mountain in Greece  
**of-fendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus** [*ob-*], strike against; come on, find. (*Offend*)  
**of-ferō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus** [*ob-*], OFFER, present  
**officīna, -ae, f.**, workshop, laboratory  
**officium, officī, n.**, duty, task. (*Office*)  
**ōlim, adv.** [*olle, old form of ille*], (at that time); formerly, once; once upon a time. Cf. aliquandō  
**Olympus, -i, m.**, OLYMPUS, a mountain in Greece, the abode of the gods  
**o-mittō, omittere, omisi, omissus** [*ob-*], let go by, disregard, neglect, OMIT  
**omnīnō, adv.** [*omnis*], wholly, altogether, entirely  
**omnis, -e, adj.**, whole, all, every. (*Omnipresent.*) Cf. cūnctus, tōtus, and ūniversus  
**opera, -ae, f.** [*opus*], labor, care, work. (*Opera*) Cf. labor and opus  
**oppidānus, -i, m.** [*oppidum*], townsman  
**oppidum, -i, n.**, town, stronghold  
**op-primō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus** [*ob-premō*, press], overcome, crush, OPPRESS  
**op-pugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvi, oppugnātus** [*ob-*], attack, assault, besiege. Cf. expugnō and obsideō  
**(ops), opis, f.**, aid, help. Cf. auxilium  
**optimus, -a, -um, adj.**, superl. of bonus, best. (*Optimist*)  
**opus, -eris, n.**, work, labor. (*Operate*) Cf. labor  
**ōrāculum, -i, n.** [*ōrō*], ORACLE  
**ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.** [*ōrō*], speech, plea; ORATION  
**orbis, -is, m.**, circle, ORB, world; orbis terrārum, earth, world. (*Orbit*)  
**orbō, orbāre, orbāvī, orbātus**, deprive, bereave  
**ōrdinō, ōrdināre, ōrdināvi, ōrdinātus** [*ōrō*], plan, arrange. (*Coördinate, Ordain*)  
**ōrdō, -inis, m.**, rank, ORDER; ex ōrdine, in succession, one after another; extrā ōrdinem, out of the ranks. (*Extraordinary*)  
**Orgetorix, -īgis, m.**, ORGETORIX, a Helvetian chief  
**orior, orīrī, ortus sum**, arise, spring. descend (from); ortā lūce, at day-break  
**ōrnō, ūrnāre, ūrnāvī, ūrnātus**, adORN, ORNAMENT, deck  
**ōrō, ūrāre, ūrāvī, ūrātus**, (speak), beg, pray, entreat, plead. (*Oratory*)  
**ortus, see orior**  
**os-tendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus** [*ob(s)-*], stretch out; show, display. (*Ostensible*)

ōstium, ōsti, *n.*, mouth  
ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep

P., abbreviation for Pūblius  
pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus, sub-  
due, PACify  
paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost  
palaestra, -ae, *f.*, wrestling school,  
gymnasium

Palātinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, PALATINE,  
of the PALATINE (one of the hills  
of Rome)

pālus, -i, *m.*, stake, PALE  
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh  
parēns, -entis, *m. and f.*, PARENT  
pārēō, pārēre, pāruī, —, (come  
forth, APPEAR), be obedient to,  
obey; with dat.

pariter, *adv.*, equally; pariter ac,  
equally with, as well as.

parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus, make  
ready, PREPARE for, PREPARE

pars, partis, *f.*, PART, share; direc-  
tion, side. (Partial)

parum, *adv.*, too little, not enough

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diminutive  
of *parvus*], very small, slight, in-  
significant

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little

passus, see patior

passus, -ūs, *m.* [*pateō*], (a stretch-  
ing out of the feet in walking),  
step, PACE; mille passuum,  
MILE

pāstor, -ōris, *m.*, (feeder), shepherd.  
(*Pastor*)

pate-faciō, patefacere, patefēci, pate-  
factus [*pateō*], (make open), open,  
throw open

pateō, patēre, patui, —, lie open,  
be open, be exposed; extend.  
(*Patent*)

pater, -tris, *m.*, father. (*Paternal*)  
patior, pati, passus sum, bear, suffer,  
allow, permit. (*Patient, Passive*)  
patria, -ae, *f.* [*pater*], native land,  
country. (*Patriotism*)

patrimōnium, patrimōni, *n.* [*pater*],  
property. (*Patrimony*)

paucus, -a, -um, *adj.* (generally  
plur.), few, little. (*Paucity*)

paulō, *adv.*, by a little, little  
paululum, *adv.* [*diminutive of pau-*  
*lum*], a very little, somewhat

paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat  
pauper, pauperis, *adj.*, POOR. (*Pau-*  
*per*)

paupertās, -ātis, *f.* [*pauper*], want,  
POVERTY

pavor, -ōris, *m.*, fear, dread, alarm.  
*Cf. terror and timor*

pāx, pācis, *f.*, PEACE. (*Pacify*)  
pectus, -oris, *n.*, breast. (*Pectoral*)

pecūnia, -ae, *f.* [*pecus*], money. (*Pe-*  
*cuniary*)

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, flock  
pedes, -itis, *m.* [*pēs*], foot soldier

peditātus, -ūs, *m.* [*pedes*], infantry  
peior, -ius, *adj.*, comp. of malus,  
worse

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, beat,  
drive, defeat. (*Expel, Pulse*)

per, *prep. with acc.*; through, by, by  
means of, on account of. (*Percent-*  
*age*)

peragrō, peragrāre, peragrāvī, peragrā-  
tus [*per agrum*], wander through,  
pass over, traverse. *Cf. perlūstrō*

per-cipiō, percipere, percēpi, percep-tus [-*capiō*], PERCEIVE, feel. (*Perception.*) Cf. sentiō  
 percussus, see percutiō  
 per-cutīō, percutere, percussī, per-cussus [-*quatiō*, strike], hit, strike, run through. (*Percussion*)  
 per-dō, perdere, perdidi, perditus [-*dō*, put], lose. (*Perdition.*) Cf. amittō  
 per-dūcō, perdūcere, perdūxi, per-ductus, lead through, CONDUCT, bring; construct  
 per-ficiō, perficere, perfēci, perfectus [-*faciō*], accomplish; PERFECT  
 perfrāctus, see perfringō  
 per-fringō, perfringere, perfrēgi, per-fractus [-*frangō*, break], break to pieces, shatter, completely wreck  
 pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēcturus [per-*regō*], go on, proceed, hasten. Cf. prōcēdō and prōgredior  
 periculum, -ī, n. [*experior*], trial, attempt; risk, danger, PERIL  
 per-lūstrō, perlūstrāre, perlūstrāvi, perlūstrātus, wander through, view all over, examine, survey. Cf. peragrō  
 per-maneō, permanēre, permānsi, permānsurus, remain  
 per-mittō, permittere, permisi, per-missus, allow, grant, suffer, PERMIT; yield, give up; with dat. of person. (*Permission*)  
 per-moveō, permovēre, permōvi, per-mōtus, excite  
 per-scribō, perscribere, perscripsi, perscriptus, write at length, de-Scribe fully

Persēs, -ae, m., a PERSIAN  
 Perseus, -ī, m., PERSEUS, a hero of Greek mythology  
 perspectus, see perspiciō  
 per-spiciō, perspicere, perspexi, perspectus [-*speciō*, look], (see through), see clearly, ascertain. (*Perspective*)  
 per-suādēō, persuādēre, persuāsi, per-suāsus, PERSUADE; with dat. of person. (*Persuasion*)  
 per-terreō, perterrēre, perterrui, per-territus, thoroughly frighten, alarm  
 pertinācia, -ae, f., perseverance; ob-stinacy, PERTINACITY  
 per-tineō, pertinēre, pertinui, — [-*teneō*], extend, PERTAIN TO  
 pertrāctus, see pertrahō  
 per-trahō, pertrahere, pertrāxi, per-trāctus, (drag through), drag, drag along  
 per-turbō, perturbāre, perturbāvi, per-turbātus, DISTURB, arouse. (*Perturbation*)  
 per-veniō, pervenire, pervēni, per-ventūrus, come up, arrive, reach  
 pēs, pedis, m., foot; pedem referre, retreat, fall back. (*Pedal*)  
 pessimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of malus, worst. (*Pessimist*)  
 petō, petere, petivī (petii), petitus, seek, demand, ask for, ask, beg; attack. (*Petition.*) Cf. postulō, quaerō, and rogō  
 pilum, -ī, n., javelin. (*Pile-driver*)  
 pinguis, -e, adj., fat, heavy  
 pīrāta, -ae, m., PIRATE  
 piscātor, -ōris, m., fisherman. (*Piscatorial*)

- placeō, placēre, placui, placitūrus,  
PLEASE; with dat. (*Placid*)
- plānitiēs, -ēi, f., (a flatness), level  
ground, PLAIN
- plēbs, plēbis, f., the common people,  
PLEBEians
- plōrō, plōrāre, plōrāvi, plōrātus, be-  
wail, lament, grieve. (*Deplore*)
- plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of  
multus, most, very many; plūri-  
mum posse, be very powerful,  
have most influence
- plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of multus,  
more; plur., more, many. (*Plural*)
- poena, -ae, f. [ *pūniō* ], fine, punish-  
ment; poenās dare, suffer punish-  
ment. (*Penalty, Subpœna*)
- Poenus, -i, m., a Carthaginian  
poëta, -ae, m., POET
- polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum,  
promise; rarely as pass., be  
promised
- Polydectēs, -is, m., POLYDECTES, a  
king of Seriphos
- Polyphēmus, -i, m., POLYPHEMUS, a  
Cyclops
- pōnum, -i, n., apple. (*Pomology*)
- pondus, -eris, n., weight, bulk.  
(*Ponderous*)
- pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus, put,  
place, set, set up, pitch (camp);  
pass., lie. (*Position, Postpone*)
- pōns, pontis, m., bridge. (*Pontoon*)
- populor, populāri, populātus sum,  
lay waste, devastate, plunder, pil-  
lage. (*Depopulate*)
- populus, -i, m., PEOPLE. (*Populous*)
- Porsena, -ae, m., PORSENA, a king  
of Clusium, in Etruria
- porta, -ae, f., gate, door. (*Portal*)
- portō, portāre, portāvi, portātus,  
carry, bring. (*Import.*) Cf. ferō
- portus, -ūs, m., harbor, PORT
- poscō, poscere, poposcī, —, de-  
mand. Cf. postulō
- positus, see pōnō
- possum, posse, potui, —, be able,  
can; plūrimum posse, be very  
powerful, have most influence.  
(*Possible*)
- post, prep. with acc., after, behind;  
adv., afterwards. (*Postscript*)
- post-eā, adv., afterwards
- (posterus), -a, -um, adj. [*post*], fol-  
lowing, next. (*Postern, Posterity*)
- post-quam, conj., after
- postridiē, adv. [*postero dīē*], on the  
next day
- postulō, postulāre, postulāvi, postu-  
lātus, ask, request, demand. (*Postu-  
late.*) Cf. petō, quaerō, and  
rogō
- potestās, -ātis, f. [*possum*], power,  
authority; opportunity, permission
- prae-, prefix, before, very
- prae-acūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharpened  
at the end, pointed
- praebeō, praebēre, praebui, praebitus  
[ *prae-habeō* ], hold forth, offer, fur-  
nish; cause, render
- praecipuē, adv. [*praecipius*], chiefly,  
especially, particularly. Cf. maximē
- praecipiuſ, -a, -um, adj., particular;  
of high rank
- prae-clārūs, -a, -um, adj., very splen-  
did, glorious
- praeda, -ae, f. [*praedor*], booty, spoil,  
PREY. (*Predatory*)

**praedōr, praedārī, praedātus sum** [*praeda*], rob, plunder. (*Depredation*)

**prae-ficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus [-faciō]**, put in command. (*Prefect*)

**prae-mittō, praemittere, praemisi,** *praemissus*, send ahead

**praemium, praemi,** *n.*, reward, prize. (*Premium*)

**Praeneste, -is, n. and f., PRÆNESTE,** a town of Italy

**praesēns, -entis, adj.**, instant, immediate, PRESENT

**praeses, -idis, m. and f. [prae-sedeō]**, (one who sits before), protector, guardian

**praesidūm, praesidiī, n. [prae-sideō]**, sit before], defense, help, protection, support, guard. Cf. auxiliū and subsidium

**prae-stō, praestārē, praestiti, praestitus**, stand out, surpass, be superior to, be preferable; perform, furnish. Cf. superō and vincō

**prae-sum, praeesse, praefui, praefutūrus**, be before, be at the head of, command; with dat.

**praeter-eā, adv.**, besides, moreover  
**praeter-eō, praeterire, praeterī, praeteritus**, go by, pass by. (*Pret erit*)

**prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsus**, grasp, seize. (*Comprehend*)

**pretiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [pretium]**,

costly, valuable, PRECIOUS

**pretium, pretī,** *n.*, PRICE, value; reward, ransom. (*Appreciate*)

**prex, precis, f., PRAYER, entreaty.** (*Imprecate*)

**primō, adv. [primus]**, at first, first, in the first place

**primum, adv. [primus]**, first, at first

**primus, -a, -um, adj.**, first, foremost. (*Prime, Primal*)

**princeps, -cipis, m. [primus-capiō]**, (taking the first place), chief, leader. (*Prince, Principal*.) Cf. dux

**Priscus, -i, m.**, Tarquinius PRISCUS, one of the seven kings of Rome

**prius, adv.**, before, sooner, previously

**prius quam, conj.**, sooner than, before

**privātus, -a, -um, adj. [privō]**, PRIVATE

**privō, privāre, privāvī, privātus**, deprive; with abl.

**prō, prep. with abl.**, before, in behalf of, for, instead of; considering; in accordance with

**probō, probārē, probāvī, probātus**, PROVE, APPROVE

**prō-cēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessūs**, come forward, go forward, advance, PROCEED. Cf. prōgredior and pergō

**procul, adv.**, far, afar off

**prō-dūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxi, prōductus**, lead forth, bring forth. (*Produce*)

**proelium, proelī,** *n.*, battle, combat, skirmish. Cf. pugna

**profectus, see proficiscor**

**proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum**, set out, march, go. Cf. exeō and ēgredior

**prō-gredior**, **prōgredi**, **prōgressus** sum [-*gradior*, go], go forward, advance, PROGRESS. Cf. **prōcēdō**

**prōgressus**, see **prōgredior**

**pro-hibeō**, **prohibēre**, **prohibui**, prohibitus [-*habeō*], prevent, keep from, PROHIBIT

**prō-iaciō**, **prōicere**, **prōiecti**, **prōiectus** [-*iaciō*], throw, cast. (*Projectile*)

**prō-mittō**, **prōmittere**, **prōmisi**, **prōmissus**, put forth, PROMISE

**prōmō**, **prōmēre**, **prōmpsī**, **prōmptus** [prō-*emō*], take out, bring forth. (*Prompt*)

**prō-moveō**, **prōmovēre**, **prōmōvi**, **prōmōtus**, MOVE forward, advance. (*Promote*)

**prōmunturium**, **prōmunturi**, n., PROMONTORY

**prope**, *prep.* with *acc.*, near, near to; *adv.*, close at hand, nearly, almost

**properō**, **properāre**, **properāvi**, **prōperātūrus**, hasten. Cf. **mātūrō** and **contendō**

**propinquus**, -a, -um, adj. [prope], near. (*Propinquity*)

**propior**, -ius, adj., comp. [prope], nearer, close

**propius**, adv. [propior], nearer

**prō-pōnō**, **prōpōnere**, **prōposui**, **prōpositus**, put before, set forth; make known, declare, PROPOSE. (*Proposition*)

**propter**, *prep.* with *acc.*, on account of

**prō-sternō**, **prōsternere**, **prōstrāvi**, **prōstrātus**, strike down, knock down

**prōstrātus**, -a, -um, adj. [prōsternō], thrown down, PROSTRATE

**prō-sum**, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, **prōfutūrus**, be before, be useful to, benefit, avail; with dat.

**prōvectus**, see **prōvehō**

**prō-vehō**, **prōvehere**, **prōvexi**, **prōvectus**, carry forward, carry off; pass., advance, proceed

**prōvincia**, -ae, f., PROVINCE

**prō-vocō**, **prōvocāre**, **prōvocāvi**, **prōvocātus**, call forth, challenge, invite. (*Provoke*)

**proximus**, -a, -um, adj., superl. of propior, nearest, next. (*Proximity*)

**pūblicē**, *adv.*, in the name of the state, PUBLICLY

**Pūblicola**, -ae, m., PUBLICOLA, a Roman surname

**puella**, -ae, f. [*diminutive of puer*], girl, maiden

**puer**, -erī, m., boy, child. (*Puerile*)

**pugna**, -ae, f. [pugnō], battle, contest, fight. Cf. **proelium**. (*Pugnacious*)

**pugnō**, **pugnāre**, **pugnāvi**, **pugnātūrus** [pugna], fight. Cf. **dimicō**

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrūm, adj., beautiful, fair, pretty. (*Pulchritude*)

**pūniō**, **pūnire**, **pūnivī** (pūniī), **pūnitūs** [poena], PUNISH

**putō**, **putāre**, **putāvī**, **putātūs**, think, believe, reckon. (*Compute*.) Cf. arbitrō and existimō

**Pyrrhus**, -i, m., PYRRHUS, a king of Epirus

**Pýthia**, -ae, f., the PYTHIA, the inspired prophetess of Apollo at Delphi

**quā**, *adv.* [*qui*], where  
**quadrigintā**, *adj.*, *indecl.*, forty  
**quaerō**, *quaerere*, *quaesivī* (*quaesii*),  
*quaesitus*, seek, ask, INQUIRE.  
*Cf.* *petō* and *rogō*

**quālis**, -e, *interrog.* and *rel. adj.*,  
 what sort of. (*Quality*)

**quam**, *adv.* [*qui*], than, how  
**quam-quam**, *conj.*, though, although  
**quandō**, *adv.*, at any time  
**quantus**, -a, -um, *interrog.* and *rel. adj.*

[*quam*], how great, how much;  
 as great as, as much as. (*Quantity*)

**quā-rē**, *adv.*, for which reason,  
 wherefore, therefore

**quārtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*quattuor*],  
 fourth. (*Quart*)

**qua-si**, *adv.*, as if

**quattuor**, *adj.*, *indecl.*, four

**quattuor-decim**, *adj.*, *indecl.* [-decem],  
 fourteen

-que, *conj.*, enclitic, and. *Cf.* et and  
 atque (ac)

**qui**, *quae*, *quod*, *rel. pron.* and *adj.*,  
 who, which, what, that

**quidam**, *quaedam*, *quoddam* (*quid-dam*), *indef. pron.* and *adj.*, a  
 certain one, certain, a

**quidem**, *adv.* (*never the first word*),  
 indeed, certainly, in truth; nē

. . . quidem, not . . . even

**quiēs**, -ētis, f., QUIET, rest, repose

**quinquāgintā**, *adj.*, *indecl.* [*quinque*],  
 fifty

**quinque**, *adj.*, *indecl.*, five. (*Quinquennial*)

**quīntus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*quinque*],  
 fifth

**Quirīnālis**, -is, m., the QUIRINAL,  
 one of the hills of Rome  
**quis** (*qui*), *quae*, *quid* (*quod*), *in-*  
*terrog.* *pron.* and *adj.*, who?  
 which? what?

**quisquam**, —, *quidquam*, *indef.*  
*pron.* and *adj.* (*no plur.*), any one,  
 anything (at all), any

**quisque**, *quaeque*, *quidque* (*quod-que*), *indef. pron.* and *adj.*, each  
 one, each, every

**qui-vis**, *quaevis*, *quodvis* (*quidvis*),  
*indef. pron.* and *adj.*, any one,  
 anything (you wish), any what-  
 ever

**quōd**, *interrog.* and *rel. adv.* [*quis*,  
*qui*], whither, where

**quod**, *conj.* [*qui*], because, in that  
**quoque**, *conj.* (*after an emphatic*  
*word*), also, too. *Cf.* *etiam*  
**quot**, *interrog.* and *rel. adj.*, *indecl.*  
 how many? as many as

**rapina**, -ae, f. [*rapiō*], robbery, plun-  
 dering. (*Rapine*)

**rapiō**, *rapere*, *rapui*, *raptus*, seize;  
 snatch, drag. (*Rapt*, *Rapture*)

**rārō**, *adv.*, seldom, RARELY  
**ratiō**, -ōnis, f., (a reckoning), reason,  
 method, plan, way, conduct.  
 (*Ratio*)

**re-** (red-), *prefix*, back, again  
**re-cēdō**, *recēdere*, *recessī*, *recessūrus*,  
 withdraw. (*Recede*, *Recess*)

**re-cipiō**, *recipere*, *recēpi*, *receptus*  
 [-*capiō*], take back, RECEIVE, re-  
 cover; sē *recipere*, withdraw,  
 retreat, betake one's self. (*Re-*  
*ception*)

**rēctus, -a, -um, adj.** [regō], straight, DIRECT, right

**re-cumbō, recumbere, recubui, —, lie down, sink down.** (*Recumbent*)

**re-currō, recurrere, recurri, —, (run back), retire, return.** (*Recur*)

**re-cūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus [causa], decline, refuse**

**red-dō, reddere, reddidī, redditus [re(d)-dō, put], give back, return, RENDER, make**

**red-eō, redire, rediī, redditūrus [re(d)-], go back, return**

**red-imō, redimere, redēmī, redēmptus [re(d)-emō], buy back, purchase, REDEEM, ransom.** (*Redemption*)

**reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō], return**

**re-dūcō, reducere, redūxi, reductus, lead back, bring back.** (*Reduce*)

**re-ferō, referre, retuli, relātus, bring back; return, repay; report, announce; pedem referre, withdraw, retreat, fall back.** (*Refer, Relate*)

**refrāctus, see refringō**

**re-fringō, refringere, refregī, refrāctus [-frangō], break down, break open.** (*Refraction*)

**re-fugiō, refugere, refūgī, —, flee for safety, flee, take to flight.** (*Refuge*)

**rēgina, -ae, f. [regō], (the ruling one), queen**

**regiō, -ōnis, f., place, REGION, country**

**rēgius, -a, -um, adj.** [rēx], the king's, of the king, royal

**rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātūrus [rēgnūm], rule, REIGN**

**rēgnūm, -ī, n. [rēx], kingdom**  
**regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus [rēx], rule**  
**re-iciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus [-iaciō], throw back, drive back, hurl back.** (*Reject*)

**re-lābor, relābī, relāpsus sum, (slide back), flow back, subside.** (*Relapse*)

**re-linquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, leave behind, leave, abandon.** (*Relinquish*)

**reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remaining, rest of; plur. as noun, the rest.** (*Relic*) Cf. ceterī

**re-mandō, remandāre, remandāvī, remandātus, send back word.** (*Remand*)

**re-moveō, removēre, removī, remōtus, (move back), REMOVE.** (*Remote*)

**re-mūneror, remūnerārī, remūnerātus sum, repay, reward.** (*Remunerate*)

**Remus, -ī, m., REMUS, brother of Romulus**

**rēmus, -ī, m., oar**

**re-nūntiō, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātus, report, ANNOUNCE.** (*Renunciation*)

**re-parō, reparāre, reparāvī, reparātus, renew, revive.** (*Repair*)

**re-pellō, repellere, repulī, repulsus, drive away, cast down, deprive; REPULSE, REPEL**

**repentinō, adv.** [repentinus], suddenly, unexpectedly

**repentinus, -a, -um, adj., sudden**

**re-periō, reperire, repperī, repertus [-pariō, bring forth], find, discover, ascertain.** Cf. inveniō

**repertor, -ōris, m. [reperiō], discoverer, inventor**

**re-pleō**, **replēre**, **replēvi**, **replētus**, fill up again. (*Replete*)

**re-pōnō**, **repōnere**, **reposuī**, **repositor**, put away, store, keep

**re-portō**, **reportāre**, **reportāvi**, **repor-tatus**, bring back, win, gain. (*Report.*) Cf. *referō*

**re-poscō**, **reposcere**, —, —, demand back, ask for, claim

**repositus**, see **repōnō**

**re-prehendō**, **reprehendere**, **repre-hendī**, **reprehēnsus**, find fault with, blame. (*Reprehend*)

**re-prōmittō**, **reprōmittere**, **reprōmisi**, **reprōmissus**, promise in return

**repulsus**, see **repellō**

**rēs**, **rei**, f., thing, event, circumstance, affair, scheme, cause, matter, fact ; **rēs pūblica**, REPUBLIC, state, commonwealth ; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply, provisions ; **quā rē**, wherefore. (*Real, Rebus*)

**re-scindō**, **rescindere**, **rescidī**, **rescis-sus**, cut off, break down, demolish. (*Rescind*)

**rescissus**, see **rescindō**

**re-sistō**, **resistere**, **restitī**, —, RESIST, oppose ; with dat.

**re-spondeō**, **respondēre**, **respondī**, **re-spōnsus**, (promise in return), answer, reply, RESPOND

**re-spōnsūm**, -ī, n. [*respondeō*], reply, RESPONSE

**re-stituō**, **restituere**, **restituī**, **restitū-tus** [-*statuō*, set up], replace, restore. (*Restitution*)

**re-tineō**, **retinēre**, **retinuī**, **retentus** [-*teneō*], keep back, reserve. (*Retain*)

**reversus**, see **revertō**

**re-vertō**, **revertere**, **revertī**, **reversus** (or, in the present system, commonly revertor, etc., deponent), turn back, return. (*Revert*)

**rēx**, **rēgis**, m. [*regō*], (ruler), king. (*Regal*)

**Rhēa Silvia**, **Rhēae Silviae**, f., RHEA SILVIA, a priestess of Vesta, and mother of Romulus and Remus

**Rhēnus**, -ī, m., the RHINE

**Rhodanus**, -ī, m., the RHONE

**rīdeō**, **ridēre**, **rīsi**, **rīsus**, smile, laugh at, laugh. (*Deride*)

**ripa**, -ae, f., bank. (*Riparian*)

**rogō**, **rogāre**, **rogāvī**, **rogātus**, ask, question. Cf. *quaerō*, *petō*, and *postulō*

**rogus**, -ī, m., funeral pile, pyre

**Rōma**, -ae, f., ROME

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, adj. [*Rōma*], ROMAN ; masc. as noun, a ROMAN

**Rōmulus**, -ī, m., ROMULUS, first king of Rome

**rūpēs**, -is, f., steep rock, cliff. Cf. *saxum*

**rūrsus**, adv. [*for reversus*], (turned back), again

**Sabīnī**, -ōrum, m., the SABINES, a tribe of Italy

**sacer**, -cra, -crum, adj., SACRED **sacerdōs**, -ōtis, m. and f. [*sacer*], priest, priestess. (*Sacerdotal*)

**sacrificium**, **sacrifici**, n. [*sacrificō*], SACRIFICE

**sacrificō**, **sacrificāre**, **sacrificāvī**, **sacrificātus** [*sacer-faciō*], SACRIFICE

**sacrum**, -ī, n. [*sacer*], shrine

- saepe**, *adv.*, often, frequently  
**saepiō**, *saepire*, *saepī*, *saeptus*,  
 (hedge in), surround, fortify, guard  
**saevus**, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, cruel, savage,  
 fierce. *Cf. atrōx and trux*  
**sagitta**, *-ae*, *f.*, arrow. (*Sagittarius*)  
**saltus**, *-ūs*, *m.*, forest, glade, thicket  
**salūs**, *-ūtis*, *f.*, SAFETY, welfare;  
 greeting  
**Samnitēs**, *-ium*, *m. plur.*, the SAM-  
 NITES, a tribe of Italy  
**sanguis**, *-inis*, *m.*, blood. (*Sanguinary*)  
**Santonēs**, *-um*, *m. plur.*, the SAN-  
 TONES, a tribe of Gaul  
**satis**, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently.  
 (*Satisfy*)  
**saxum**, *-i*, *n.*, stone, rock. *Cf. rūpēs*  
**scelus**, *-eris*, *n.*, wickedness, crime  
**sciō**, *scire*, *scivi* (*scii*), *scitus*, know,  
 know how. (*Science*.) *Cf. cognoscō*  
**Scipiō**, *-ōnis*, *m.*, SCIPIO, a famous  
 Roman general  
**scriba**, *-ae*, *m. [scribō]*, writer, clerk,  
 secretary. (*Scribe*)  
**scribō**, *scribere*, *scripti*, *scriptus*,  
 write. (*Scripture*)  
**scūtum**, *-i*, *n.*, shield  
**sē**, *sēsē*, see *suī*  
**sectiō**, *-ōnis*, *f.*, (a cutting), sale of  
 confiscated goods, booty. (*Section*)  
**secundus**, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [*sequor*], fol-  
 lowing, next; SECOND  
**sed**, *conj.*, but. *Cf. autem*  
**sēdecim**, *adj.*, *indecl.* [*sex-decēm*],  
 sixteen  
**sedēō**, *sedēre*, *sēdī*, *sessūrus* [*sēdēs*],  
 sit. (*Sedentary*)  
**sēdēs**, *-is*, *f. [sedēō]*, seat, dwelling,  
 perch. (*See of a bishop*)
- sēditiō**, *-ōnis*, *f.*, discord, revolt,  
 SEDITION  
**Segusiāvi**, *-ōrum*, *m. plur.*, the  
 SEGUSIAVI, a tribe of Gaul  
**semper**, *adv.*, always, ever  
**senātor**, *-ōris*, *m. [senātus]*, SENAT-  
 TOR  
**senātus**, *-ūs*, *m. [senātor]*, council of  
 elders, SENATE  
**senectūs**, *-ūtis*, *f. [senex*, old], old age  
**senior**, *-ōris*, *m. [comp. of senex*, old*]*,  
 elder. (*Senior*)  
**sentiō**, *sentire*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*, feel,  
 know (by the senses), see, per-  
 ceive. (*Sense*.) *Cf. percipiō*  
**sepeliō**, *sepelīre*, *sepelīvī* (*sepelii*),  
 sepultus, bury, inter. (*Sepulture*)  
**septem**, *adj.*, *indecl.*, seven  
**septimus**, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [*septem*],  
 seventh  
**Sēquani**, *-ōrum*, *m. plur.*, the SE-  
 QUANI, a tribe of Gaul  
**sequor**, *sequī*, *secūtus sum*, follow.  
 (*Prosecute*)  
**Seriphus**, *-i*, *f.*, SERIPHOS, a small  
 island east of Greece  
**serpēns**, *-entis*, *m.*, SERPENT, snake  
**servitūs**, *-ūtis*, *f. [servus]*, slavery,  
 SERVITUDE  
**Servius Tullius**, *Servī Tullī*, *m.*,  
 SERVIUS TULLIUS, one of the kings  
 of Rome  
**servō**, *servāre*, *servāvī*, *servātus*,  
 save, keep, PRESERVE  
**servus**, *-i*, *m.*, slave, SERVANT  
**sex**, *adj.*, *indecl.*, six  
**sī**, *conj.*, if, whether  
**sic**, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way. *Cf.*  
 ita and tam

siccus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry; in siccō, on dry ground. (*Desiccate*)  
**Sicilia**, -ae, *f.*, SICILY, an island off the coast of Italy  
**signum**, -ī, *n.*, mark, SIGN, ensIGN, SIGNAL  
**silva**, -ae, *f.*, wood, forest. (*Silvan*)  
**similis**, -e, *adj.* [*simul*], like, resembling, SIMILAR  
**simul**, *adv.* [*similis*], at the same time; simul ac, as soon as  
**sine**, *prep.* with *abl.*, without. (*Sincur*)  
**sinister**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left (hand). (*Sinister*)  
**sinus**, -ūs, *m.*, lap, bosom  
**situs**, -a, -um, *adj.*, placed, set, lying, SITUATED  
**socius**, *soci*, *m.*, comrade, companion, ally. (*Social*)  
**sōl**, *sōlis*, *m.*, sun. (*Solar*)  
**sollicitō**, *sollicitare*, *sollicitāvī*, *sollicitātūs*, stir, arouse, tempt. (*Solicit*)  
**sōlus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, single; SOLE  
**solvō**, *solvēre*, *solvī*, *solutus*, loose, loosen; melt; break; pay. (*Solve*)  
**somnus**, -ī, *m.*, sleep. (*Somnolent*)  
**sonitus**, -ūs, *m.*, SOUND, noise, din, clash  
**soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister. (*Sorority*)  
**Sparta**, -ae; *f.*, SPARTA, a city of Greece  
**Spartānus**, -ī, *m.*, a SPARTAN  
**spatium**, *spati*, *n.*, room, SPACE, distance, time  
**speciēs**, (-ēi), *f.* [*spectō*], sight, appearance, pretense. (*Species*)  
**spectāculum**, -ī, *n.* [*spectō*], a show, exhibition. (*Spectacle*)

**spectō**, *spectāre*, *spectāvī*, *spectātūs*, look at, behold, witness. (*Spectator*)  
**speculum**, -ī, *n.* [*spectō*], mirror  
**spēlunca**, -ae, *f.*, cave, cavern, den  
**spernō**, *spernere*, *sprēvī*, *sprētūs*, despise, reject, scorn, spurn  
**spērō**, *spērāre*, *spērāvī*, *spērātūs* [*spēs*], hope, hope for  
**spēs**, *spei*, *f.* [*spērō*], hope; in spem venire, to entertain hopes  
**spondeō**, *spondēre*, *sponpondi*, *spōnsus*, pledge, promise. (*Spouse*)  
**sponte** (*suā*), only *abl.*, of (one's own) accord. (*Spontaneous*)  
**statim**, *adv.* [*stō*], (standing there), on the spot, immediately, at once. Cf. *subitō*  
**statua**, -ae, *f.* [*statuō*, set up], (the thing set up), STATUE  
**stella**, -ae, *f.*, star. (*Constellation*, *Stellar*)  
**stipendium**, *stipendi*, *n.*, wages, pay; military service. (*Stipend*)  
**stō**, *stāre*, *steti*, *statūrus*, stand  
**studeō**, *studēre*, *studui*, — [*studium*], desire, be eager for; with dat. (*Student*)  
**studiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*studium*], eager, desirous, STUDIOUS  
**studium**, *studī*, *n.* [*studēō*], zeal, eagerness; STUDY  
**stupeō**, *stupēre*, *stupui*, —, be astonished, be amazed. (*Stupefy*)  
**suādeō**, *suādere*, *suāsī*, *suāsus*, advise, urge; with dat. of person. (*Suasion*)  
**sub**, *prep.* with acc. and abl., under, up to; **sub vesperum**, toward evening. (*Subway*)

- sub-dō, subdere, subdidī, subditus** [-dō, put], put under, set to
- sub-eō, subēre, subii, subitus, go** under, go up to, enter; undergo
- sub-iciō, subicere, subiēcī, subiectus** [-iactō], put under, place under; *with dat. of the object under which.* (*Subject*)
- sub-igō, subigere, subēgī, subāctus** [-ago], bring under, subdue
- subitō, adv., SUDDENly, unexpectedl**y. Cf. statim
- sublātus, see tollō**
- sublicius, -a, -um, adj., resting on** piles; pōns Sublicius, the Sublician bridge, the pile bridge
- subsidiūm, subsidī, n., help, aid, relief.** (*Subsidy*) Cf. auxiliūm and praevidūm
- suc-cēdō, succēdere, successī, successūrūs** [sub-], come up, approach, follow. (*Succeed*)
- Suessa Pōmētia, Suessae Pōmētiae,** f., SUESSA POMETIA, a city of Italy
- sui, reflex. pron., of himself (herself, itself, themselves).** (*Suicide*)
- Sulpicius, Sulpici, m., a Roman name**
- sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist.** (*Essence, Future*)
- summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of** superus, highest, greatest, extreme. (*Sum, Consummate*)
- sūmō, sūmēre, sūmpsi, sūmptus,** take, take up; assume
- super, prep. with acc. and abl., over, above, upon.** (*Superhuman*)
- super-incidō, superincidere, —, —,** fall on from above
- superior, -ius, adj., comp. of super-** rus, higher, SUPERIOR
- superō, superāre, superāvī, superā-** tus [*super*], pass over; surpass, outdo, overcome, conquer. (*Insuperable*.) Cf. praestō and vincō
- super-sum, superesse, superfui, su-** perfutūrus, be over, be left over; survive; *with dat.*
- (superus), -a, -um, adj. [*super*], above**
- supplicium, supplici, n., punishment,** torture
- suprā, adv. [*superus*], above, before**
- suprēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of** superus, last. (*Supreme*)
- sus-cipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, suscep-** tūs [sub(s)-capio], take up, undertake, receive. (*Susceptible*)
- suspiciō, -ōnis, f. [*suspicor*], SUSPI-** CION
- suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum** [*suspiciō*], suspect, mistrust
- sus-tineō, sustinēre, sustinūi, sus-** tentus [sub(s)-teneō], hold up, bear, endure; support; withstand, SUS- TAIN
- suus, -a, -um, possess. and reflex.** adj. and pron. [suī], his, her, hers; its, their, theirs
- tālāria, -ium, n. plur., winged shoes**
- tālis, -e, adj., such**
- tam, adv., so, so much.** Cf. ita and sic
- tamen, adv., yet, but, however,** nevertheless
- tandem, adv. [tam-], (just so far),** at length, finally

- tantulus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*diminutive of tantus*], so small
- tantum**, *adv.* [*tantus*], only
- tantus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*tam*], so great, so much, such. (*Tantamount*)
- Tarentinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Tarentum, a city of southern Italy; *masc. plur. as noun*, the TARENTINES
- Tarentum**, -i, *n.*, TARENTUM, a city of southern Italy
- Tarquinius**, Tarquinī, *m.*, TARQUIN, name of two kings of Rome, Tarquinius Priscus and Tarquinius Superbus
- tēlum**, -i, *n.*, weapon
- temperō**, *temperāre*, *temperāvi*, *temperātus*, refrain from, keep from. (*Temperate*)
- tempestās**, -ātis, *f.* [*tempus*], storm, TEMPEST, weather
- templum**, -i, *n.*, TEMPLE
- tempus**, -oris, *n.*, time. (*Temporal*)
- teneō**, *tenēre*, *tenui*, —, hold, keep, have. (*Tenacious, Retain*)
- tentō**, *tentāre*, *tentāvi*, *tentātus*, try, ATTEMPT. Cf. *experior*
- tergum**, -i, *n.*, back; ā *tergō*, behind, in the rear. (*Tergiversation*)
- terra**, -ae, *f.*, earth, land; region. (*Terrace*)
- terreō**, *terrēre*, *terrui*, *territus* [*terror*], frighten, alarm, TERRIFY
- terribilis**, -e, *adj.* [*terreō*], dreadful, frightful, TERRIBLE. Cf. *horribilis*
- territōrium**, *territōri*, *n.* [*terra*], lands. (*Territory*)
- terror**, -ōris, *m.* [*terreō*], TERROR, alarm, fear. Cf. *pavor and timor*
- tertium**, *adv.* [*textius*], the third time
- tertius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*tres*], third. (*Tertiary*)
- Thalēs**, -is, *m.*, THALES, a Greek philosopher
- Thēbae**, -ārum, *f. plur.*, THEBES, a city of Greece
- Tiberis**, -is, *m.* (*acc. -im*), the TIBER, a river of Italy
- Ticinus**, -i, *m.*, the TICINUS, a river of Italy
- timeō**, *timēre*, *timui*, — [*timor*], fear, be afraid of. Cf. *vereor*
- timidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*timeō*], faint-hearted, TIMID
- Timōn**, -ōnis, *m.*, TIMON, an Athenian
- timor**, -ōris, *m.* [*timeō*], fear. Cf. pavor and terror. (*Timorous*)
- tintinnābulum**, -i, *n.*, bell. (*Tintinnabulation*)
- Tiryns**, -nthis (-os) (*acc. Tiryntha*), f., TIRYNS, a city of Greece
- tolerō**, *tolerāre*, *tolerāvi*, *tolerātus*, bear, endure. (*Tolerate*) Cf. *ferō*
- tollō**, *tollere*, *sustuli*, *sublātus*, raise, pick up, take. (*Extol*)
- Tolōsātēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, the TOLOSATES, inhabitants of Tolosa, a city in Gaul
- tōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, all, entire. (*Total.*) Cf. *omnis*, *ūniversus*, and cūnctus
- trabs**, *trabis*, *f.*, beam, timber, log
- trāctō**, *trāctāre*, *trāctāvi*, *trāctātus* [*trahō*], handle, feel of. (*Tractate*)
- trā-dō**, *trādere*, *trādidi*, *trāditus* [*trāns-dō*, put], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; *trādunt*, they say. (*Tradition*)

**trā-dūcō, trādūcere, trādūxi, trāduc-**  
tus [*trāns-*], lead over, lead across.

*Often with a secondary object, as,*  
**flūmen cōpiās trādūcere**, lead the  
troops across the river. (*Traduce*)  
**trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctus**, draw,  
drag, lead. (*Traction*)

**trā-iciō, trāicere, trāiēci, trāiectus**  
[*trāns-iaciō*], throw across, cross;  
pierce. (*Trajectory*)

**trā-nō, trānāre, trānāvī**, — [*trāns-*],  
swim across

**tranquillus, -a, -um, adj.**, calm,  
TRANQUIL

**trāns, prep. with acc.**, across, be-  
yond, over, the other side of.  
(*Transatlantic*)

**trāns-eō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsitus**,  
go over, cross. (*Transit*)

**trāns-figō, trānsfigere, trānsfixi,**  
trānsfixus, pierce through, stab.  
(*Transfix*)

**trānsfixus**, see **trānsfigō**

**trāns-fodiō, trānsfodere, trānsfōdi,**  
trānsfōssus, run through, pierce  
through, stab

**trāns-fugiō, trānsfugere, trānsfügi,**  
—, go over (to the enemy), desert

**trāns-marinus, -a, -um, adj.** [*mare*],  
foreign

**trāns-portō, trānsportāre, trānspor-**  
tāvi, trānsportātus, carry across.  
(*Transport*)

**trecentī, -ae, -a, adj.** [*trēs-centum*],  
three hundred

**trepidō, trepidāre, trepidāvī, trepi-**  
dātūrūs, be in alarm, be in con-  
fusion. (*Trepidation*)

**trēs, tria, adj.**, three. (*Trefoil*)

**tribūnal, -ālis, n.** [*tribūnus*], judg-  
ment seat, TRIBUNAL

**tribūnus, -ī, m.**, TRIBUNE, a Roman  
officer

**tricēnsimus, -a, -um, adj.**, thirtieth  
triduum, -ī, n., three days

**tristis, -e, adj.**, sad, gloomy  
triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī,  
triumphātūrus, celebrate a TRI-  
UMPH

**Trōia, -ae, f.**, TROY, an ancient city  
of Asia Minor

**trux, trucis, adj.**, wild, harsh, savage,  
fierce, TRUCULENT. Cf. atrōx and  
saevus

**tū, pers. pron.**, thou, you  
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet

**Tullus Hostilius, Tulli Hostili, m.**,  
TULLUS HOSTILIUS, the third king  
of Rome

**tum, adv.**, at that time; then  
tunc, *adv.* [*tum*], at that time, then

**turba, -ae, f.** [*turbō*], crowd, throng;  
turmoil

**turbō, turbāre, turbāvī, turbātus**  
[*turba*], DISTURB, confuse, trouble

**turris, -is, f.**, TOWER. (*Turret*)

**Tusci, -ōrum, m. plur.**, the Etrus-  
cans, people of Etruria, in Italy  
**Tuscia, -ae, f.**, Etruria, a district of  
Italy

**Tusculum, -ī, n.**, TUSCULUM, a town  
near Rome

**tūtēla, -ae, f.**, guardianship, charge,  
care. (*Tutelary*)

**tūtus, -a, -um, adj.**, safe  
thy, thine; your, yours (of only  
one person)

- ubi, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, where, when
- ulciscor, *ulcisci, ultus sum*, avenge
- Ulixēs, -is, *m.*, ULYSSES, a Greek hero
- ūllus, -a, -um, *adj. and pron.* [*for ūnulus, diminutive of ūnus*], any, any one, anybody
- ulterior, -ius, *adj., comp.*, farther, more remote. (*Ulterior*)
- ultimus, -a, -um, *adj., superl. of ulterior*, farthest, last. (*Ultimate*)
- umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade, shadow. (*Umbra, Umbrella*)
- umerus, -I, *m.*, shoulder. (*Humerus*)
- umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever
- unde, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, whence
- ūndecimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ūndecim*], eleventh
- undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides, everywhere
- ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ūnus-versus*], (turned into one), whole, all, in a mass. (*Universal, Universe, University.*) Cf. cūnctus, omnis, and tōtus
- ūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, one; alone. (*Union*)
- urbs, -is, *f.*, city. (*Suburb*)
- ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [*ūtor*], USE, benefit, advantage
- ut (*uti*), *adv. and conj.*, how, as, when; that, in order that, so that, to
- uter, -tra, -trum, *interrog. pron. and adj.*, which (of two)? uter . . . utrī, which . . . to the other
- ūter, -tris, *m.*, leather bottle, skin (of wine)
- uterque, utraque, utrumque, *indef. pron. and adj.*, each (of two), both
- ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [*ūtor*], useful, advantageous. (*Utility*)
- ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum [*ūsus*], USE, employ, enjoy, maintain; with abl.
- uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. (*Uxorius*)
- vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, —, be unoccupied. (*Vacant*)
- vadum, -ī, *n.*, shoal, ford
- vāgitus, -ūs, *m.*, a crying
- valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong, be in good health; valē farewell, good-by. (*Valiant, Value*)
- Valerius, 'Valerī, *m.*, VALERIUS, a Roman name
- valētūdō, -inis, *f.* [*valeō*], health, state of health. (*Valetudinarian*)
- validus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*valeō*], strong, stout, sturdy. (*Valid.*) Cf. fortis
- vällum, -ī, *n.*, earthworks, rampart. (*Circumvallation*)
- vās, vāsis (*plur. vāsa, -ōrum*), *n.*, VASE, pot
- vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus, lay WASTE, ravage
- ve, *conj., enclitic*, or
- vehementer, *adv.*, eagerly, earnestly, very much, VEHEMENTLY
- Vēientēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the inhabitants of Veii
- vel, *conj.* [*volō, wish*], or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or. Cf. aut
- vēlō, vēlāre, vēlavī, vēlātus, cover, encircle, envelop, VEIL
- vel-ut, *adv.*, just as, as if, like

- vēndō, vēndere, vēndidi, vēnditus, sell, VEND
- venēnum, -ī, n., poison. (*Venom*)
- venia, -ae, f., indulgence, favor. (*Venial*)
- veniō, venire, vēnī, ventūrus, come. (*Convene*)
- vēnor, vēnārī, vēnātus sum, hunt, chase. (*Venison*)
- vēnter, -tris, m., belly, stomach. (*Ventriloquist*)
- ventus, -ī, m., wind. (*Ventilate*)
- verbum, -ī, n., word. (*Verb*)
- vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear, reverence, respect. Cf. timeō
- veritus, see vereor
- vērō, adv. [vērum], in truth, but
- versus, see vertō
- vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn, change. (*Convert, Verse*)
- vērum, conj. [vērō], but
- vesper, -erī, m., evening, nightfall. (*Vespers*)
- Vesta, -ae, f., VESTA, the goddess of the hearth
- vester, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. and pron., your, yours (*of more than one person*)
- vestis, -is, f., garment, robe, clothing
- Vesuvius, Vesuvī, m., VESUVIUS, a volcano near Naples
- Veturia, -ae, f., VETURIA, mother of Coriolanus
- via, -ae, f., way, road, street; gap. (*Via, Viaduct*)
- viātor, -ōris, m. [*via*], traveler
- vīcinus, -a, -um, adj. [*vīcus*], near, neighboring; masc. as noun, neighbor. (*Vicinity*)
- victor, -ōris, m. [*vincō*], conqueror, VICTOR; as adj., VICTORIOUS
- victōria, -ae, f. [*victor*], VICTORY
- vīcus, -ī, m., village, district, street
- videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus, see, perceive; pass., be seen, seem. (*Vision*)
- vigilia, -ae, f., watch, night watch. (*Vigil*)
- vīgintī, adj., indecl., twenty
- vīmen, -inis, n., pliant twig, wither, osier
- Vīminālis, -is, m., the VIMINAL, one of the hills of Rome
- vinciō, vincere, vinxi, vinctus, bind
- vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, conquer, defeat. (*Invincible.*) Cf. superō
- vīnculum, -ī, n. [*vinciō*], chain, bond; in vīncula, into prison; into chains
- vīnea, -ae, f., covered shed, movable shelter, VINEA
- vīnum, -ī, n., WINE. (*Vine*)
- vir, virī, m., man, hero. (*Virile.*) Cf. homō
- vireō, virēre, virui, —, be green
- virgō, -inis, f., maiden, VIRGIN
- virtūs, -ūtis, f. [*vir*], manliness, courage, bravery, valor; VIRTUE
- vīs, see volō, wish
- vīs, vīs, f., strength, power, force, violence. (*Vim*)
- vīta, -ae, f., life. (*Vital*)
- vix, adv., hardly, with difficulty
- vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus [*vōx*], call. (*Vocation.*) Cf. appellō
- Vocontii, -ōrum, m. plur., the VOCONTII, a tribe in the Roman province in southeastern Gaul

**volō, velle, volui, —, wish, be willing, desire, intend.** (*Volition*)

**volō, volāre, volāvī, volātūrus, fly.** (*Volatile*)

**Volsci, -ōrum, m. plur., the VOLSCIANS, a people of Italy**

**Columnia, -ae, f., VOLUMNIA, wife of Coriolanus**

**voluntās, -ātis, f. [volō, wish], will, good will, consent.** (*Voluntary*)

**voluptās, -ātis, f. [volō, wish], pleasure, enjoyment.** (*Voluptuous*)

**vōx, vōcis, f. [vocō], VOICE, word, remark.** (*Vocal*)

**Vulcānus, -ī, m., VULCAN, the god of fire**

**vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātus [vulnus], wound, hurt, injure.** (*Vulnerable*)

**vulnus, -eris, n. [vulnerō], wound**

**vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks,**

**features**

**Zama, -ae, f., ZAMA, a town in Africa**

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For the principal parts of verbs, and for other details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English Vocabulary or to the special vocabularies. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4 after verbs indicate the conjugation.

- about**, dē, *with abl.*  
**across**, trāns, *with acc.*  
**act**, agō, 3  
**advance**, prōgredior, 3  
**advise**, moneō, 2  
**after**, post, *with acc.; implied in a participle*  
**afterwards**, posteā  
**against**, contrā *or ad*, *with acc.*  
**aid**, auxilium, auxili, *n.*  
**all**, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um  
**ally**, socius, soci, *m.*  
**alone**, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um  
**also**, etiam  
**although**, *implied in a participle*  
**among**, inter, *with acc.; in, with abl.*  
**ample**, amplius, -a, -um  
**and**, et, -que; **and also**, atque; **and so**, itaque  
**announce**, nūntiō, *i*  
**another**, alius, -a, -ud  
**any**, ūllus, -a, -um; aliquī, aliqua, aliquod; **any at all**, quisquam, —, quidquam; **any one**, aliquis  
**anything**, aliiquid  
**approach**, appropinquō, *i*  
**approve**, probō, *i*  
**arm**, armō, *i*  
**arms**, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
- army**, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*  
**arouse**, incitō, *i*; commoveō, 2  
**arrival**, adventus, -ūs, *m.*  
**arrow**, sagitta, -ae, *f.*  
**ask**, rogō, *i*; petō, 3  
**assistance**, auxilium, auxili, *n.*  
**at, in, with acc. or abl.; abl. of cause; abl. of time; at last, tandem; at once, statim**  
**Athens**, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*  
**attack**, v., oppugnō, *i*; impetum faciō, 3  
**attack**, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*  
**attempt**, cōnor, *i*  
**await**, exspectō, *i*  
**away from**, ā *or ab*, *with abl.*
- b baggage**, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n.*  
*plur.*  
**band**, manus, -ūs, *f.*  
**bank**, rīpa, -ae, *f.*  
**barbarian**, barbarus, -ī, *m.*  
**battle**, pugna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, proelī, *n.*  
**be, sum, irr.; be able, possum, irr.; be made, fiō, irr.; be unwilling, nōlō, irr.; be wanting, dēsum, irr.; be willing, volō, irr.**  
**bear**, ferō, *irr.*

- because, quod ; because of, ob  
or propter, with acc.; abl. of  
cause
- become, fiō, irr.
- began, coepī, defective
- best, optimus, -a, -um
- better, melior, melius
- between, inter, with acc.
- boat, nāvīgūm, nāvīgī, n.
- body, corpus, -oris, n.
- bold, audāx, -ācis; fortis, -e
- book, liber, -brī, m.
- booty, praeda, -ae, f.
- both . . . and, et . . . et
- boy, puer, -erī, m.
- brave, fortis, -e
- bravely, fortiter; cum virtūte
- bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
- bring, portō, 1
- Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
- broad, lātūs, -a, -ym
- brother, frāter, -trīs, m.
- build, aedificō, 1
- building, aedificium, aedificī, n.
- but, sed
- buy, emō, 3
- by, ā or ab, with abl.; abl. of  
means or instrument
- Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, m.
- call together, convocō, 1
- camp, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.
- can, possum, irr.
- captive, captīvus, -ī, m.
- capture, capiō, 3
- care, cūra, -ae, f.
- carry, portō, 1 ; carry on war, bel-  
lum gerō, 3
- cart, carrus, -ī, m.
- cause, causa, -ae, f.
- cavalry, equitātūs, -ūs, m.
- centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, m.
- certain, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam  
(quiddam)
- certainly, certē
- chief, prīnceps, -cipis, m.
- children, liberī, -ōrum, m. plur.
- citizen, cīvis, -is, m.
- city, urbs, urbīs, f.
- clan, cīvitās, -ātis, f.
- cohort, cohors, cohortis, f.
- come, veniō, 4 ; come near, accēdō,  
3 ; appropinquō, 1
- coming, adventus, -ūs, m.
- command, v., iubeō, 2 ; imperō, 1,  
with dat.
- command, n., imperium, imperī, n.
- comrade, socius, soci, m.
- concerning, dē, with abl.
- conference, conloquium, conlo-  
quī, n.
- confidence, fidēs, -ēī, f.
- confuse, perturbō, 1
- conquer, superō, 1 ; vincō, 3
- contend, pugnō, 1
- Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, f.
- Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.
- country, patria, -ae, f.
- courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
- cut off, interclūdō, 3
- daily, cotīdiē
- danger, perīculum, -ī, n.
- daughter, filia, -ae, f.
- dawn (at), prīmā lūce
- day, diēs, -ēī, m.
- daybreak (at), prīmā lūce
- death, mors, mortis, f.

- decide**, cōnstituō, 3  
**deep**, altus, -a, -um  
**defend**, dēfendō, 3  
**delay**, v., moror, I  
**delay**, n., mora, -ae, f.  
**delight**, dēlectō, I  
**Delphi**, Delphī, -ōrum, m. plur.  
**demand**, postulō, I  
**depart**, discēdō, 3  
**deprive**, prīvō, I  
**desire**, cupiō, 3; studeō, 2, *with dat.*  
**desist**, dēsistō, 3  
**difficulty**, difficultās, -ātis, f.  
**diligence**, diligentia, -ae, f.  
**dismiss**, dīmittō, 3  
**disturb**, commoveō, 2  
**do**, faciō, 3; agō, 3  
**down from**, dē, *with abl.*  
**draw up**, īstruō, 3  
**dwell**, habitō, I; incolō, 3
- each**, each one, quisque; each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque  
**eager**, ācer, ācris, ācē  
**easy**, facilis, -e  
**embassy**, lēgātiō, -ōnis, f.  
**enemy**, hostis, -is, m.  
**enough**, satis  
**every one**, quisque; omnēs, -ium, m. plur.  
**exhort**, hortor, I  
**extend**, pateō, 2
- fact**, rēs, reī, f.; the fact that, quod, *with a clause of fact*  
**fail**, dēsum, irr., *with dat.*  
**farmer**, agricola, -ae, m.  
**father**, pater, -tris, m.  
**fear**, v., timeō, 2; vereor, 2
- fear**, n., timor, -ōris, m.  
**few**, paucī, -ae, -a, plur.  
**field**, ager, agrī, m.  
**fight**, v., pugnō, I  
**fight**, n., pugna, -ae, f.  
**fill**, compleō, 2  
**find**, reperiō, 4  
**fire**, ignis, -is, m.  
**first**, prīmus, -a, -um  
**fit**, idōneus, -a, -um  
**five**, quīnque  
**flank**, cornū, -ūs, n.  
**flee**, fugiō, 3  
**follow**, sequor, 3  
**food**, cibus, -ī, m.  
**foot**, pēs, pedis, m.; foot soldier, pedes, peditis, m.  
**for**, sign of the dative; prō, *with abl.*; for the purpose of, ad, *with gerundive or gerund*; ut, *with subjunctive*  
**force**, vis, vīs, f.  
**forest**, silva, -ae, f.  
**formerly**, ölim  
**fortify**, mūniō, 4  
**fortune**, fortūna, -ae, f.  
**free**, v., liberō, I  
**free**, adj., liber, -era, -erum  
**friend**, amīcus, -ī, m.  
**friendly**, amīcus, -a, -um  
**frighten**, terreō, 2  
**from**, dē, *with abl.*; away from, ā or ab, *with abl.*; out from, ē or ex, *with abl.*; abl. of separation
- Galba**, Galba, -ae, m.  
**garden**, hortus, -ī, m.  
**gate**, porta, -ae, f.  
**gather together**, cōgō, 3

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, <i>f.</i> ; a Gaul, Gallus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	high, altus, -a, -um ; superus, -a, -um
general, dux, ducis, <i>m.</i>	hill, collis, -is, <i>m.</i>
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i>	him, eum, hunc, illum
Germany, Germānia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	himself, suī
gift, dōnum, -ī, <i>n.</i>	hinder, impediō, 4
girl, puella, -ae, <i>f.</i>	his, eius, huius, illius ; ( <i>reflexive</i> ) suus, -a, -um
give, dō, 1 ; dōnō, 1	hold, habeō, 2 ; teneō, 2 ; hold in check, sustineō, 2
go, eō, <i>irr.</i> ; go away, discēdō, 3 ; go forward, prōgredior, 3 ; go out, ēgredior, 3	home, domus, -ūs, <i>f.</i>
god, deus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	hope, spēs, speī, <i>f.</i>
good, bonus, -a, -um	horn, cornū, -ūs, <i>n.</i>
grain, frūmentum, -ī, <i>n.</i>	horse, equus, -ī, <i>m.</i>
great, magnus, -a, -um ; great number, multitūdō, -inis, <i>f.</i>	horseman, eques, -itis, <i>m.</i>
greatly, magnopere	hostage, obses, -idis, <i>m.</i>
Greece, Graecia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	hour, hōra, -ae, <i>f.</i>
grieve, doleō, 2	house, domus, -ūs, <i>f.</i>
hand, manus, -ūs, <i>f.</i>	how many, quot
happen, fiō, <i>irr.</i>	however, tamen
harbor, portus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>	hundred, centum
hardship, labor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>	hurl, iaciō, 3
harm, noceō, 2, <i>with dat.</i>	hurry, properō, 1
hasten, properō, 1	I, ego
have, habeō, 2	if, implied in a participle
he, is, hic, ille	impel, incitō, 1
head, caput, -itis, <i>n.</i>	in, in, with abl. ; abl. of specification ; in defense of, prō, with abl. ; in front of, prō, with abl. ; in order to, ut, with subjunctive ; in such a way, ita ; in vain, frūstrā
hear, audiō, 4	increase, augeō, 2
heavy, gravis, -e	infantry, peditātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
help, auxilium, auxiliī, <i>n.</i> ; subsidium, subsidī, <i>n.</i>	inform, certiōrem faciō, 3
Helvetians, Helvētiī, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i>	inhabitant, incola, -ae, <i>m.</i>
her, ( <i>objective</i> ) eam, hanc, illam ; ( <i>possessive</i> ) eius, huius, illius ; ( <i>reflexive possessive</i> ) suus, -a, -um	injure, noceō, 2, <i>with dat.</i>
herself, sui	into, in, with acc.
	island, īnsula, -ae, <i>f.</i>

it, id, hoc, illud	long, longus, -a, -um; for a long time, diū
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.	look at, spectō, i
javelin, pīlum, -ī, n.	love, amō, i
journey, iter, itineris, n.	
Julia, Iūlia, -ae, f.	make, faciō, 3
kill, interficiō, 3	man, vir, virī, m.; homō, -inis, m.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.	many, multī, -ae, -a, plur.
know, sciō, 4; cognōscō, 3, <i>in perf. tenses</i>	march, v., iter faciō, 3
Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, m.	march, n., iter, itineris, n.
labor, labōrō, i	Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, m.
lack, v., careō, 2, <i>with abl.</i> ; dēsum, irr., <i>with dat.</i>	marsh, palūs, palūdis, f.
lack, n., inopia, -ae, f.	master, dominus, -ī, m.
lady, domina, -ae, f.	meanwhile, interim
lake, lacus, -ūs, m.	messenger, nūntius, nūntī, m.
land, terra, -ae, f.	mile, mille passuum
large, magnus, -a, -um	mine, meus, -a, -um
last, proximus, -a, -um	money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
lay waste, vāstō, i	more, plūs, plūris
lead, dūcō, 3; lead back, redūcō, 3;	most, plūrimus, -a, -um
lead out, ēdūcō, 3	mother, māter, -tris, f.
leader, dux, ducis, m.	mountain, mōns, montis, m.
learn, cognōscō, 3	move, moveō, 2
least, minimus, -a, -um	much, adj., multus, -a, -um
leave behind, relinquō, 3	much, adv., multum; multō
left, sinister, -tra, -trum	must, <i>passive periphrastic conjugation</i>
legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.	my, meus, -a, -um
lest, nē, <i>with subjunctive</i>	
letter, litterae, -ārum, f. plur.	nation, nātiō, -ōnis, f.
liberate, liberō, i	native land, patria, -ae, f.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, m.	near, adj., fīnitimus, -a, -um; pro-
like, similis, -e	pinquus, -a, -um
line of battle; aciēs, -ēī, f.	near, prep., apud, <i>with acc.</i>
little, parvus, -a, -um	neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um
live, habitō, i	neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. plur.
	neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
	never, numquam
	new, novus, -a, -um

- night, nox, noctis, *f.*  
 no, nūllus, -a, -um; no longer, nōn iam  
 nor, neque  
 not, nōn; not even, nē . . . quidem  
 nothing, nihil  
 now, iam, nunc  
 number, numerus, -ī, *m.*
- ocean, ōceanus, -ī, *m.*  
 of, sign of the genitive; dē, with  
 abl.; out of, ē or ex, with abl.  
 offer, dō, *I*  
 often, saepe  
 on, in, with abl.; abl. of time; on  
 account of, ob or propter, with acc.  
 once (upon a time), ūlīm  
 one, ūnus, -a, -um  
 order, v., iubeō, *z*; imperō, *I*, with  
 dat.  
 order (in order that), ut, with sub-  
 junctive  
 other, aliis, -a, -ud; other of two,  
 alter, -era, -erum  
 ought, dēbeō, *z*; passive peri-  
 phrastic conjugation  
 our, noster, -tra, -trum; our men,  
 nostrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
 ourselves, nōs; ipsī, -ae  
 out of, ē or ex, with abl.  
 overcome, superō, *I*; vincō, *z*  
 own, (his, her, its, their) suus, -a,  
 -um; (my) meus, -a, -um; (our)  
 noster, -tra, -trum; (your, sing.)  
 tuus, -a, -um; (your, plur.) vester,  
 -tra, -trum
- part, pars, partis, *f.*  
 peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*  
 people, populus, -ī, *m.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
- personal enemy, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*  
 persuade, persuādeō, *z*, with dat.  
 pirate, pīrātā, -ae, *m.*  
 pitch camp, castra pōnō, *z*  
 place, v., pōnō, *z*; conlocō, *I*;  
 place in command, praeficiō, *z*,  
 with dat. of the object over  
 which  
 place, *n.*, locus, -ī (*plur.* loca and  
 rarely locī), *m.*  
 plan, cōnsilium, cōnsili, *n.*  
 plead, ūrō, *I*  
 please, placeō, *z*, with dat.  
 pleasing, grātus, -a, -um  
 plenty, cōpia, -ae, *f.*  
 poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*  
 point out, dēmōnstrō, *I*  
 poor, miser, -era, -erum  
 power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; vīs, vīs, *f.*  
 praise, laudō, *I*  
 prefer, mālō, *irr.*  
 prisoner, captivus, -ī, *m.*  
 promise, polliceor, *z*  
 protection, subsidium, subsidī, *n.*  
 province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*  
 purpose (for the purpose of), ut (*neg.*  
 nē), with subjunctive; ad, with  
 gerund or gerundive; causā, fol-  
 lowing a gerund or gerundive  
 put in command, praeficiō, *z*, with  
 dat. of the object over which;  
 put to flight, fugō, *I*
- queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
- receive, capiō, *z*; recipiō, *z*  
 relate, nārrō, *I*  
 remain, maneō, *z*  
 remember, memoriā teneō, *z*

- reply**, respondeō, 2  
**report**, nūntiō, I  
**resist**, resistō, 3, *with dat.*  
**rest**, reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*; **rest of**, reliquo, -a, -um  
**return**, revertō, 3; *commonly dependent in the present system*  
**reward**, praemium, praemī, *n.*  
**right**, dexter, -tra, -trum  
**river**, flūmen, -inis, *n.*  
**road**, via, -ae, *f.*  
**Roman**, *adj.*, Rōmānus, -a, -um  
**Roman**, *n.*, Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*  
**Rome**, Rōma, -ae, *f.*  
**rule**, regō, 3  
  
**sail**, nāvigō, I  
**sailor**, nauta, -ae, *m.*  
**sake** (*for the sake of*), causā, *following a genitive*  
**same**, īdem, eadem, idem  
**say**, dicō, 3  
**scare**, terreō, 2  
**scout**, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**sea**, mare, -is, *n.*  
**second**, secundus, -a, -um  
**see**, videō, 2  
**seek**, petō, 3  
**self**, ipse, -a, -um; sui  
**senate**, senātus, -ūs, *m.*  
**send**, mittō, 3; **send ahead**, praemittō, 3  
**servant**, servus, -ī, *m.*  
**set free**, liberō, I; **set out**, proficisci  
**cor**, 3  
**severe**, gravis, -e  
**she**, ea, haec, illa  
**shield**, scūtum, -ī, *n.*  
**ship**, nāvis, -is, *f.*
- shore**, lītus, -oris, *n.*  
**short**, brevis, -e  
**show**, dēmōstrō, I; praebeō, 2; doceō, 2  
**shut off**, interclūdō, 3  
**sick**, aeger, -gra, -grum  
**signal**, signum, -ī, *n.*  
**since**; *implied in a participle*  
**sing**, cantō, I  
**sister**, soror, -ōris, *f.*  
**six**, sex  
**slave**, servus, -ī, *m.*  
**slight**, parvus, -a, -um  
**small**, parvus, -a, -um  
**so**, tam, ita; **so as not to**, nē, *with subjunctive*; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um; **so that**, ut, *with subjunctive*  
**soldier**, mīles, -itis, *m.*  
**some . . . others**, aliī . . . aliī  
**somebody**, **some one**, aliquis  
**something**, aliquid  
**sometimes**, interdum  
**son**, filius, filī, *m.*  
**sortie**, ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**spear**, hasta, -ae, *f.*  
**speed**, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*  
**spend the winter**, hiemō, I  
**state**, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*  
**station**, conlocō, I  
**stay**, maneō, 2  
**story**, fābula, -ae, *f.*  
**street**, via, -ae, *f.*  
**strength**, vīs, vīs, *f.*  
**summer**, aestās, -ātis, *f.*  
**sun**, sōl, sōlis, *m.*  
**sunset**, sōlis occāsus  
**supplies**, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*  
**surpass**, superō, I  
**surrender**, dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*

- survive**, supersum, *irr.*, *with dat.*
- swamp**, palūs, palūdis, *f.*
- swim**, natō, *I*
- sword**, gladius, gladī, *m.*
- take**, capiō, *3*
- tall**, altus, -a, -um
- teach**, doceō, *2*
- tell**, nārrō, *I*; dicō, *3*
- ten**, decem
- tenth**, decimus, -a, -um
- terms**, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
- territory**, finēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
- than**, quam
- that**, *dem. pron.*, is, ea, id; ille, illa,  
illud; **that of yours**, iste, -a, -ud
- that**, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod
- that**, *conj.*, *in purpose or result clauses*, ut, *with subjunctive; not expressed after a verb of saying;*  
**that not**, nē, ut nōn, *with subjunctive*
- their**, eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um
- them**, eōs, eās, ea
- themselves**, sē (sēsē); ipsī, -ae, -a
- then**, tum
- there**, ibi; *not translated in such expressions as there is*
- therefore**, itaque
- they**, eī, eae, ea; hī, haē, haec; illī,  
illae, illa
- thing**, rēs, reī, *f.*; *sometimes omitted*
- think**, putō, *I*
- third**, tertius, -a, -um
- this**, is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc
- though**, *implied in a participle*
- thousand**, mīlē
- three**, trēs, tria
- through**, per, *with acc.*
- throw**, iaciō, *3*
- time**, tempus, -oris, *n.*
- tired**, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um
- to**, *sign of the dative; ad or in, with acc.; expressing purpose*, ut, *with subjunctive; ad, with gerund or gerundive; causā, following a gerund or gerundive*
- to-day**, hodiē
- toward**, ad, *with acc.*
- tower**, turris, -is, *f.*
- town**, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
- trader**, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
- tree**, arbor, -oris, *f.*
- tribune**, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
- troops**, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
- trumpet**, tuba, -ae, *f.*
- turret**, turris, -is, *f.*
- two**, duo, -ae, -o; **which of two**, uter,  
utra, utrum; **each of two**, uterque,  
utraque, utrumque
- unfriendly**, inimīcūs, -a, -um
- unhappy**, miser, -era, -erum
- unwilling (be)**, nōlō, *irr.*
- urge**, hortor, *I*
- valor**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
- very**, *superlative degree; maximē*; ip̄sē, -a, -um
- victory**, victōria, -ae, *f.*
- village**, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
- wage**, gerō, *3*
- wagon**, carrus, -ī, *m.*
- wait**, wait for, exspectō, *I*
- walk**, ambulō, *I*
- wall**, mūrus, -ī, *m.*

<b>war</b> , bellum, -ī, <i>n.</i>	wind, ventūs, -ī, <i>m.</i>
<b>warn</b> , moneō, 2	winter, hiems, hiemis, <i>f.</i> ; winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, <i>n. plur.</i>
<b>water</b> , aqua, -ae, <i>f.</i>	wish, volō, <i>irr.</i> ; cupiō, 3
<b>way</b> , via, -ae, <i>f.</i> ; iter, itineris, <i>n.</i>	with, cum, <i>with abl.</i> ; sometimes <i>abl.</i> alone
<b>weapon</b> , tēlum, -ī, <i>n.</i>	without, sine, <i>with abl.</i>
<b>welcome</b> , <i>v.</i> , recipiō, 3	woman, fēmina, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<b>welcome</b> , <i>adj.</i> , grātus, -a, -um	woods, silva, -ae, <i>f.</i>
<b>well</b> , bene	word, verbum, -ī, <i>n.</i>
<b>what</b> , quis (quī), quae, quid (quod)	work, labōrō, 1
<b>when</b> , cum; <i>ablative absolute</i> ; implied in a participle	wound, <i>v.</i> , vulnerō, 1
<b>whence</b> , unde	wound, <i>n.</i> , vulnus, -eris, <i>n.</i>
<b>where</b> , ubi	wretched, miser, -era, -erum
<b>whether</b> , num	
<b>which</b> , quī, quae, quod; which of two, uter, utra, utrum	<b>year</b> , annus, -ī, <i>m.</i>
<b>while</b> , cum; implied in a participle	<b>yet</b> , tamen
<b>whither</b> , quō	<b>you</b> , ( <i>sing.</i> ) tū; ( <i>plur.</i> ) vōs
<b>who</b> , ( <i>rel.</i> ) quī, quae; ( <i>interrog.</i> ) quis	<b>young man</b> , adulēscēns, -entis, <i>m.</i>
<b>whole</b> , tōtus, -a, -um; omnis, -e	<b>your</b> , ( <i>sing.</i> ) tuus, -a, -um; ( <i>plur.</i> ) vester, -tra, -trum
<b>why</b> , cūr	
<b>wide</b> , lātus, -a, -um	<b>zeal</b> , studium, studī, <i>n.</i>
<b>width</b> , lātitūdō, -inis, <i>f.</i>	



# INDEX

References are to sections unless otherwise indicated

- ā or ab** with ablative of agent, 242, 243  
**ablative**, XXIV, *b*  
of adjectives of third declension, 208, *c*  
absolute, 452-455  
of accompaniment, 142, 143  
of agent, 242, 243  
of cause, 184, 185  
of degree of difference, 320, 321  
of manner, 128, 129  
of means, 121, 122  
of place from which, 177, 229, 230  
of place where, 58, 59  
of separation, 281, 282  
of specification, 480, 481  
of time, 218, 219  
with **ex**, equivalent to partitive genitive, 309, *a*  
with prepositions, 194  
**accent**, 20-22  
**accusative**, XXIV, *b*  
in indirect statements, 400, 401  
object of transitive verbs, 32, 33  
of extent, 332, 333  
of place to which, 179, 229, 230  
subject of the infinitive, 398, 399  
with prepositions, 193  
**ācer**, declension, 644  
comparison, 306, 647  
**adjectives**, definition, III, *a*  
kinds and definitions, III, *b-f*  
of first and second declensions, 78, 79, 643; in -er, 103, 643; with genitive in -ius and dative in -i, 385-387, 646  
of third declension, 208, 644; of one, two, and three terminations, 208  
**agreement**, 79  
comparison, 296, 306, 307, 317, 319, 647, 649; irregular, 307, 317, 319, 649; by adverbs, XXVI, *c*  
declension of comparatives, 297, 648  
meaning of comparative and superlative, 296, *c*  
interrogative, 152, 154  
possessive, 278; distinction in use: between *suus* and *eius*, 279; between *tuus* and *vester*, 278; omission of *suus*, 280  
predicate, xv, *a*; 86, 88; with complementary infinitive, 394, *b*  
used as nouns, III, *f*; 196  
**adverbial clauses with quā and ut**, 497  
**adverbs**, definition, v, *a*  
kinds and definitions, v, *b-f*  
formation, 325, 326; of the comparative and superlative, 327, *a*.  
comparison, 327, 650  
**agent**, expressed by the ablative with ā or ab, 242, 243  
**ager**, declension, 97, 637  
**agreement**, of adjectives, 79; after a complementary infinitive, 394, *b*  
of appositives, 93, 94  
of predicate nouns, xv, *c*; 87  
of relative pronouns, 247, 248  
of verb with its subject, 29  
**aliquis**, 420, *c*; 657  
**alius**, declension, 646  
alius . . . aliis, 387  
**alphabet**, i  
**alter** . . . alter, 387  
**amāns**, declension, 645  
**amō**, conjugation, 658  
**antecedent**, definition, II, *b*  
**antepenult**, ii  
when accented, 21  
**apposition**, 93, 94  
**article**, not used in Latin, 27, *a*  
**audāx**, declension, 644  
comparison, 296, 647  
**audiō**, conjugation, 662

- base**, 63, *a*  
**bonus**, declension, 643  
  comparison, 317, 649  
**brevis**, declension, 644  
  comparison, 296, 647
- capiō**, conjugation, 661  
**caput**, declension, 171, 638  
**cardinals**, definition, III, *c*  
  declension, 378, 646  
  indeclinable forms, 378  
  table of, 651  
**case**, definition, XXIV  
  of relative pronoun, 247  
**case endings**, 25, *a*; 63, 73, 171, 189,  
  292, 331  
**cases**, names of English, XXIV, *a*  
  names of Latin, XXIV, *b*. See under  
  nominative, genitive, etc.  
  uses, 512  
**causā** with gerund, 461, *a*  
  with gerundive, 472  
**causal** clauses with *quod*, 50, 51  
**cause**, expressed by the ablative, 184,  
  185  
  expressed by a prepositional phrase,  
  186, 195, *b*  
**characteristic vowels** of the four con-  
  jugations, 38  
**clauses**, definitions, XX, *a-f*  
  indirect questions, 372, 373  
  of cause, with *quod*, 50, 51  
  of purpose, with *ut* and *nē*, 343, 344;  
  substantive, 355, 356  
  of result, with *ut* and *ut nōn*, 357,  
  358  
  temporal, with *cum*, 487, 488  
**cohors**, declension, 189, 639  
**comparative**, declined, 297, 648  
  formation, 296, *a*  
  meaning too, etc., 296, *c*  
**comparison**, definition, XXVI, *a*  
  methods of, in English and in Latin,  
  XXVI, *b, c*  
  of adjectives, 296, 306, 307, 317,  
  319, 647, 649; of adjectives in  
  -i-lis, 307; irregular, 307, 317, 319,  
  649  
  of adverbs, 327, 650  
**complement** of verb, XV, *b*  
**complementary** infinitive, 394
- conjugation**, definition, XXVII, *a*. See  
  verbs  
  in English and Latin verbs, XXVII,  
  *b, c*
- conjunctions**, definition, VII, *a*  
  kinds and definitions, VII, *b, c*
- consonant-i**, 3
- consonants**, how pronounced, 6
- contraction** in genitive of nouns in  
  -i-um and -ius, 98
- coördinate** clauses, XX, *f*
- copula**, XV, *b*
- cornū**, declension, 292, 640
- cum** (conj.) in temporal clauses, 487,  
  488
- cum** (prep.), with ablative of accom-  
  paniment, 142, 143  
  with ablative of manner, 128, 129  
  joined to ablative of personal, re-  
  flexive, relative, and interrogative  
  pronouns, p. 109, note I
- dative**, XXIV, *a, 4; b*  
  double, 426, *a*  
  of indirect object, 56, 57  
  of purpose, 426, 427  
  of reference, 426, 428  
  with adjectives, 110, 111  
  with compound verbs, 424, 425  
  with special intransitive verbs, 432,  
  433
- declension**, definition, XXII. See nouns,  
  pronouns, adjectives, and compara-  
  tives
- degree of difference**, expressed by  
  the ablative, 320, 321
- demonstrative** adjectives and pro-  
  nouns, definition, II, *f*; III, *c*.  
  See pronouns; also *hic*, *idem*, *ille*,  
  *ipse*, *is*, *iste*
- dependent clause**, XIX, note; XX, *a-e*
- deponent verbs**, 482, 483, 669
- deus**, declension, 642
- diēs**, declension, 331, 641  
  gender, 331
- diphthongs**, how pronounced, 5
- direct statements**, 400
- domō**, used of place from which,  
  229, 230, *a*
- domum**, used of place to which, 229,  
  230, *b*

**domus**, declension, 642  
gender, 292, *b*  
**dōnum**, declension, 73, 637  
**dum** with present indicative, p. 133,  
note 4  
**duo**, declension, 646  
**ego**, declension, 652  
**eius** compared with **suus**, 279  
**enclitics**, 22  
**eō**, conjugation, 667  
**Eutropius, selections from**, 547–551  
**exercitus**, declension, 292, 640  
**extent** of time or space, how ex-  
pressed, 332, 333  
**ferō**, conjugation, 666  
**fifth declension**, 331, 641  
**filius**, declension, 98, 637  
**fiō**, conjugation, 668  
**first declension**, 63, 636  
**fourth declension**, 292, 640  
**future active participle**, XXXIV, *b*  
    formation, 441, *a*  
    in principal parts, p. 63, note 1  
    use, 444  
**future perfect tense**, formation of,  
    active, 223, *a*; passive, 286, *b*  
**gender**, in English and in Latin,  
    XXV, *a*, *b*; 64  
    in first declension, 64, *a*  
    in second declension, 99  
    in third declension, 174, *b*  
    in fourth declension, 292 and *b*  
    in fifth declension, 331  
**genitive**, XXIV, *a*, 2; *b*  
    objective, 380, 381  
    of material, p. 79, note 1  
    partitive, 308, 309  
    possessive, 43, 44  
**gerund**, a verbal noun, XXXII, *c*; 459,  
    460  
    uses, 461  
**gerundive**, a verbal adjective, 471  
    agreement of, 471  
    used with *ad* and *causā* to express  
        purpose, 472  
    used with *sum* to form the passive  
        periphrastic conjugation, 473;  
        expresses necessary action, 473, *a*

**Helvetians, campaign against the**,  
    440, 451, 479, 494, 514–523  
**hic**, declension, 654  
    uses, 228, 263  
**hortor**, conjugation, 669  
**hortus**, declension, 73, 637  
**hostis**, declension, 189, 639  
**i** with force of a consonant before a  
    vowel, 3  
**i-stems**, 189, 639  
**idem**, declension, 654  
    use, 410, *a*  
**iēns**, declension, 645  
**ille**, declension, 654  
    uses, 228, 263  
**in** with accusative and ablative, 193,  
    194  
**indefinite pronouns and adjectives**,  
    definition, II, *g*; III, *e*. See pro-  
    nouns  
**independent clause**, XVIII, note  
**indirect object**, definition, XIV, *b*  
    case of, 56, 57  
**indirect questions**, 372, 373  
**indirect statements**, 400–402  
**infinitive**, definition and English uses,  
    XXXII, *a*, *b*  
    formation, 38, 392; omission of  
        *esse* in compound forms, p. 190,  
        note 1  
    as object, 398  
    as subject, 393  
    complementary, 394  
    in indirect statements, 400–402;  
        tenses in, 402  
    not used to express purpose,  
        343, *b*  
    takes a subject accusative, 398,  
        399  
**inflection**, definition, XXI  
**interjection**, definition, VIII  
**interrogative adjective**, 152, 154  
**interrogative pronoun**, 152, 153  
**intransitive verb**, definition, IV, *c*  
    followed by dative, 432, 433  
**-iō**, verbs in, of the third conjugation,  
    175, 661  
**ipse**, declension, 654  
    distinguished from *suī*, 410, *c*  
    used for emphasis, 410, *c*

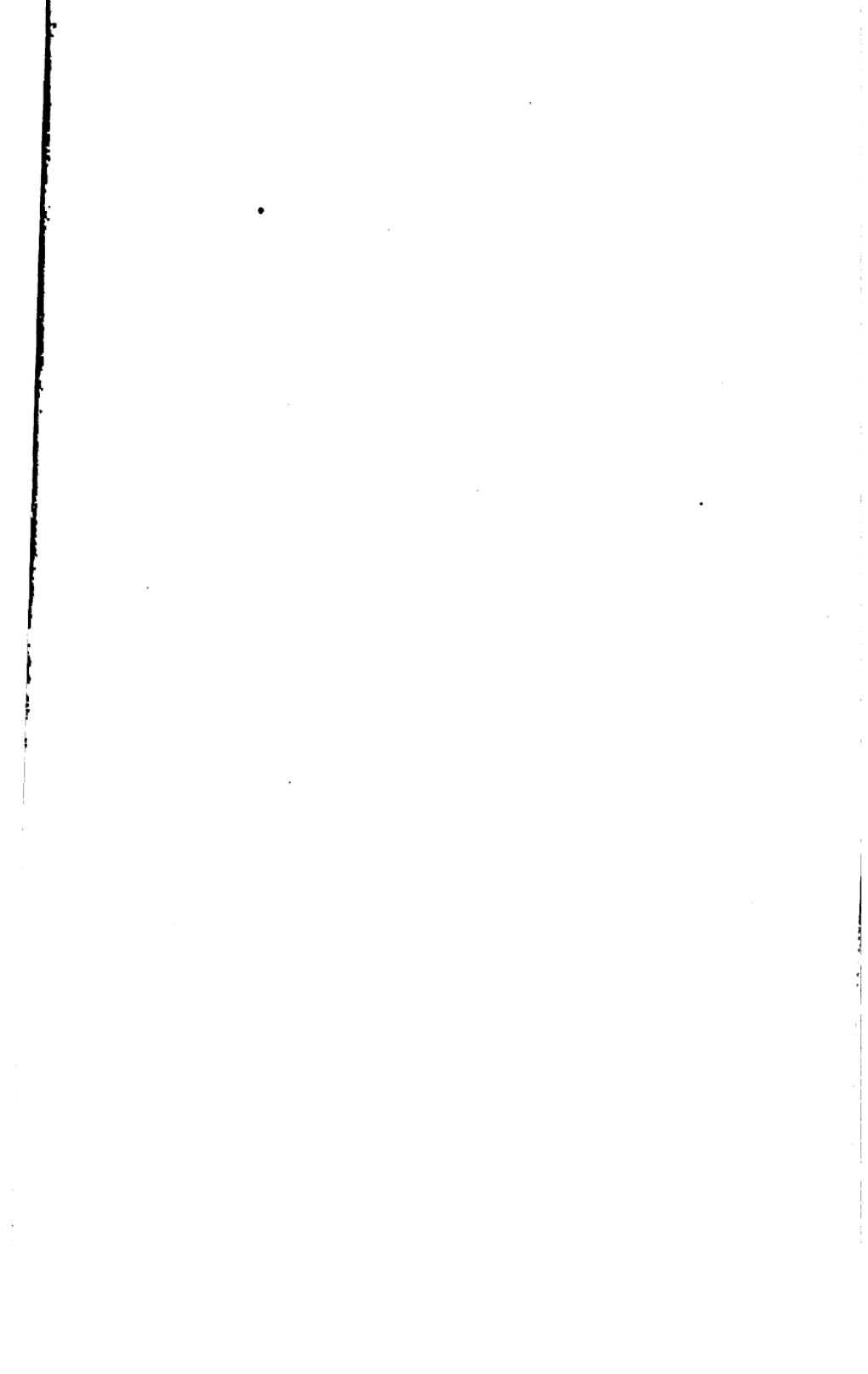
- irregular adjectives** (genitives in -ius), 385-387, 646  
**irregular comparison**, 307, 317, 319, 649  
**irregular verbs**: eō, 667; ferō, 666; fiō, 668; possum, 664; sum, 663; volō, nōlō, and mālō, 665  
**is**, declension, 147, 654  
 relation to hic and ille, 148  
 uses as a demonstrative pronoun and adjective, 148  
 used as a personal pronoun, 263  
**iste**, declension, 654  
 uses, 410, a, b  
**iter**, declension, 642  
**Iuppiter**, declension, 642
- lātior**, declension, 297, 648  
**lātus**, comparison, 296, 647  
**liber**, declension, 643  
**locative case**, XXIV, b
- magnus**, comparison, 317, 649  
**mālō**, conjugation, 665  
**malus**, comparison, 317, 649  
**manner**, how expressed, 128, 129  
**manus**, gender, 292, b  
**mare**, declension, 189, 639  
**means**, expressed by the ablative, 121, 122  
**miles**, declension, 171, 638  
**mille**, declension, 378, 646  
 use, 379  
**miser**, comparison, 306, 647  
**moneō**, conjugation, 659  
**mōns**, declension, 189, 639  
**moods**, kinds and definitions, XXIX-XXXI  
**multus**, comparison, 317, 649
- ne**, enclitic, 22, 27, d  
**nē**, that not (*lest*), introducing negative clauses of purpose, 343, 344  
**nōlō**, conjugation, 665  
**nominative**, XXIV, a, 1; b  
 as subject of a finite verb, 28  
 of pronouns expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 39, b; 264  
 predicate, 86-88  
**nōs**, declension, 652  
**noster**, declension, 643
- nouns**, definition, I, a  
 kinds and definitions, I, b-f  
 first declension, 63, 636  
 second declension, 73, 97, 98, 637  
 third declension, 171, 189, 638, 639  
 fourth declension, 292, 640  
 fifth declension, 331, 641  
 predicate, 87  
 rules of gender, 64, a; 99, 171, b; 292 and b, 331  
**number**, singular and plural, XXIII  
**numerals**, definition, III, c  
 declension, 378  
 table of, 651
- object**, definition, XIV, a  
 direct and indirect, XIV, b  
 of a transitive verb, 33  
**on account of**, how expressed in Latin, 195  
**order of words**, 35, 60, 81, 89, 228, 386, b  
**ordinals**, definition, III, c  
 declined like bonus, 378  
 table of, 651
- participles**, definition and uses, XXXIV, a-c  
 agreement, 443  
 declension, 442, 645  
 formation, 441, a  
 in deponent verbs, 483; perfect, 483, a  
 no past and perfect active and no present passive, in Latin, XXXIV, b  
 often best rendered as a clause, 445  
 tenses, 444
- partitive genitive**, 308, 309  
**parvus**, comparison, 317, 649  
**passive voice**, XXVIII, 237  
 formation, 238, a; 239, 286, a, c  
 agent expressed by the ablative with à or ab, 242, 243
- penult**, definition, II  
 when accented, 21
- perfect tense**, formation of, active, 134 and b; passive, 286, a, c  
 definite and indefinite, 134, a
- periphrastic conjugation**, passive, 473  
 synopsis of, 670

- person**, distinctions, II, *c*  
**personal pronouns**, see pronouns  
**phrase**, definition and kinds, XVI, *a-c*  
**place to which and from which**, 229,  
  230  
**pluperfect tense**, formation of, active,  
  223, *a*; passive, 286, *b*  
**plus**, declension, 648  
**portus**, irregular dative and ablative  
  plural, 292, *a*  
**possessive adjectives**, see adjectives  
**possum**, how compounded, 411  
  conjugation, 664  
**potior**, conjugation, 669  
**predicate**, definition, XI, *c*  
  complete, XIII  
  simple, XII  
**predicate adjective**, agreement, 88  
  definition, XV  
**predicate nominative**, XV, *c*  
**predicate noun**, agreement, 87  
  definition, XV  
**prefixes**, 630  
**prepositions**, definition, VI  
  with the ablative, 194  
  with the accusative, 193  
**primary tenses**, 349  
**principal parts of verbs**, 132  
**proelium**, declension, 98, 637  
**pronouns**, definition, II, *a*  
  kinds and definitions, II, *c-h*  
  demonstrative, definition, II, *f*; de-  
  clension, 654; *hic* and *ille*, uses,  
  228; *is*, uses, 228; relation of *is*  
  to *hic* and *ille*, 148; *iste*, *idem*,  
  *ipse*, 410  
  indefinite, definition, II, *g*; de-  
  clension, 657; uses, 420; quid forms  
  used as pronouns, quod forms as  
  adjectives, 420, *e*  
**interrogative**, definition, II, *e*; de-  
  clension, 153, 656; followed by  
  cum, p. 109, note 1  
**personal**, definition, II, *c*; de-  
  clension, 652; nominative expressed  
  only for emphasis or contrast,  
  264; third person supplied by *is*,  
  sometimes by *hic* or *ille*, 263;  
  followed by cum, p. 109, note 1  
**possessive**, see possessive adjectives  
**reflexive**, definition, II, *k*; de-  
  clension, 653; use, 266; followed by  
  cum, p. 109, note 1  
**relative**, definition, II, *d*; agree-  
  ment, 247, 248; declension, 246,  
  655; followed by cum, p. 109,  
  note 1; referring to a personal  
  pronoun, 267  
**pronunciation**, sounds of letters, 4-6  
**puer**, declension, 97, 637  
**purpose**, dative of, 426, 427  
  expressed by the accusative of the  
  gerund or gerundive with *ad*,  
  461, 472  
  expressed by the genitive of the  
  gerund or gerundive with *causa*,  
  461, 472  
  expressed by the subjunctive with  
  *ut* and *nē*, 343, 344  
  not expressed by the infinitive,  
  343, *b*  
  substantive clauses of, 355, 356  
**quā** in adverbial clauses, 497  
**-que**, enclitic, 22  
**questions**, indirect, 372, 373  
**qui**, declension, 246, 655  
**quīdam**, 420, *d*; 657  
**quis**, declension, 153, 656  
**quisquam**, 420, 657  
**quisque**, 420, 657  
**quod clause of fact**, 495, 496  
**reflexive pronouns**, see pronouns  
**regō**, conjugation, 660  
**relative pronouns**, see pronouns  
**rēs**, declension, 331, 641  
**result**, expressed by the subjunctive  
  with *ut* and *ut nōn*, 357, 358  
**rēx**, declension, 171, 638  
**sē**, distinguished from *ipse*, 410, *c*  
**second declension**, 73, 97, 98, 637  
**secondary tenses**, 349  
**sentences**, definition, IX  
  kinds and definitions, X, *a-d*  
**separation**, expressed by the ablative,  
  281, 282  
**sequence of tenses**, 348-352  
**sequor**, conjugation, 669  
**space**, extent of, 332, 333

- specification**, ablative of, 480, 481  
**stems** of verbs, 132, 133  
**Stories from Roman History**, 552–  
  555  
**Stories of Hercules**, 529–538  
**Stories of Perseus**, 277, 291, 316, 339,  
  370, 391, 408  
**Stories of Ulysses**, 539–546  
**Story of the Aduatuci**, 524–528  
**subject**, definition, XI, *a*  
  complete, XII  
  simple, XII  
  agreement of verb with, 29  
  not expressed, 264  
  of an infinitive, 399  
  of a verb, 28  
**subjunctive**, definition, XXX  
  formation, of present, 342; of im-  
    perfect, 347; of perfect and plu-  
    perfect, 371  
  in indirect questions, 372, 373  
  in purpose clauses, 343, 344, 355,  
  356  
  in result clauses, 357, 358  
  in temporal clauses with *cum*, 487,  
  488  
  tenses, 341; sequence of, 348–352  
**subordinate clauses** in indirect state-  
  ments, 501, 502  
**substantive clauses**, of fact with *quod*,  
  495, 496  
  of purpose, 355, 356  
**suffixes**, 632  
**sui**, declension, 653  
  distinguished from *ipse*, 410, *c.*  
**sum**, conjugation, 663  
**summary of uses**, of nouns, 512  
  of verbs, 513  
**suus**, 278, 279  
  compared with *eius*, 279  
  omission of, 280  
**syllables**, number of, 8  
  division of, 9, 10; in compound  
  words, 10  
  how named, 11  
  long and short, 17–19  
**synopsis** of the verb, 671  
  
**temporal clauses** introduced by *cum*,  
  487, 488  
**tense**, XXXIII, *a*, *b*  
  
**tenses**, distinction in use between the  
  perfect and the imperfect, 134, *a*  
  of the infinitive in indirect state-  
  ments, 402  
  primary and secondary, 349  
  sequence of, 348–352  
  sign of the future, 126, *a*  
  sign of the imperfect, 120, *b*  
**terminations**, of first declension, 63  
  of second declension, 73  
  of third declension, 171, 189  
  of fourth declension, 292  
  of fifth declension, 331  
**third declension**, 171, 638  
  *i*-stems, 189, 639  
**time**, at which and within which, 218,  
  219  
  extent of, 332, 333  
**to**, how expressed in Latin, 195  
**towns**, names of, expressing place to  
  which and from which, 229, 230  
**transitive verb**, IV, *b*  
**tr̄s**, declension, 646  
**tū**, declension, 652  
**tuus**, compared with *vester*, 278  
  
**-ibus**, in irregular dative and ablative  
  plural, 292, *a*  
**ultima**, II  
**únus**, declension, 646  
**ut**, in adverbial clauses, 497  
  in clauses of purpose, 343, 344, 355,  
  356  
  in clauses of result, 357, 358  
  translations, 343, *i* and *b*  
  
**verbs**, definition, IV, *a*  
  kinds and definitions, IV, *b*–*f*  
  agreement, 29; in relative clauses,  
  267  
  case, of subject, 28; of object, 33  
  conjugations, how distinguished, 38  
  deponent, form, meaning, how  
  distinguished, 482; active forms,  
  483; participles of both voices,  
  483; perfect participle, active in  
  meaning, 483, *a*; conjugation, 669  
  intransitive, which are transitive in  
  English, 432, 433  
  irregular, see *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō*, *mālō*, *nōlō*,  
  *possum*, *sum*, and *vōlō*

- of first conjugation**, 658  
**of second conjugation**, 659  
**of third conjugation**, 660, 661  
**of fourth conjugation**, 662  
**passive periphrastic conjugation**,  
    473; synopsis of, 670  
**personal endings**, 25, *a*; 39, 134  
**principal parts**, 132  
**vereor**, conjugation, 669  
**vester**, compared with *tuus*, 278  
**vir**, declension, 97, 637
- virtūs**, declension, 171, 638  
**vis**, declension, 642  
**vocative case**, XXIV, *b*  
**voice**, XXVIII  
**volō**, conjugation, 665  
**vōs**, declension, 652  
**vowels**, how pronounced, 4  
    long, 14, 15  
    short, 12, 13
- with**, how expressed in Latin, 195





**14 DAY USE  
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED**

**LOAN DEPT.**

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.  
Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

2 Jun '61 JR

REC'D LD

JUN 1 1961

5 Dec '61 RH

REC'D LD

NOV 22 1961

SENT ON ILL

JUL 14 2003

U. C. BERKELEY

LD 21A-50m-12 '60  
(B6221s10)476B

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley

YB 00235

